Ear Thermometer MCU

HT67F5652

Revision: V1.30 Date: August 12, 2026

www.holtek.com

Table of Contents

Features **7**
CPU Features 7
Peripheral Features 7
General Description **8**
Block Diagram **9**
Pin Assignment **9**
Pin Description **11**
Absolute Maximum Ratings **14**
D.C. Characteristics **14**
A.C. Characteristics **15**
LDO+PGA+ADC+VCM Electrical Characteristics **17**
Effective Number of Bits (ENOB) 19
Comparator Electrical Characteristics **19**
LCD Electrical Characteristics **20**
System Architecture **21**
Clocking and Pipelining 21
Program Counter 22
Stack 22
Arithmetic and Logic Unit – ALU 23
Flash Program Memory **24**
Structure 24
Special Vectors 24
Look-up Table 24
Table Program Example 25
In Circuit Programming – ICP 26
On Chip Debug Support – OCDS 26
In Application Programming – IAP 27
Emulated In System Programming – Emulated ISP 35
Data Memory **36**
Structure 36
Data Memory Addressing 36
General Purpose Data Memory 37
Special Purpose Data Memory 37
Special Function Register Description **39**
Indirect Addressing Registers – IAR0, IAR1, IAR2 39
Memory Pointers – MP0, MP1L, MP1H, MP2L, MP2H 39
Accumulator – ACC 41
Program Counter Low Register – PCL 41
Look-up Table Registers – TBLP, TBHP, TBLH 41
Status Register – STATUS 41

EEPROM Data Memory 43
EEPROM Data Memory Structure 43
EEPROM Registers 43
Reading Data from the EEPROM 45
Writing Data to the EEPROM 45
Write Protection 45
EEPROM Interrupt 45
Programming Considerations 46
Oscillators 47
Oscillator Overview 47
System Clock Configurations 47
External Crystal/Ceramic Oscillator – HXT 48
Internal RC Oscillator – HIRC 49
Internal 32kHz Oscillator – LIRC 49
External 32.768kHz Crystal Oscillator – LXT 49
Supplementary Oscillators 50
Operating Modes and System Clocks 51
System Clocks 51
System Operation Modes 53
Control Register 54
Fast Wake-up 56
Operating Mode Switching 56
Standby Current Considerations 60
Wake-up 60
Programming Considerations 61
Watchdog Timer 61
Watchdog Timer Clock Source 61
Watchdog Timer Control Register 61
Watchdog Timer Operation 62
Reset and Initialisation 64
Reset Functions 64
Reset Initial Conditions 66
Input/Output Ports 70
Pull-high Resistors 70
Port A Wake-up 71
I/O Port Control Registers 72
I/O Pin Structures 73
Programming Considerations 73
Timer Modules – TM 74
Introduction 74
TM Operation 74
TM Clock Source 74
TM Interrupts 75
TM External Pins 75

TM Input/Output Pin Control Registers 75
Programming Considerations 76
Compact Type TM – CTM (TM0) 77
Compact TM Operation 77
Compact Type TM Register Description 78
Compact Type TM Operating Modes 82
Periodic Type TM – PTM (TM1, TM2) 88
Periodic TM Operation 88
Periodic Type TM Register Description 88
Periodic Type TM Operating Modes 93
Standard Type TM – STM (TM3) 102
Standard TM Operation 102
Standard Type TM Register Description 102
Standard Type TM Operating Modes 107
Analog to Digital Converter – ADC 117
A/D Overview 117
Internal Power Supply 117
A/D Data Rate Definition 118
A/D Converter Register Description 119
A/D Operation 125
Summary of A/D Conversion Steps 127
Programming Considerations 127
A/D Transfer Function 128
A/D Converted Data 129
A/D Converted Data to Voltage 129
Temperature Sensor 129
Operational Amplifier 129
A/D Programming Example 130
Comparators 131
Comparator Operation 131
Comparator Register 131
Comparator Interrupt 133
Programming Considerations 133
Serial Interface Module – SIM 134
SPI Interface 134
I^2C Interface 140
UART Module Serial Interface with IR Carrier 149
UART Module Features 149
UART Module Overview 149
UART External Pin Interfacing 149
UART Data Transfer Scheme 149
UART Status and Control Registers 150
Baud Rate Generator 155
UART Setup and Control 156

UART Transmitter 158
UART Receiver 159
Managing Receiver Errors 160
UART Module Interrupt Structure 161
UART Module Power Down and Wake-up 163
IR Modulation Interface 163
Interrupts 164
Interrupt Registers 164
Interrupt Operation 170
External Interrupt 171
Comparator Interrupt 172
A/D Converter Interrupt 172
Multi-function Interrupt 172
Serial Interface Module Interrupt 173
Time Base Interrupts 173
I^2C Time Out Interrupt 174
UART Interrupt 174
EEPROM Interrupt 174
LVD Interrupt 175
TM Interrupts 175
Interrupt Wake-up Function 175
Programming Considerations 176
Low Voltage Detector – LVD 176
LVD Register 176
LVD Operation 177
LCD Driver 178
LCD Display Memory 179
LCD Clock Source 180
LCD Registers 180
LCD Voltage Source and Biasing 183
LCD Driver Output 184
LCD Charge Pump 187
Programming Considerations 187
Configuration Option 188
Application Circuits 189
Instruction Set 190
Introduction 190
Instruction Timing 190
Moving and Transferring Data 190
Arithmetic Operations 190
Logical and Rotate Operation 191
Branches and Control Transfer 191
Bit Operations 191
Table Read Operations 191
Other Operations 191

Instruction Set Summary 192
Table Conventions 192
Extended Instruction Set 194
Instruction Definition 196
Extended Instruction Definition 206
Package Information 215
64-pin LQFP (7mm×7mm) Outline Dimensions 216
80-pin LQFP (10mm×10mm) Outline Dimensions 217

Features

CPU Features

- Operating Voltage:
  - f_{SYS}=8MHz: 2.2V~5.5V
  - f_{SYS}=12MHz: 2.7V~5.5V
  - f_{SYS}=16MHz: 4.5V~5.5V
- Up to 0.25μs instruction cycle with 16MHz system clock at V_{DD}=5V
- Power down and wake-up functions to reduce power consumption
- Four oscillators:
  - External Crystal – HXT
  - External 32.768kHz Crystal – LXT
  - Internal RC – HIRC
  - Internal 32kHz RC – LIRC
- Multi-mode operation: NORMAL, SLOW, IDLE and SLEEP
- Fully integrated internal 4.9152MHz, 4.9152×2MHz and 4.9152×3MHz oscillator requires no external components
- All instructions executed in 1~3 instruction cycles
- Table read instructions
- 115 powerful instructions
- 8-level subroutine nesting
- Bit manipulation instruction

Peripheral Features

- Flash Program Memory: 8K×16
- RAM Data Memory: 512×8
- True EEPROM Memory: 128×8
- In Application Programming function – IAP
- Emulated In System Programming – Emulated ISP
- Watchdog Timer function
- LCD COM driver with 1/3 bias
- 32 bidirectional I/O lines
- 4 pin-shared external interrupts
- Multiple Timer Modules for time measure, input capture, compare match output, PWM output or single pulse output function
- Dual Time-Base functions for generation of fixed time interrupt signals
- 2 differential and 4 single-end channels 24-bit resolution Delta Sigma A/D converter
- Low voltage reset function
- Low voltage detect function
- Internal LDO with bypass function for PGA, ADC or external sensor power supply
- Serial Interfaces Module – SPI or I^2C

- UART with IR carrier
- Two comparators
- Flash program memory can be re-programmed up to 100,000 times
- Flash program memory data retention > 10 years
- True EEPROM data memory can be re-programmed up to 1,000,000 times
- True EEPROM data memory data retention > 10 years
- Package type: 64/80-pin LQFP

General Description

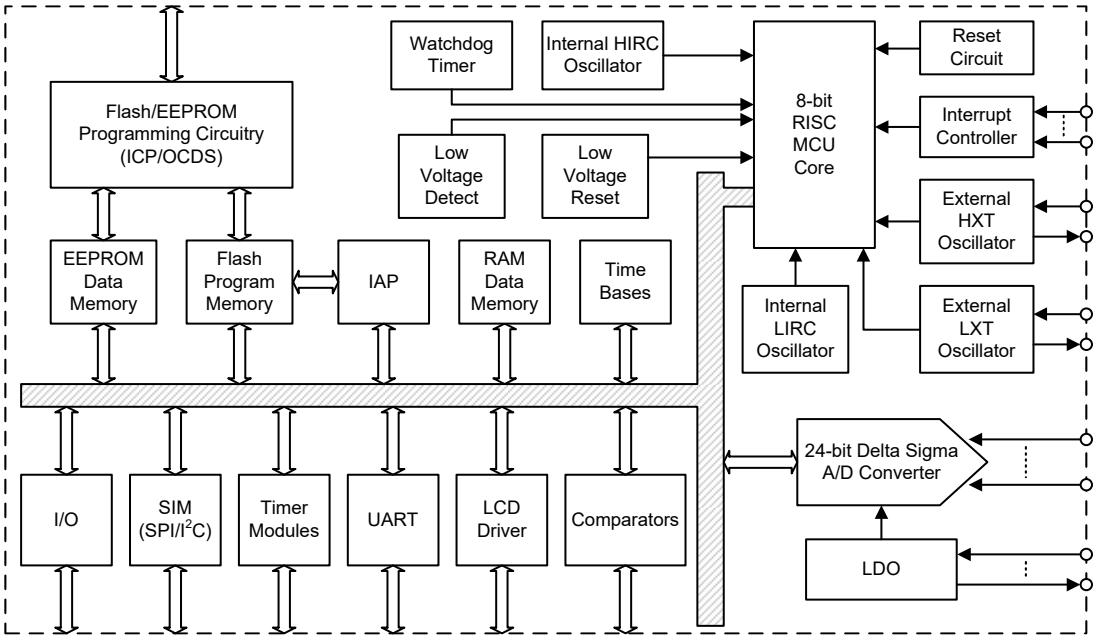
The HT67F5652 is a Flash Memory A/D type 8-bit high performance RISC architecture microcontroller which includes a multi-channel 24-bit Delta Sigma A/D (Δ-ΣA/D) converter and fully integrated LCD driver. The device is suitable for use in products which require a low noise and high accuracy analog to digital converter and which also need to drive LCD panels. Offering users the convenience of Flash Memory multi-programming features, this device also includes a wide range of functions and features. Other memory includes an area of RAM Data Memory as well as an area of true EEPROM memory for storage of non-volatile data such as serial numbers, calibration data etc.

Analog features include a multi-channel with 24-bit Delta Sigma A/D converter and programmable gain amplifier (PGA) functions. An extremely flexible Timer Module provides timing, pulse generation and PWM generation functions. Communication with the outside world is catered for by the inclusion of fully integrated SPI, I^2C and UART interfaces functions, popular interfaces which provide designers with a means of easy communication with external peripheral hardware. In addition, an internal LDO function provides various power options for both internal and external functions. Protective features such as an internal Watchdog Timer, Low Voltage Reset and Low Voltage Detector coupled with excellent noise immunity and ESD protection ensure that reliable operation is maintained in hostile electrical environments.

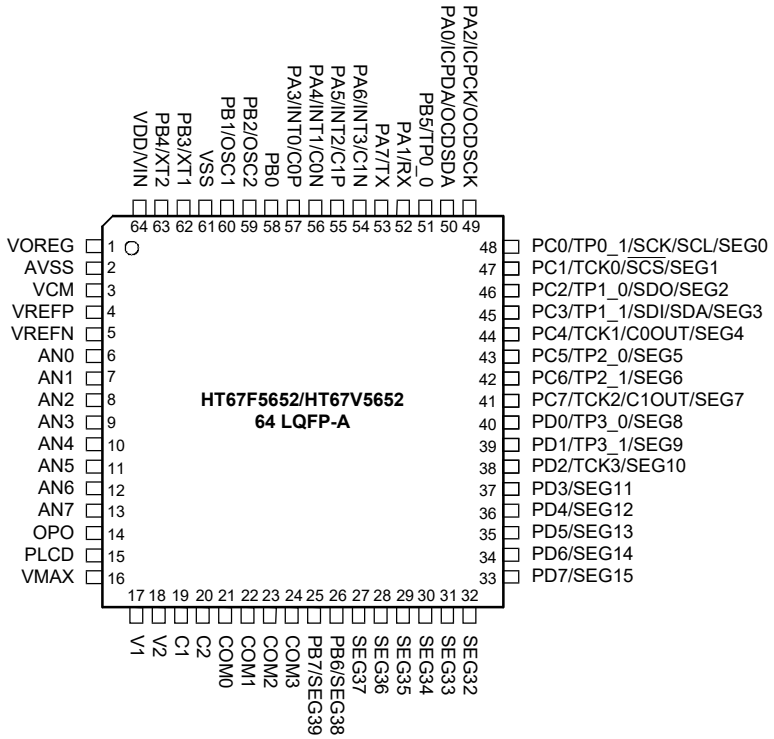
A full choice of external and internal low and high speed oscillator functions is provided including a fully integrated system oscillator which requires no external components for its implementation. The ability to operate and switch dynamically between a range of operating modes using different clock sources gives users the ability to optimise microcontroller operation and minimise power consumption.

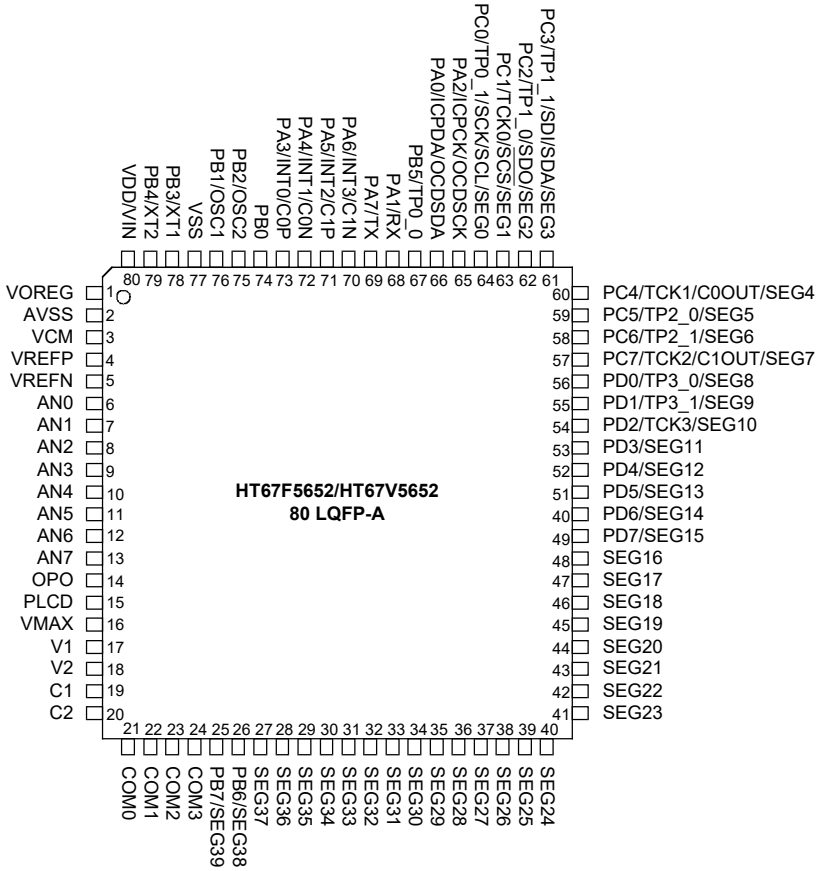
The inclusion of flexible I/O programming features, a fully integrated LCD driver and Time-Base functions along with many other features ensure that the device will find excellent use in applications such as weight scales, electronic metering, environmental monitoring, handheld instruments, household appliances, electronically controlled tools, motor driving in addition to many others.

Block Diagram



Pin Assignment





Note: 1. If the pin-shared pin functions have multiple outputs simultaneously, its pin names at the right side of the "/" sign can be used for higher priority.

2. The OCDSDA and OCDSCK pins are the OCDS dedicated pins and only available for the HT67V5652 device which is the OCDS EV chip for the HT67F5652 device.

3. For less pin-count package types there will be unbonded pins which should be properly configured to avoid unwanted current consumption resulting from floating input conditions. Refer to the "Standby Current Considerations" and "Input/Output Ports" sections.

Pin Description

The function of each pin is listed in the following table, however the details behind how each pin is configured is contained in other sections of the datasheet.

Pin Name	Function	OPT	I/T	O/T	Descriptions
PA0/ICPDA/ OCDSDA	PA0	PAPU PAWU	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up.
	ICPDA	—	ST	CMOS	ICP address/data
	OCDSDA	—	ST	CMOS	OCDS address/data, for EV chip only.
PA1/RX	PA1	PAPU PAWU	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up.
	RX	—	ST	—	UART receiver pin
PA2/ICPCK/ OCDSCK	PA2	PAPU PAWU	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up.
	ICPCK	—	ST	—	ICP clock
	OCDSCK	—	ST	—	OCDS clock, for EV chip only.
PA3/INT0/C0P	PA3	PAPU PAWU	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up.
	INT0	—	ST	—	External Interrupt 0 input
	C0P	CP0C	AN	—	Comparator 0 positive input
PA4/INT1/C0N	PA4	PAPU PAWU	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up.
	INT1	—	ST	—	External Interrupt 1 input
	C0N	CP0C	AN	—	Comparator 0 negative input
PA5/INT2/C1P	PA5	PAPU PAWU	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up.
	INT2	—	ST	—	External Interrupt 2 input
	C1P	CP1C	AN	—	Comparator 1 positive input
PA6/INT3/C1N	PA6	PAPU PAWU	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up.
	INT3	—	ST	—	External Interrupt 3 input
	C1N	CP1C	AN	—	Comparator 1 negative input
PA7/TX	PA7	PAPU PAWU	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up.
	TX	—	—	CMOS	UART transceiver pin
PB0	PB0	PBPU	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
PB1/OSC1	PB1	PBPU	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	OSC1	CO	HXT	—	HXT Oscillator input
PB2/OSC2	PB2	PBPU	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	OSC2	CO	—	HXT	HXT Oscillator output
PB3/XT1	PB3	PBPU	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	XT1	CO	LXT	—	LXT Oscillator input
PB4/XT2	PB4	PBPU	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	XT2	CO	—	LXT	LXT Oscillator output
PB5/TP0_0	PB5	PBPU	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	TP0_0	CTRL0 TM0C0	—	CMOS	TM0 (10-bit CTM) output
PB6/SEG38	PB6	PBPU	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	SEG38	LCD3	—	SEG	LCD Segment output
PB7/SEG39	PB7	PBPU	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	SEG39	LCD3	—	SEG	LCD Segment output

Pin Name	Function	OPT	I/T	O/T	Descriptions
PC0/TP0_1/SCK/SCL/SEG0	PC0	PCPU	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	TP0_1	CTRL0 TM0C0	—	CMOS	TM0 (10-bit CTM) output
	SCK	SIMC2	ST	CMOS	SPI serial clock
	SCL	SIMC0	ST	CMOS	I²C clock line
	SEG0	LCD1	—	SEG	LCD Segment output
PC1/TCK0/$\overline{SCS}$/SEG1	PC1	PCPU	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	TCK0	—	ST	—	TM0 (10-bit CTM) clock input
	$\overline{SCS}$	SIMC2	ST	CMOS	SPI slave select pin
	SEG1	LCD1	—	SEG	LCD Segment output
PC2/TP1_0/SDO/SEG2	PC2	PCPU	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up
	TP1_0	CTRL0 PTM1C0	ST	CMOS	TM1 (10-bit PTM) input/output
	SDO	SIMC2	—	CMOS	SPI serial data output
	SEG2	LCD1	—	SEG	LCD Segment output
PC3/TP1_1/SDI/SDA/SEG3	PC3	PCPU	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up
	TP1_1	CTRL0 PTM1C0	ST	CMOS	TM1 (10-bit PTM) input/output
	SDI	SIMC2	ST	—	SPI serial data input
	SDA	SIMC0	ST	CMOS	I²C data line
	SEG3	LCD1	—	SEG	LCD Segment output
PC4/TCK1/C0OUT/SEG4	PC4	PCPU	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up
	TCK1	—	ST	—	TM1 (10-bit PTM) clock input
	C0OUT	CP0C	—	CMOS	Comparator 0 output pin
	SEG4	LCD1	—	SEG	LCD Segment output
PC5/TP2_0/SEG5	PC5	PCPU	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up
	TP2_0	CTRL0 PTM2C0	ST	CMOS	TM2 (10-bit PTM) input/output
	SEG5	LCD1	—	SEG	LCD Segment output
PC6/TP2_1/SEG6	PC6	PCPU	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up
	TP2_1	CTRL0 PTM2C0	ST	CMOS	TM2 (10-bit PTM) input/output
	SEG6	LCD1	—	SEG	LCD Segment output
PC7/TCK2/C1OUT/SEG7	PC7	PCPU	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up
	TCK2	—	ST	—	TM2 (10-bit PTM) clock input
	C1OUT	CP1C	—	CMOS	Comparator 1 output pin
	SEG7	LCD1	—	SEG	LCD Segment output
PD0/TP3_0/SEG8	PD0	PDPU	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	TP3_0	CTRL0 STM3C0	ST	CMOS	TM3 (16-bit STM) input/output
	SEG8	LCD2	—	SEG	LCD Segment output
PD1/TP3_1/SEG9	PD1	PDPU	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	TP3_1	CTRL0 STM3C0	ST	CMOS	TM3 (16-bit STM) input/output
	SEG9	LCD2	—	SEG	LCD Segment output
PD2/TCK3/SEG10	PD2	PDPU	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	TCK3	—	ST	—	TM3 (16-bit STM) clock input
	SEG10	LCD2	—	SEG	LCD Segment output
PD3/SEG11	PD3	PDPU	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	SEG11	LCD2	—	SEG	LCD Segment output

Pin Name	Function	OPT	I/T	O/T	Descriptions
PD4/SEG12	PD4	PDPU	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	SEG12	LCD2	—	SEG	LCD Segment output
PD5/SEG13	PD5	PDPU	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	SEG13	LCD2	—	SEG	LCD Segment output
PD6/SEG14	PD6	PDPU	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	SEG14	LCD2	—	SEG	LCD Segment output
PD7/SEG15	PD7	PDPU	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up.
	SEG15	LCD2	—	SEG	LCD Segment output
VOREG	VOREG	—	PWR	—	Supply voltage for VCM, ADC, PGA
		—	—	PWR	LDO output
AN0~AN7	ANn	—	AN	—	ADC input channel
VREFP	VREFP	—	PWR	—	ADC positive reference input
VREFN	VREFN	—	PWR	—	ADC negative reference input
VCM	VCM	—	—	PWR	ADC internal Common mode voltage output
OPO	OPO	—	—	AN	OPA output
VMAX	VMAX	—	PWR	—	IC maximum voltage, connect to VDD or V1
PLCD	PLCD	—	PWR	—	LCD power supply
V1	V1	—	AN	—	LCD voltage pump
V2	V2	—	AN	—	LCD voltage pump
C1	C1	—	AN	—	LCD voltage pump
C2	C2	—	AN	—	LCD voltage pump
COM0~COM3	COMn	—	—	COM	LCD Common output
SEG16~SEG37	SEGn	—	—	SEG	LCD Segment output
VDD/VIN	VDD	—	PWR	—	Digital positive power supply
	VIN	—	PWR	—	LDO input pin
VSS	VSS	—	PWR	—	Digital negative power supply
AVSS	AVSS	—	PWR	—	A/D negative power supply

Legend: I/T: Input type; O/T: Output type;
OPT: Optional by configuration option (CO) or register option;
PWR: Power; CO: Configuration option;
ST: Schmitt Trigger input; CMOS: CMOS output; AN: Analog signal;
SEG: LCD SEG output; COM: LCD COM output;
HXT: High frequency crystal oscillator;
LXT: Low frequency crystal oscillator.

Absolute Maximum Ratings

Supply Voltage ..... V_{SS}−0.3V to V_{SS}+6.0V

Input Voltage ..... V_{SS}−0.3V to V_{DD}+0.3V

Storage Temperature ..... -60°C to 150°C

Operating Temperature ..... -40°C to 85°C

I_{OL} Total 150mA

I_{OH} Total ..... -100mA

Total Power Dissipation 500mW

Note: These are stress ratings only. Stresses exceeding the range specified under "Absolute Maximum Ratings" may cause substantial damage to these devices. Functional operation of these devices at other conditions beyond those listed in the specification is not implied and prolonged exposure to extreme conditions may affect devices reliability.

D.C. Characteristics

Ta=25°C

Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions		Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
		V_{DD}	Conditions				
V_{DD}	Operating Voltage (HXT)	—	$f_{SYS}=f_{HXT}$=8MHz	2.2	—	5.5	V
			$f_{SYS}=f_{HXT}$=12MHz	2.7	—	5.5	
			$f_{SYS}=f_{HXT}$=16MHz	4.5	—	5.5	
	Operating Voltage (HIRC)	—	$f_{SYS}=f_{HIRC}$=4.9152MHz	2.2	—	5.5	V
I_{DD}	Operating Current (HXT)	3V	No load, all peripherals off, $f_{SYS}=f_{HXT}$=8MHz	—	—	1.5	mA
		5V		—	—	4.0	
		3V	No load, all peripherals off, $f_{SYS}=f_{HXT}$=12MHz	—	—	2.5	mA
		5V		—	—	5.5	
		5V	No load, all peripherals off, $f_{SYS}=f_{HXT}$=16MHz	—	—	8.5	mA
	Operating Current (HIRC)	3V	No load, all peripherals off, $f_{SYS}=f_{HIRC}$=4.9152×3MHz	—	—	3.0	mA
		5V		—	—	6.0	
	Operating Current (LXT)	3V	No load, all peripherals off, $f_{SYS}=f_{LXT}$=32768Hz	—	—	30	μA
		5V		—	—	50	
	Operating Current (LIRC)	3V	No load, all peripherals off, $f_{SYS}=f_{LIRC}$=32kHz	—	—	30	μA
		5V		—	—	50	
I_{STB}	Standby Current (SLEEP0 Mode)	3V	No load, all peripherals off, WDT off	—	—	0.12	μA
		5V		—	—	0.29	
	Standby Current (SLEEP1 Mode)	3V	No load, all peripherals off, WDT on	—	—	5	μA
		5V		—	—	10	
		—	No load, all peripherals off, WDT off, LVD on	—	—	30	μA
	Standby Current (IDLE0 Mode)	3V	No load, all peripherals off, f_{SUB} on	—	—	3	μA
		5V		—	—	5	
	Standby Current (IDLE1 Mode, HIRC)	3V	No load, all peripherals off, f_{SUB} on, $f_{SYS}=f_{HIRC}$=4.9152MHz	—	—	1	mA
		5V		—	—	2	
	Standby Current (IDLE1 Mode, HXT)	3V	No load, all peripherals off, f_{SUB} on, $f_{SYS}=f_{HXT}$=12MHz	—	—	1	mA
		5V		—	—	2	

Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions		Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
		V_{DD}	Conditions				
V_{LVR}	Low Voltage Reset Voltage	—	LVR enable, voltage select 2.1V	-5%	2.1	+5%	V
			LVR enable, voltage select 2.55V		2.55		
			LVR enable, voltage select 3.15V		3.15		
			LVR enable, voltage select 3.8V		3.8		
I_{LVR}	Additional Current for LVR Enable	—	LVR enable, LVD disable	—	—	90	μA
V_{LVD}	Low Voltage Detector Voltage	—	LVD enable, voltage select 2.0V	-5%	2.0	+5%	V
			LVD enable, voltage select 2.2V		2.2		
			LVD enable, voltage select 2.4V		2.4		
			LVD enable, voltage select 2.7V		2.7		
			LVD enable, voltage select 3.0V		3.0		
			LVD enable, voltage select 3.3V		3.3		
			LVD enable, voltage select 3.6V		3.6		
			LVD enable, voltage select 4.0V		4.0		
I_{LVD}	Low Voltage Detector Current	—	LVR disable, LVD enable	—	—	120	μA
			LVR enable, LVD enable	—	—	150	
V_{IL}	Input Low Voltage for I/O Ports	5V	—	0	—	1.5	V
		—		0	—	$0.2V_{DD}$	
V_{IH}	Input High Voltage for I/O Ports	5V	—	3.5	—	5	V
		—		$0.8V_{DD}$	—	V_{DD}	
I_{OL}	Sink Current for I/O Ports	3V	$V_{OL}=0.1V_{DD}$	4	8	—	mA
		5V		10	20	—	
	Sink Current for LCD Ports	3V	$V_{OL}=0.1V_{LCD}$	210	420	—	μA
		5V		350	700	—	
I_{OH}	Source Current for I/O Ports	3V	$V_{OH}=0.9V_{DD}$	-2	-4	—	mA
		5V		-5	-10	—	
	Source Current for LCD Ports	3V	$V_{OH}=0.9V_{LCD}$	-80	-160	—	μA
		5V		-180	-360	—	
R_{PH}	Pull-High Resistance of I/O Ports	3V	—	20	60	100	kΩ
		5V		10	30	50	

A.C. Characteristics

Ta=25°C

Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions		Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
		V_{DD}	Conditions				
f_{SYS}	System Clock (HXT)	2.2V~5.5V	$f_{SYS}=f_{HXT}$=8MHz	—	8	—	MHz
		2.7V~5.5V	$f_{SYS}=f_{HXT}$=12MHz	—	12	—	
		4.5V~5.5V	$f_{SYS}=f_{HXT}$=16MHz	—	16	—	
	System Clock (HIRC)	2.2V~5.5V	$f_{SYS}=f_{HIRC}$=4.9152MHz	—	4.9152	—	MHz
		2.7V~5.5V	$f_{SYS}=f_{HIRC}$=9.8304MHz	—	9.8304	—	
		4.5V~5.5V	$f_{SYS}=f_{HIRC}$=14.7456MHz	—	14.7456	—	
	System Clock (LXT)	2.2V~5.5V	$f_{SYS}=f_{LXT}$=32.768kHz	—	32.768	—	kHz
	System Clock (LIRC)	2.2V~5.5V	$f_{SYS}=f_{LIRC}$=32kHz	—	32	—	kHz

Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions		Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
		V_{DD}	Conditions				
f_{HIRC}	High Speed Internal RC Oscillator (HIRC)	3V	Ta=25°C	-2%	4.9152	+2%	MHz
		3V±0.3V	Ta=0°C~70°C	-5%	4.9152	+5%	
		3V±0.3V	Ta= -40°C~85°C	-7%	4.9152	+7%	
		2.2V~5.5V	Ta=0°C~70°C	-7%	4.9152	+7%	
		2.2V~5.5V	Ta= -40°C~85°C	-10%	4.9152	+10%	
		3V	Ta=25°C	-20%	9.8304	+20%	
		3V	Ta=25°C	-20%	14.7456	+20%	
f_{LIRC}	Low Speed Internal RC Oscillator (LIRC)	3V	Ta=25°C	-10%	32	+10%	kHz
		3V±0.3V	Ta= -40°C~85°C	-40%	32	+40%	
		2.2V~5.5V	Ta= -40°C~85°C	-50%	32	+60%	
		5V	Ta=25°C	-10%	32	+10%	
		5V±0.5V	Ta= -40°C~85°C	-40%	32	+40%	
		2.2V~5.5V	Ta= -40°C~85°C	-50%	32	+60%	
t_{TIMER}	TCKn and Timer Capture Input Pin Minimum Pulse Width	—	—	0.3	—	—	μs
t_{INT}	External Interrupt Minimum Pulse Width	—	—	10	—	—	μs
t_{RSTD}	System Reset Delay Time (Power on Reset)	—	—	25	50	100	ms
	System Reset Delay Time (Any Reset except Power on Reset)	—	—	8.3	16.7	33.3	ms
t_{SST}	System Start-up Timer Period (Wake-up from Power Down Mode, f_{SYS} off)	—	$f_{SYS}=f_{LXT}$	1024	—	—	t_{LXT}
		—	$f_{SYS}=f_{HXT}$ ~ $f_{HXT}/64$	1024	—	—	t_{HXT}
		—	$f_{SYS}=f_{HIRC}$ ~ $f_{HIRC}/64$	16	—	—	t_{HIRC}
		—	$f_{SYS}=f_{LIRC}$	1	—	—	t_{LIRC}
	System Start-up Timer Period (Slow Mode ↔ Normal Mode, or $f_H=f_{HIRC}$ ↔ f_{HXT}, or $f_{SUB}=f_{LIRC}$ ↔ f_{LXT})	—	f_{HXT} off → on	1024	—	—	t_{HXT}
		—	f_{HIRC} off → on	16	—	—	t_{HIRC}
		—	f_{LXT} off → on	1024	—	—	t_{LXT}
	System Start-up Timer Period (Wake-up from Power Down Mode, f_{SYS} on)	—	$f_{SYS}=f_H$ ~ $f_H/64$, $f_{SYS}=f_{HXT}$ or f_{HIRC}	2	—	—	t_H
		—	$f_{SYS}=f_{LXT}$ or f_{LIRC}	2	—	—	t_{SUB}
	System Start-up Timer Period (WDT Time-out Hardware Cold Reset)	—	—	0	—	—	t_H
t_{LVDS}	LVDO Stable Time	—	For LVR enable, VBGEN=0, LVD off → on	—	—	15	μs
			For LVR disable, VBGEN=0, LVD off → on	—	—	150	
t_{LVR}	Minimum Low Voltage Width to Reset	—	—	120	240	480	μs
t_{LVD}	Minimum Low Voltage Width to Interrupt	—	—	60	120	240	μs

Note: $t_{SYS}=1/f_{SYS}$

LDO+PGA+ADC+VCM Electrical Characteristics

V_{DD}=V_{IN}, Ta=25°C
LDO & VCM Test conditions: MCU enters SLEEP mode, other functions disabled

Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions		Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
		V_{DD}	Conditions				
V_{IN}	LDO Input Voltage	—	—	2.6	—	5.5	V
I_Q	LDO Quiescent Current	—	LDOVS[1:0]=00B, V_{IN}=3.6V, No load	—	400	520	μA
V_{OUT_LDO}	LDO Output Voltage	—	LDOVS[1:0]=00B, V_{IN}=3.6V, I_{LOAD}=0.1mA	-5%	2.4	+5%	V
			LDOVS[1:0]=01B, V_{IN}=3.6V, I_{LOAD}=0.1mA		2.6		
			LDOVS[1:0]=10B, V_{IN}=3.6V, I_{LOAD}=0.1mA		2.9		
			LDOVS[1:0]=11B, V_{IN}=3.6V, I_{LOAD}=0.1mA		3.3		
ΔV_{LOAD}	LDO Load Regulation(Note 1)	—	LDOVS[1:0]=00B, V_{IN}=V_{OUT_LDO}+0.2V, 0mA≤I_{LOAD}≤10mA	—	0.105	0.21	%/mA
V_{DROP_LDO}	LDO Dropout Voltage(Note2)	—	LDOVS[1:0]=00B, V_{IN}=3.6V, I_{LOAD}=10mA, ΔV_{OUT_LDO}=2%	—	—	100	mV
			LDOVS[1:0]=01B, V_{IN}=3.6V, I_{LOAD}=10mA, ΔV_{OUT_LDO}=2%	—	—	130	
			LDOVS[1:0]=10B, V_{IN}=3.6V, I_{LOAD}=10mA, ΔV_{OUT_LDO}=2%	—	—	180	
			LDOVS[1:0]=11B, V_{IN}=3.6V, I_{LOAD}=10mA, ΔV_{OUT_LDO}=2%	—	—	200	
TC_{LDO}	LDO Temperature Coefficient	—	Ta=-40°C~85°C, LDOVS[1:0]=00B, V_{IN}=3.6V, I_{LOAD}=100μA	—	—	0.48	mV/°C
ΔV_{LINE_LDO}	LDO Line Regulation	—	LDOVS[1:0]=00B, 2.6V≤V_{IN}≤5.5V, I_{LOAD}=100μA	—	—	0.3	%/V
V_{OUT_VCM}	VCM Output Voltage	—	V_{OREG}=3.3V, No load	-5%	1.25	+5%	V
TC_{VCM}	VCM Temperature Coefficient	—	Ta=-40°C~85°C, V_{OREG}=3.3V, I_{LOAD}=10μA	—	—	0.24	mV/°C
ΔV_{LINE_VCM}	VCM Line Regulation	—	2.4V≤V_{OREG}≤3.3V, No load	—	—	0.3	%/V
t_{VCMS}	VCM Turn On Stable Time	—	V_{OREG}=3.3V, No load	—	—	10	ms
I_{OH}	Source Current for VCM Output Pin	—	V_{OREG}=3.3V, ΔV_{OUT_VCM}=-2%	1	—	—	mA
I_{OL}	Sink Current for VCM Output Pin	—	V_{OREG}=3.3V, ΔV_{OUT_VCM}=+2%	1	—	—	mA
ADC & ADC Internal Reference Voltage (Delta Sigma ADC)							
V_{OREG}	Supply Voltage for VCM, ADC, PGA	—	LDOEN=0	2.4	—	3.3	V
			LDOEN=1	2.4	—	3.3	
I_{ADC}	Additional Current for ADC Enable	—	VCM enable, VRBUFP=1 and VRBUFN=1	—	750	900	μA
		—	VCM enable, VRBUFP=0 and VRBUFN=0	—	600	750	μA
		—	VCM disable, VRBUFP=0 and VRBUFN=0	—	500	650	μA

Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions		Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
		V_{DD}	Conditions				
I_{ADSTB}	Standby Current	—	MCU enters SLEEP mode, No load	—	—	1	μA
N_R	Resolution	—	—	—	—	24	Bit
INL	Integral Non-linearity	—	V_{OREG}=3.3V, V_{REF}=1.25V, ΔSI=±450mV, PGA gain=1	—	±50	±200	ppm
NFB	Noise Free Bits	—	PGA gain=128, Data rate=12.5Hz	—	15.4	—	Bit
ENOB	Effective Number of Bits	—	PGA gain=128 Data rate=12.5Hz	—	18.1	—	Bit
f_{ADCK}	ADC Clock Frequency	—	—	40	409.6	440	kHz
f_{ADO}	ADC Output Data Rate	—	f_{MCLK}=4.9152MHz, FLMS[2:0]=000B	5	—	640	Hz
		—	f_{MCLK}=4.9152MHz, FLMS[2:0]=010B	12.5	—	1600	Hz
V_{REFP}	External Reference Input Voltage	—	VREFS=1, VRBUFP=0, VRBUFN=0	V_{REFN} + 0.8	—	V_{OREG}	V
V_{REFN}		—		0	—	V_{REFP} - 0.8	V
V_{REF}		—	V_{REF}=(V_{REFP}–V_{REFN})×VGS	0.80	—	1.75	V
PGA							
V_{CM_PGA}	Common Mode Voltage Range	—	—	0.4	—	V_{OREG} - 0.95	V
ΔD_I	Differential Input Voltage Range	—	Gain=PGS×AGS	-V_{REF} /Gain	—	+V_{REF} /Gain	V
Temperature Sensor							
TC_{TS}	Temperature Sensor Temperature Coefficient	—	Ta=-40°C~85°C, V_{REF}=1.25V, VGS[1:0]=00B (Gain=1), VRBUFP=0, VRBUFN=0	—	175	—	μV/°C
Operational Amplifier							
I_{OPA}	Additional Current for OPA Enable	—	No load	—	200	320	μA
V_{OS}	Input Offset Voltage	—	—	-2	—	+2	mV
V_{CM_OPA}	Common Mode Voltage Range	—	—	V_{SS}	—	V_{OREG} - 1.4	V
PSRR	Power Supply Rejection Ratio	—	—	55	75	—	dB
CMRR	Common Mode Rejection Ratio	—	—	55	75	—	dB
D/A Converter							
V_{DACO}	Output Voltage Range	—	—	V_{SS}	—	V_{REF}	V
V_{REF}	Reference Voltage	—	—	1.05	—	V_{DD}	V
I_{DAC}	Additional Current for DAC Enable	—	V_{REF}=5V	—	—	450	μA
DNL	Differential Non-linearity	—	2.4V≤V_{DD}≤5.5V	—	—	±4	LSB
INL	Integral Non-linearity	—	2.4V≤V_{DD}≤5.5V	—	—	±8	LSB

Note: 1. Load regulation is measured at a constant junction temperature, using pulse testing with a low ON time and is guaranteed up to the maximum power dissipation. Power dissipation is determined by the input/output differential voltage and the output current. Guaranteed maximum power dissipation will not be available over the full input/output range. The maximum allowable power dissipation at any ambient temperature is P_D=($T_{J(MAX)}$-T_a)/θ_{JA}.

2. Dropout voltage is defined as the input voltage minus the output voltage that produces a 2% change in the output voltage from the value at appointed V_{IN}.

Effective Number of Bits (ENOB)

V_{OREG}=3.3V, V_{REF}=1.25V, FLMS[2:0]=000

DATA RATE (SPS)	PGA Gain							
	1	2	4	8	16	32	64	128
5	19.7	19.8	19.6	19.7	19.7	19.6	19.2	18.6
10	19.4	19.3	19.3	19.3	19.3	19.1	18.7	18.1
20	19.0	18.8	18.7	18.9	18.8	18.6	18.2	17.5
40	18.4	18.3	18.3	18.3	18.3	18.1	17.7	17.0
80	18.1	17.9	18.0	17.9	17.9	17.6	17.2	16.5
160	17.6	17.4	17.4	17.4	17.3	17.1	16.6	15.9
320	15.8	15.8	15.9	15.8	15.9	15.9	15.8	15.3
640	14.1	14.0	14.0	14.1	14.1	14.0	14.1	14.4

V_{OREG}=3.3V, V_{REF}=1.25V, FLMS[2:0]=010

DATA RATE (SPS)	PGA Gain							
	1	2	4	8	16	32	64	128
12.5	19.4	18.8	18.7	18.8	18.8	18.7	18.9	18.1
25	19.0	18.3	18.3	18.3	18.3	18.2	17.9	17.3
50	18.5	17.8	17.8	17.8	17.9	17.7	17.4	16.8
100	18.2	18.2	18.1	18.2	18.1	17.8	17.2	16.4
200	17.9	17.8	17.8	17.8	17.6	17.3	16.7	15.9
400	17.4	17.2	17.2	17.2	17.1	16.8	16.2	15.4
800	16.2	16.1	16.1	16.1	16.1	15.9	15.5	14.8
1600	14.5	14.5	14.5	14.4	14.5	14.5	14.3	14.0

Comparator Electrical Characteristics

Ta=25°C

Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions		Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
		V_{DD}	Conditions				
V_{CMP}	Comparator Operating Voltage	—	—	2.2	—	5.5	V
I_{CMP}	Comparator Operating Current	3V	—	—	37	56	μA
		5V	—	—	130	200	
V_{CMPOS}	Comparator Input Offset Voltage	—	—	-10	—	10	mV
V_{HYS}	Hysteresis Width	—	—	20	40	60	mV
V_{CM}	Comparator Common Mode Voltage Range	—	—	V_{SS}	—	V_{DD}-1.4V	V
A_{OL}	Comparator Open Loop Gain	—	—	60	80	—	dB
t_{PD}	Comparator Response Time	—	With 100mV overdrive(Note)	—	200	450	ns

Note: Measured with comparator one input pin at V_{CM}=(V_{DD}-1.4)/2 while the other pin input transition from V_{SS} to (V_{CM}+100mV) or from V_{DD} to (V_{CM}-100mV).

LCD Electrical Characteristics

Ta=25°C

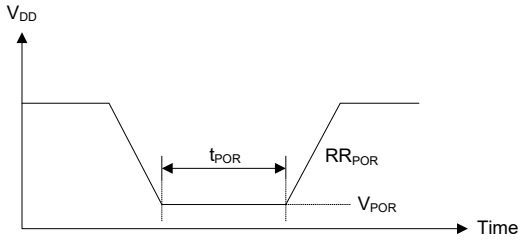
Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions			Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
		V_{DD}	Conditions					
I_{LCD}	Additional Current for LCD Enable (R Type)	5V	PLCD=5V, No load, 1/3Bias, RCT=0, LCDPR=0, LCD Clock=4kHz	LCDIS[1:0]=00B	—	25	37.5	μA
				LCDIS[1:0]=01B		50	75	
				LCDIS[1:0]=10B		100	150	
				LCDIS[1:0]=11B		200	300	
	Additional Current for LCD Enable (C Type)	5V	PLCD=5V, No load, 1/3 Bias, RCT=1, MCU powered down, LCD on, WDT off		—	3	6	μA
V_{LCD}	LCD Power Supply (PLCD Comes from PLCD Pin)	—	RCT=0, LCDPR=0		—	—	V_{DD}	V
	LCD Power Supply (PLCD Comes from Charge Pump)	2.6V~5.5V	RCT=0, LCDPR=1, CPVS[1:0]=00b		-10%	3.3	+10%	V
		2.3V~5.5V	RCT=0, LCDPR=1, CPVS[1:0]=01b			3.0		
		2.2V~5.5V	RCT=0, LCDPR=1, CPVS[1:0]=10b			2.7		
		3.8V~5.5V	RCT=0, LCDPR=1, CPVS[1:0]=11b			4.5		

Note: Users have to take care that V_{MAX} must be greater than or equal to V_{LCD}.

Power-on Reset Characteristics

Ta=25°C

Symbol	Parameter	Test Conditions		Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
		V_{DD}	Conditions				
V_{POR}	V_{DD} Start Voltage to Ensure Power-on Reset	—	—	—	—	100	mV
RR_{POR}	V_{DD} Rising Rate to Ensure Power-on Reset	—	—	0.035	—	—	V/ms
t_{POR}	Minimum Time for V_{DD} Stays at V_{POR} to Ensure Power-on Reset	—	—	1	—	—	ms

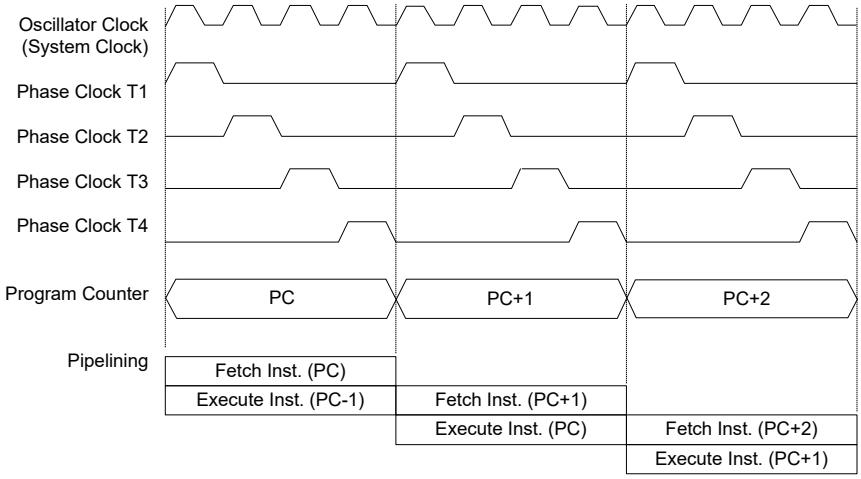


System Architecture

A key factor in the high-performance features of the Holtek range of microcontrollers is attributed to their internal system architecture. The range of the device take advantage of the usual features found within RISC microcontrollers providing increased speed of operation and enhanced performance. The pipelining scheme is implemented in such a way that instruction fetching and instruction execution are overlapped, hence instructions are effectively executed in one or two cycles for most of the standard or extended instructions respectively, with the exception of branch or call instructions which need one more cycle. An 8-bit wide ALU is used in practically all instruction set operations, which carries out arithmetic operations, logic operations, rotation, increment, decrement, branch decisions, etc. The internal data path is simplified by moving data through the Accumulator and the ALU. Certain internal registers are implemented in the Data Memory and can be directly or indirectly addressed. The simple addressing methods of these registers along with additional architectural features ensure that a minimum of external components is required to provide a functional I/O and A/D control system with maximum reliability and flexibility. This makes the device suitable for affordable, high-volume production for controller applications.

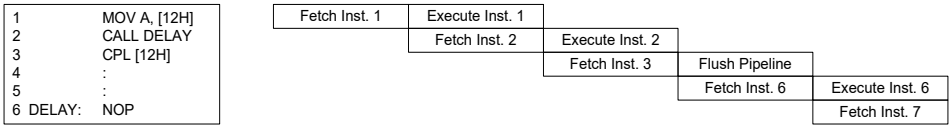
Clocking and Pipelining

The main system clock, derived from either a HXT, LXT, HIRC or LIRC oscillator is subdivided into four internally generated non-overlapping clocks, T1~T4. The Program Counter is incremented at the beginning of the T1 clock during which time a new instruction is fetched. The remaining T2~T4 clocks carry out the decoding and execution functions. In this way, one T1~T4 clock cycle forms one instruction cycle. Although the fetching and execution of instructions takes place in consecutive instruction cycles, the pipelining structure of the microcontroller ensures that instructions are effectively executed in one instruction cycle. The exception to this are instructions where the contents of the Program Counter are changed, such as subroutine calls or jumps, in which case the instruction will take one more instruction cycle to execute.



System Clocking and Pipelining

For instructions involving branches, such as jump or call instructions, two machine cycles are required to complete instruction execution. An extra cycle is required as the program takes one cycle to first obtain the actual jump or call address and then another cycle to actually execute the branch. The requirement for this extra cycle should be taken into account by programmers in timing sensitive applications.



Instruction Fetching

Program Counter

During program execution, the Program Counter is used to keep track of the address of the next instruction to be executed. It is automatically incremented by one each time an instruction is executed except for instructions, such as "JMP" or "CALL" that demands a jump to a non-consecutive Program Memory address. Only the lower 8 bits, known as the Program Counter Low Register, are directly addressable by the application program.

When executing instructions requiring jumps to non-consecutive addresses such as a jump instruction, a subroutine call, interrupt or reset, etc., the microcontroller manages program control by loading the required address into the Program Counter. For conditional skip instructions, once the condition has been met, the next instruction, which has already been fetched during the present instruction execution, is discarded and a dummy cycle takes its place while the correct instruction is obtained.

Program Counter	
Program Counter High Byte	**PCL Register**
PC12~PC8	PCL7~PCL0

Program Counter

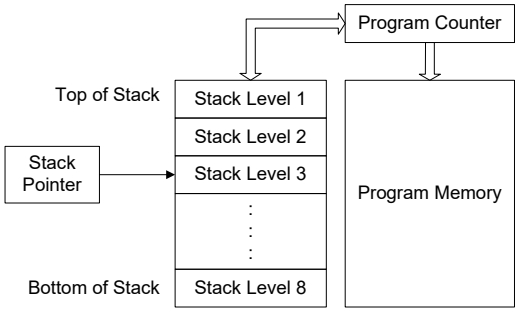
The lower byte of the Program Counter, known as the Program Counter Low register or PCL, is available for program control and is a readable and writeable register. By transferring data directly into this register, a short program jump can be executed directly; however, as only this low byte is available for manipulation, the jumps are limited to the present page of memory that is 256 locations. When such program jumps are executed it should also be noted that a dummy cycle will be inserted. Manipulating the PCL register may cause program branching, so an extra cycle is needed to pre-fetch.

Stack

This is a special part of the memory which is used to save the contents of the Program Counter only. The stack is organized into 8 levels and neither part of the data nor part of the program space, and is neither readable nor writeable. The activated level is indexed by the Stack Pointer, and is neither readable nor writeable. At a subroutine call or interrupt acknowledge signal, the contents of the Program Counter are pushed onto the stack. At the end of a subroutine or an interrupt routine, signaled by a return instruction, RET or RETI, the Program Counter is restored to its previous value from the stack. After a device reset, the Stack Pointer will point to the top of the stack.

If the stack is full and an enabled interrupt takes place, the interrupt request flag will be recorded but the acknowledge signal will be inhibited. When the Stack Pointer is decremented, by RET or RETI, the interrupt will be serviced. This feature prevents stack overflow allowing the programmer to use the structure more easily. However, when the stack is full, a CALL subroutine instruction can still be executed which will result in a stack overflow. Precautions should be taken to avoid such cases which might cause unpredictable program branching.

If the stack is overflow, the first Program Counter save in the stack will be lost.



Arithmetic and Logic Unit – ALU

The arithmetic-logic unit or ALU is a critical area of the microcontroller that carries out arithmetic and logic operations of the instruction set. Connected to the main microcontroller data bus, the ALU receives related instruction codes and performs the required arithmetic or logical operations after which the result will be placed in the specified register. As these ALU calculation or operations may result in carry, borrow or other status changes, the status register will be correspondingly updated to reflect these changes. The ALU supports the following functions:

- Arithmetic operations:

  ADD, ADDM, ADC, ADCM, SUB, SUBM, SBC, SBCM, DAA,

  LADD, LADDM, LADC, LADCM, LSUB, LSUBM, LSBC, LSBCM, LDAA
- Logic operations:

  AND, OR, XOR, ANDM, ORM, XORM, CPL, CPLA,

  LAND, LOR, LXOR, LANDM, LORM, LXORM, LCPL, LCPLA
- Rotation:

  RRA, RR, RRCA, RRC, RLA, RL, RLCA, RLC,

  LRR, LRRA, LRRCA, LRRC, LRLA, LRL, LRLCA, LRLC
- Increment and Decrement:

  INCA, INC, DECA, DEC,

  LINCA, LINC, LDECA, LDEC
- Branch decision:

  JMP, SZ, SZA, SNZ, SIZ, SDZ, SIZA, SDZA, CALL, RET, RETI,

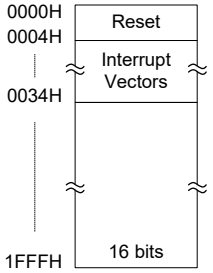
  LSZ, LSZA, LSNZ, LSIZ, LSDZ, LSIZA, LSDZA

Flash Program Memory

The Program Memory is the location where the user code or program is stored. For this device the Program Memory is Flash type, which means it can be programmed and re-programmed a large number of times, allowing the user the convenience of code modification on the same device. By using the appropriate programming tools, this Flash device offers users the flexibility to conveniently debug and develop their applications while also offering a means of field programming and updating.

Structure

The Program Memory has a capacity of 8K×16 bits. The Program Memory is addressed by the Program Counter and also contains data, table information and interrupt entries. Table data, which can be setup in any location within the Program Memory, is addressed by a separate table pointer register.



Program Memory Structure

Special Vectors

Within the Program Memory, certain locations are reserved for the reset and interrupts. The location 0000H is reserved for use by the device reset for program initialisation. After a device reset is initiated, the program will jump to this location and begin execution.

Look-up Table

Any location within the Program Memory can be defined as a look-up table where programmers can store fixed data. To use the look-up table, the table pointer must first be setup by placing the address of the look up data to be retrieved in the table pointer register, TBLP and TBHP. These registers define the total address of the look-up table.

After setting up the table pointer, the table data can be retrieved from the Program Memory using the corresponding table read instruction such as "TABRD [m]" or "TABRDL [m]" respectively when the memory [m] is located in sector 0. If the memory [m] is located in other sectors, the data can be retrieved from the program memory using the corresponding extended table read instruction such as "LTABRD [m]" or "LTABRDL [m]" respectively. When the instruction is executed, the lower order table byte from the Program Memory will be transferred to the user defined Data Memory register [m] as specified in the instruction. The higher order table data byte from the Program Memory will be transferred to the TBLH special register.

The accompanying diagram illustrates the addressing data flow of the look-up table.

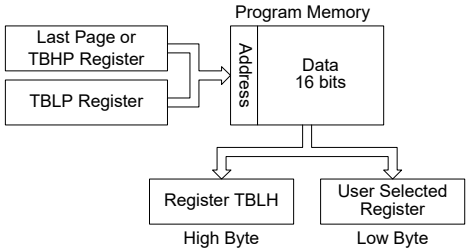


Table Program Example

The following example shows how the table pointer and table data is defined and retrieved from the microcontroller. This example uses raw table data located in the Program Memory which is stored there using the ORG statement. The value at this ORG statement is "1F00H" which refers to the start address of the last page within the 8K Program Memory of the microcontroller. The table pointer low byte register is setup here to have an initial value of "06H". This will ensure that the first data read from the data table will be at the Program Memory address "1F06H" or 6 locations after the start of the last page. Note that the value for the table pointer is referenced to the first address specified by TBLP and TBHP if the "TABRD [m]" instruction is being used. The high byte of the table data which in this case is equal to zero will be transferred to the TBLH register automatically when the "TABRD [m]" instruction is executed.

Because the TBLH register is a read/write register and can be restored, care should be taken to ensure its protection if both the main routine and Interrupt Service Routine use table read instructions. If using the table read instructions, the Interrupt Service Routines may change the value of the TBLH and subsequently cause errors if used again by the main routine. As a rule it is recommended that simultaneous use of the table read instructions should be avoided. However, in situations where simultaneous use cannot be avoided, the interrupts should be disabled prior to the execution of any main routine table-read instructions. Note that all table related instructions require two instruction cycles to complete their operation.

Table Read Program Example

```
tempreg1 db ? ; temporary register #1
tempreg2 db ? ; temporary register #2
:
:
mov a,06h     ; initialise low table pointer - note that this address is referenced
mov tblp,a    ; to the last page or the page that tbhp pointed
mov a,1Fh     ; initialise high table pointer
mov tbhp,a
:
:
tabrd tempreg1 ; transfers value in table referenced by table pointer data at program
               ; memory address "1F06H" transferred to tempreg1 and TBLH
dec tblp       ; reduce value of table pointer by one
tabrd tempreg2 ; transfers value in table referenced by table pointer
               ; data at program memory address "1F05H" transferred to
               ; tempreg2 and TBLH in this example the data "1AH" is
               ; transferred to tempreg1 and data "0FH" to register tempreg2
:
:
org 1F00h      ; sets initial address of program memory
dc 00Ah, 00Bh, 00Ch, 00Dh, 00Eh, 00Fh, 01Ah, 01Bh
:
:
```

In Circuit Programming – ICP

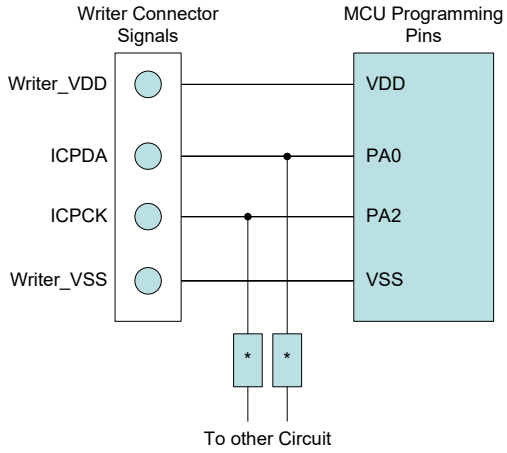
The provision of Flash type Program Memory provides the user with a means of convenient and easy upgrades and modifications to their programs on the same device. As an additional convenience, Holtek has provided a means of programming the microcontroller in-circuit using a 4-pin interface. This provides manufacturers with the possibility of manufacturing their circuit boards complete with a programmed or un-programmed microcontroller, and then programming or upgrading the program at a later stage. This enables product manufacturers to easily keep their manufactured products supplied with the latest program releases without removal and re-insertion of the device.

The Holtek Flash MCU to Writer Programming Pin correspondence table is as follows:

Holtek Writer Pins	MCU Programming Pins	Pin Description
ICPDA	PA0	Programming Serial Data/Address
ICPCK	PA2	Programming Clock
VDD	VDD	Power Supply
VSS	VSS	Ground

The Program Memory can be programmed serially in-circuit using this 4-wire interface. Data is downloaded and uploaded serially on a single pin with an additional line for the clock. Two additional lines are required for the power supply. The technical details regarding the in-circuit programming of the device are beyond the scope of this document and will be supplied in supplementary literature.

During the programming process, the user must take care of the ICPDA and ICPCK pins for data and clock programming purposes to ensure that no other outputs are connected to these two pins.



Note: * may be resistor or capacitor. The resistance of * must be greater than 1k or the capacitance of * must be less than 1nF.

On Chip Debug Support – OCDS

There is an EV chip named HT67V5652 which is used to emulate the real MCU device named HT67F5652. The EV chip device also provides an "On-Chip Debug" function to debug the device during the development process. The EV chip and the actual MCU device are almost functionally compatible except for "On-Chip Debug" function. Users can use the EV chip device to emulate the real chip device behavior by connecting the OCDSDA and OCDSCK pins to the Holtek HT-IDE development tools. The OCDSDA pin is the OCDS Data/Address input/output pin while the OCDSCK pin is the OCDS clock input pin. When users use the EV chip for debugging, other functions which are shared with the OCDSDA and OCDSCK pins in the actual MCU device will have no effect in the EV chip. However, the two OCDS pins which are pin-shared with the ICP

programming pins are still used as the Flash Memory programming pins for ICP. For more detailed OCDS information, refer to the corresponding document named "Holtek e-Link for 8-bit MCU OCDS User's Guide".

Holtek e-Link Pins	EV Chip Pins	Pin Description
OCDSDA	OCDSDA	On-Chip Debug Support Data/Address input/output
OCDSCK	OCDSCK	On-Chip Debug Support Clock input
VDD	VDD	Power Supply
VSS	VSS	Ground

In Application Programming – IAP

The device offers IAP function to update data or application program to Flash ROM. Users can define any ROM location for IAP, but there are some features which user must notice in using IAP function.

- Erase page: 32 words/page
- Writing: 32 words/time
- Reading: 1 word/time

In Application Programming Control Register

The Address register, FARL and FARH, the Data registers, FD0L/FD0H, FD1L/FD1H, FD2L/FD2H and FD3L/FD3H, located in all Data Memory sectors, together with the Control registers, FC0, FC1 and FC2, located in Data Memory Sector 1, are the corresponding Flash access registers for IAP. If using the indirect addressing method to access the FC0, FC1 and FC2 registers, all read and write operations to the registers must be performed using the Indirect Addressing Register, IAR1 or IAR2, and the Memory Pointer pair, MP1L/MP1H or MP2L/MP2H. Because the FC0, FC1 and FC2 control registers are located at the address of 6DH~6FH in Data Memory sector 1, the desired value ranged from 6DH~6FH must first be written into the MP1L or MP2L Memory Pointer low byte and the value "01H" must also be written into the MP1H or MP2H Memory Pointer high byte.

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
FC0	CFWEN	FMOD2	FMOD1	FMOD0	FWPEN	FWT	FRDEN	FRD
FC1	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
FC2	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	CLWB
FARL	A7	A6	A5	A4	A3	A2	A1	A0
FARH	—	—	—	A12	A11	A10	A9	A8
FD0L	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
FD0H	D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8
FD1L	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
FD1H	D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8
FD2L	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
FD2H	D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8
FD3L	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
FD3H	D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8

IAP Register List

• **FC0 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	CFWEN	FMOD2	FMOD1	FMOD0	FWPEN	FWT	FRDEN	FRD
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7 **CFWEN**: Flash Memory Write enable control
0: Flash memory write function is disabled
1: Flash memory write function has been successfully enabled
When this bit is cleared to 0 by application program, the Flash memory write function is disabled. Note that writing a "1" into this bit results in no action. This bit is used to indicate that the Flash memory write function status. When this bit is set to 1 by hardware, it means that the Flash memory write function is enabled successfully. Otherwise, the Flash memory write function is disabled as the bit content is zero.

Bit 6~4 **FMOD2~FMOD0**: Mode selection
000: Write program memory
001: Page erase program memory
010: Reserved
011: Read program memory
100: Reserved
101: Reserved
110: FWEN mode – Flash memory write function enable mode
111: Reserved

Bit 3 **FWPEN**: Flash Memory Write procedure enable control
0: Disable
1: Enable
When this bit is set to 1 and the FMOD field is set to "110", the IAP controller will execute the "Flash memory write function enable" procedure. Once the Flash memory write function is successfully enabled, it is not necessary to set the FWPEN bit any more.

Bit 2 **FWT**: Flash ROM write control bit
0: Do not initiate Flash memory write or Flash memory write process is completed
1: Initiate Flash memory write process
This bit can be set by software only, when write process completed, hardware will clear "FWT" bit.

Bit 1 **FRDEN**: Flash memory read enabled bit
0: Flash memory read disable
1: Flash memory read enable

Bit 0 **FRD**: Flash memory read control bit
0: Do not initiate Flash memory read or Flash memory read process is completed
1: Initiate Flash memory read process
This bit can be set by software only, when read process completed, hardware will clear "FRD" bit.

• **FC1 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 **D7~D0**: whole chip reset
When user writes 55H to this register, it will generate a reset signal to reset whole chip.

• **FC2 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	CLWB
R/W	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	0

Bit 7~1 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 0 **CLWB**: Flash Memory Write buffer clear control
0: Do not initiate Write Buffer Clear or Write Buffer Clear process is completed
1: Initiate Write Buffer Clear process
This bit can be set by software only, when clear write buffer process completed, hardware will clear "CLWB" bit.

• **FARL Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	A7	A6	A5	A4	A3	A2	A1	A0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 Flash Memory Address [7:0]

• **FARH Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	A12	A11	A10	A9	A8
R/W	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	—	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~5 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 4~0 Flash Memory Address [12:8]

• **FD0L Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 The first Flash Memory data [7:0]

• **FD0H Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 The first Flash Memory data [15:8]

• **FD1L Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 The second Flash Memory data [7:0]

• **FD1H Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 The second Flash Memory data [15:8]

• **FD2L Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 The third Flash Memory data [7:0]

• **FD2H Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 The third Flash Memory data [15:8]

• **FD3L Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 The fourth Flash Memory data [7:0]

• **FD3H Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 The fourth Flash Memory data [15:8]

Flash Memory Write Function Enable Procedure

In order to allow users to change the Flash memory data through the IAP control registers, users must first enable the Flash memory write operation by the following procedure:

Step 1. Write "110" into the FMOD2~FMOD0 bits to select the FWEN mode.

Step 2. Set the FWPEN bit to "1". The step 1 and step 2 can be executed simultaneously.

Step 3. The pattern data with a sequence of 00H, 04H, 0DH, 09H, C3H and 40H must be written into the FD1L, FD1H, FD2L, FD2H, FD3L and FD3H registers respectively.

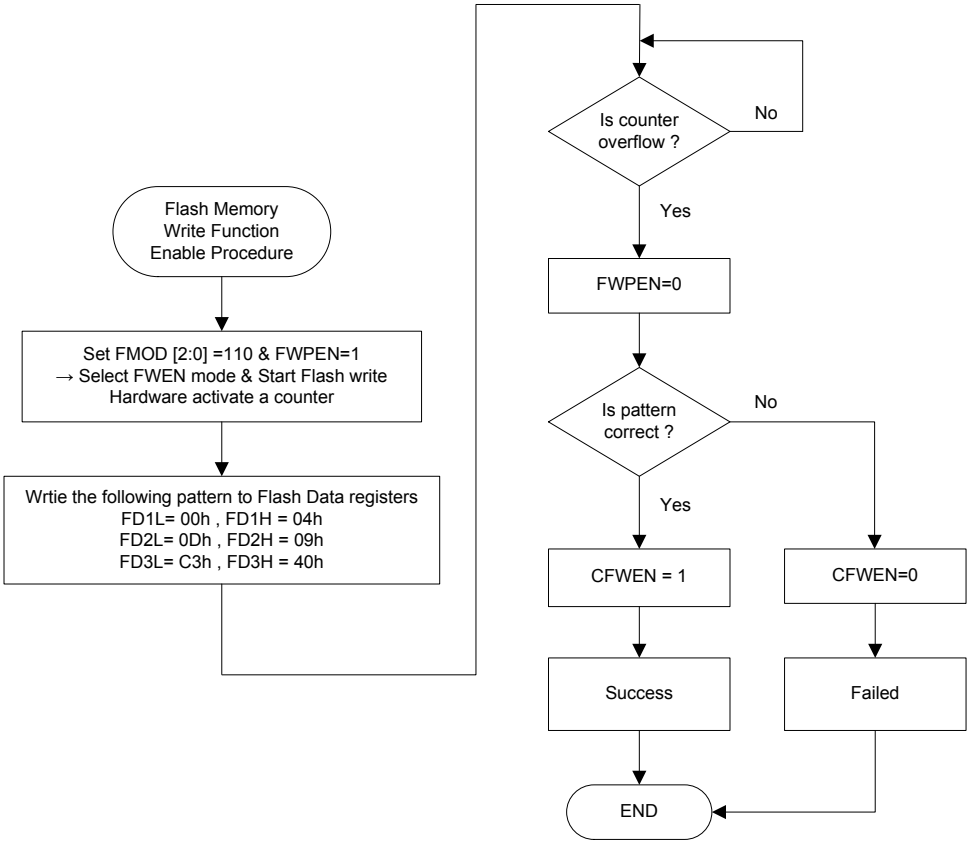
Step 4. A counter with a time-out period of 300μs will be activated to allow users writing the correct pattern data into the FD1L/FD1H~FD3L/FD3H register pairs. The counter clock is derived from LIRC oscillator.

Step 5. If the counter overflows or the pattern data is incorrect, the Flash memory write operation will not be enabled and users must again repeat the above procedure. Then the FWPEN bit will automatically be cleared to 0 by hardware.

Step 6. If the pattern data is correct before the counter overflows, the Flash memory write operation will be enabled and the FWPEN bit will automatically be cleared to 0 by hardware. The CFWEN bit will also be set to 1 by hardware to indicate that the Flash memory write operation is successfully enabled.

Step 7. Once the Flash memory write operation is enabled, the user can change the Flash ROM data through the Flash control register.

Step 8. To disable the Flash memory write operation, the user can clear the CFWEN bit to 0.



Flash Memory Write Function Enable Procedure

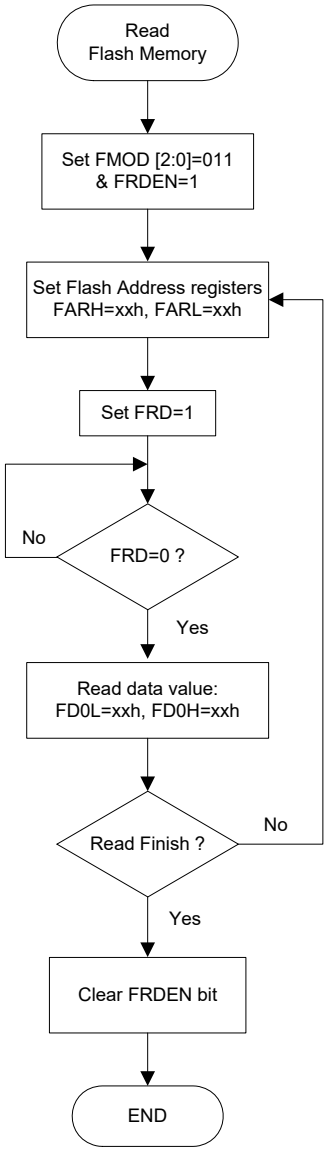
Flash Memory Read/Write Procedure

After the Flash memory write function is successfully enabled through the preceding IAP procedure, users must first erase the corresponding Flash memory page and then initiate the Flash memory write operation. For the device the number of the page erase operation is 32 words per page, the available page erase address is specified by FARH register and the content of FARL[7:5] bit field.

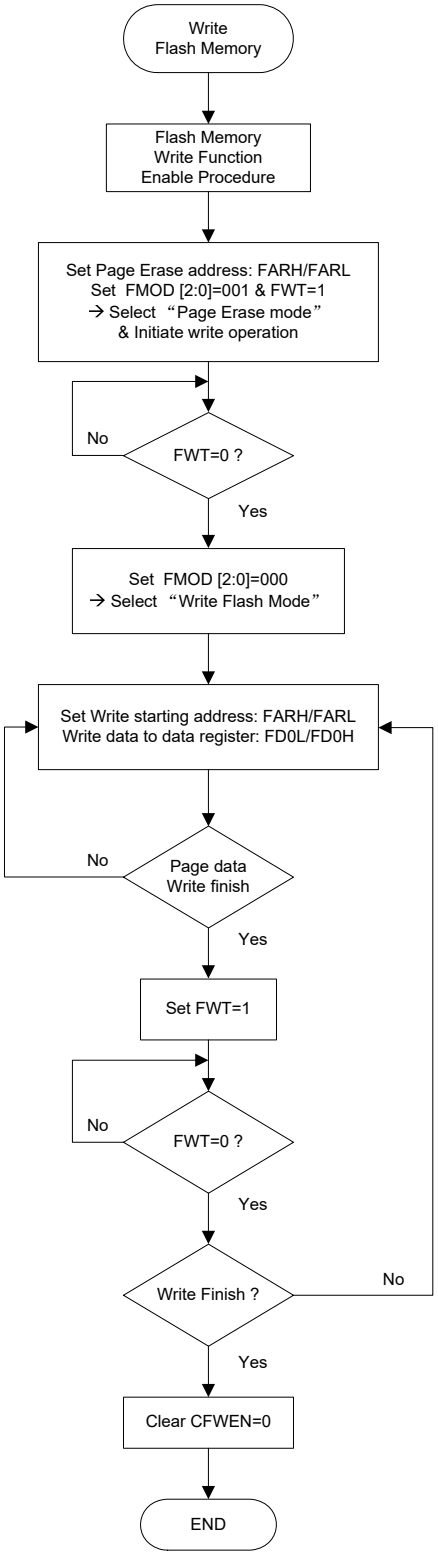
Erase Page	FARH	FARL[7:5]	FARL[4:0]
0	0000 0000	000	x xxxx
1	0000 0000	001	x xxxx
2	0000 0000	010	x xxxx
3	0000 0000	011	x xxxx
4	0000 0000	100	x xxxx
5	0000 0000	101	x xxxx
6	0000 0000	110	x xxxx
7	0000 0000	111	x xxxx
8	0000 0001	000	x xxxx
9	0000 0001	001	x xxxx
:	:	:	:
126	0000 1111	110	x xxxx
127	0000 1111	111	x xxxx
128	0001 0000	000	x xxxx
129	0001 0000	001	x xxxx
:	:	:	:
254	0001 1111	110	x xxxx
255	0001 1111	111	x xxxx

"x": don't care

Erase Page Number and Selection



Read Flash Memory Procedure



Write Flash Memory Procedure

Note: When the FWT or FRD bit is set to 1, the MCU is stopped.

Emulated In System Programming – Emulated ISP

In microcontroller product development, ISP (In System Programming) has become an indispensable function in product lifecycle management. It allows engineers or maintenance personnel to perform online firmware updates directly on the product without removing the device.

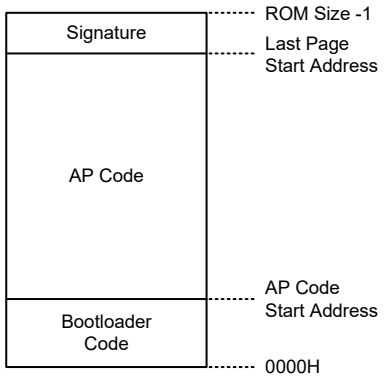
Holtek's emulated ISP is a solution designed with a focus on software and architectural flexibility. It is intended for MCUs without hardware ISP support. By using their integrated IAP (In Application Programming) mechanism and a communication module, it "emulates" the ISP function at the software layer, enabling online updates without the need for an additional physical programmer.

Core Technical Architecture:

Dual-project region (Bootloader + AP): By using Holtek's HT-IDE3000 development tool, the system will automatically or guide users to generate two independent projects: the IAP Bootloader code which handles updates, and the AP code which handles main functionality.

Flexible communication interfaces: Depending on the interface types supported by the MCU, select UART, SPI or I²C to transmit update files.

Seamless toolchain integration: Holtek provides HT-CombineBLAP (MTP synthesis software) and the dedicated host computer HT8-IAP tool. Before the product shipment, both the Bootloader and AP codes can be packaged into a single file for initial programming; after shipment, the AP region can be updated at any time via the communication port.



Emulated ISP Structure

Note: 1. The Signature Data is placed on the last page of the ROM (IAP page erase size).
2. The HT-IDE3000 provides default values for the AP Code Start Address and Signature Data, which users can edit and modify.

When users select the UART serial port as the emulated ISP update interface, only a USB to UART bridge is required. After the configurations of the COM port, Baud Rate, HT8_IAP update software and connection are completed, the product can be updated online. When selecting SPI or I2C communication method, it needs to be used with the e-LinkPro2 hardware, and the e-LinkPro2 firmware must be updated to USB Bridge function before it can be used as an emulated ISP to update hardware. For the relevant operation and usage instructions, refer to the "Emulated ISP Solution User Guide" through Holtek official website → Development Tools.

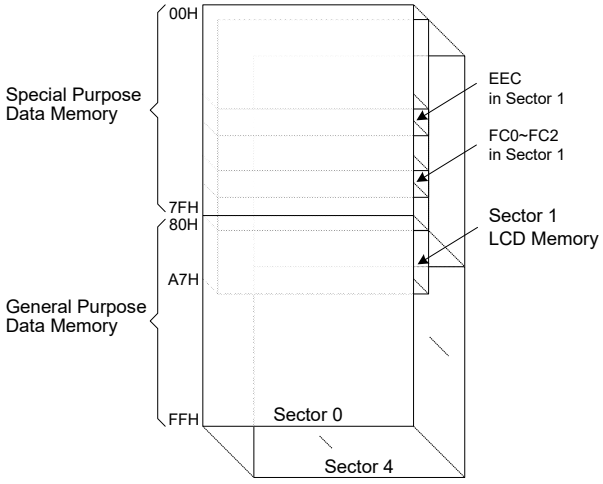
Data Memory

The Data Memory is a volatile area of 8-bit wide RAM internal memory and is the location where temporary information is stored.

Divided into three types, the first of these is an area of RAM where special function registers are located. These registers have fixed locations and are necessary for correct operation of the device. Many of these registers can be read from and written to directly under program control, however, some remain protected from user manipulation. The second area of Data Memory is reserved for general purpose use. All locations within this area are read and write accessible under program control. The third area is reserved for the LCD Memory. This special area of Data Memory is mapped directly to the LCD display so data written into this memory area will directly affect the displayed data.

Structure

The Data Memory is subdivided into several sectors. The Special Purpose Data Memory registers are accessible in all sectors, with the exception of the EEC register at address 40H, and the FC0, FC1 and FC2 registers at addresses 6DH~6FH, which are only accessible in Sector 1. Switching between the different Data Memory sectors is achieved by setting the Memory Pointers to the correct value. The start address of the Data Memory for the device is the address 00H.



Data Memory Structure

Data Memory Addressing

For the device that supports the extended instructions, there is no Bank Pointer for Data Memory. For Data Memory the desired Sector is pointed by the MP1H or MP2H register and the certain Data Memory address in the selected sector is specified by the MP1L or MP2L register when using indirect addressing access.

Direct Addressing can be used in all sectors using the corresponding instruction which can address all available data memory space. For the accessed data memory which is located in any data memory sectors except sector 0, the extended instructions can be used to access the data memory instead of using the indirect addressing access. The main difference between standard instructions and extended instructions is that the data memory address "m" in the extended instructions has 10 valid bits, the high byte indicates a sector and the low byte indicates a specific address.

General Purpose Data Memory

All microcontroller programs require an area of read/write memory where temporary data can be stored and retrieved for use later. It is this area of RAM memory that is known as General Purpose Data Memory. This area of Data Memory is fully accessible by the user programing for both reading and writing operations. By using the bit operation instructions individual bits can be set or reset under program control giving the user a large range of flexibility for bit manipulation in the Data Memory.

Special Purpose Data Memory

This area of Data Memory is where registers, necessary for the correct operation of the microcontroller, are stored. Most of the registers are both readable and writeable but some are protected and are readable only, the details of which are located under the relevant Special Function Register section. Note that for locations that are unused, any read instruction to these addresses will return the value "00H".

	Sector 0~4		Sector 0,2,3,4	Sector 1
00H	IAR0	40H		EEC
01H	MP0	41H	EEA	
02H	IAR1	42H	EED	
03H	MP1L	43H	PTM2C0	
04H	MP1H	44H	PTM2C1	
05H	ACC	45H	PTM2DL	
06H	PCL	46H	PTM2DH	
07H	TBLP	47H	PTM2AL	
08H	TBLH	48H	PTM2AH	
09H	TBHP	49H	CTRL0	
0AH	STATUS	4AH	PTM1RPL	
0BH		4BH	PTM1RPH	
0CH	IAR2	4CH	PTM2RPL	
0DH	MP2L	4DH	PTM2RPH	
0EH	MP2H	4EH	CP1C	
0FH		4FH	CP0C	
10H	INTC0	50H	PWRC	
11H	INTC1	51H	PGAC0	
12H	INTC2	52H	PGAC1	
13H	INTC3	53H	PGACS	
14H	MFI0	54H	USR	
15H	MFI1	55H	UCR1	
16H	MFI2	56H	UCR2	
17H	MFI3	57H	BRG	
18H	PAWU	58H	TXR_RXR	
19H	PAPU	59H	IRCTRL0	
1AH	PA	5AH	IRCTRL1	
1BH	PAC	5BH	LCDC	
1CH	PBPU	5CH	LCD1	
1DH	PB	5DH	LCD2	
1EH	PBC	5EH	LCD3	
1FH	PCPU	5FH		
20H	PC	60H	SIMC0	
21H	PCC	61H	SIMC1	
22H	PDPU	62H	SIMA/SIMC2	
23H	PD	63H	SIMD	
24H	PDC	64H		
25H		65H	SIMTOC	
26H	SMOD	66H	STM3C0	
27H	TBC	67H	STM3C1	
28H	LVDC	68H	STM3DL	
29H	INTEG	69H	STM3DH	
2AH	WDTC	6AH	STM3AL	
2BH	LVRC	6BH	STM3AH	
2CH	CTRL	6CH	STM3RP	
2DH		6DH		FC0
2EH	ADRL	6EH		FC1
2FH	ADRH	6FH		FC2
30H	ADCR0	70H	FARL	
31H	ADCR1	71H	FARH	
32H	ADCS	72H	FD0L	
33H	ADRM	73H	FD0H	
34H	PTM1C0	74H	FD1L	
35H	PTM1C1	75H	FD1H	
36H	PTM1DL	76H	FD2L	
37H	PTM1DH	77H	FD2H	
38H	PTM1AL	78H	FD3L	
39H	PTM1AH	79H	FD3H	
3AH	TM0C0	7AH	LCDCP	
3BH	TM0C1	7BH	DSDAH	
3CH	TM0DL	7CH	DSDAL	
3DH	TM0DH	7DH	DSDACC	
3EH	TM0AL	7EH	DSOPC	
3FH	TM0AH	7FH		

: unused, read as 00H

Special Purpose Data Memory

Special Function Register Description

Most of the Special Function Register details will be described in the relevant functional section; however several registers require a separate description in this section.

Indirect Addressing Registers – IAR0, IAR1, IAR2

The Indirect Addressing Registers, IAR0, IAR1 and IAR2, although having their locations in normal RAM register space, do not actually physically exist as normal registers. The method of indirect addressing for RAM data manipulation uses these Indirect Addressing Registers and Memory Pointers, in contrast to direct memory addressing, where the actual memory address is specified. Actions on the IAR0, IAR1 and IAR2 registers will result in no actual read or write operation to these registers but rather to the memory location specified by their corresponding Memory Pointers, MP0, MP1L/MP1H or MP2L/MP2H. Acting as a pair, IAR0 and MP0 can together access data only from Sector 0 while the IAR1 register together with the MP1L/MP1H register pair and IAR2 register together with the MP2L/MP2H register pair can access data from any Data Memory Sector. As the Indirect Addressing Registers are not physically implemented, reading the Indirect Addressing Registers will return a result of "00H" and writing to the registers will result in no operation.

Memory Pointers – MP0, MP1L, MP1H, MP2L, MP2H

Five Memory Pointers, known as MP0, MP1L, MP1H, MP2L, MP2H, are provided. These Memory Pointers are physically implemented in the Data Memory and can be manipulated in the same way as normal registers providing a convenient way with which to address and track data. When any operation to the relevant Indirect Addressing Registers is carried out, the actual address that the microcontroller is directed to is the address specified by the related Memory Pointer. MP0, together with Indirect Addressing Register, IAR0, are used to access data from Sector 0, while MP1L/MP1H together with IAR1 and MP2L/MP2H together with IAR2 are used to access data from all sectors according to the corresponding MP1H or MP2H register. Direct Addressing can be used in all sectors using the corresponding instruction which can address all available data memory space.

The following example shows how to clear a section of four Data Memory locations already defined as locations adres1 to adres4.

Indirect Addressing Program Example

Example 1

```
data .section 'data'
adres1 db ?
adres2 db ?
adres3 db ?
adres4 db ?
block  db ?
code .section at 0 'code'
org 00h
start:
mov a,04h            ; setup size of block
mov block,a
mov a,offset adres1  ; Accumulator loaded with first RAM address
mov mp0,a            ; setup memory pointer with first RAM address
loop:
clr IAR0             ; clear the data at address defined by MP0
inc mp0              ; increment memory pointer
sdz block            ; check if last memory location has been cleared
jmp loop
continue:
    :
```

Example 2

```
data .section 'data'
adres1 db ?
adres2 db ?
adres3 db ?
adres4 db ?
block  db ?
code .section at 0 'code'
org 00h
start:
mov a,04h            ; setup size of block
mov block,a
mov a,01h            ; setup the memory sector
mov mp1h,a
mov a,offset adres1  ; Accumulator loaded with first RAM address
mov mp1l,a           ; setup memory pointer with first RAM address
loop:
clr IAR1             ; clear the data at address defined by MP1L
inc mp1l             ; increment memory pointer MP1L
sdz block            ; check if last memory location has been cleared
jmp loop
continue:
     :
```

The important point to note here is that in the example shown above, no reference is made to specific Data Memory addresses.

Direct Addressing Program Example using extended instructions

```
data .section 'data'
temp db ?
code .section at 0 'code'
org 00h
start:
lmov a,[m]           ; move [m] data to acc
lsub a, [m+1]        ; compare [m] and [m+1] data
snz  c               ; [m]>[m+1]?
jmp continue         ; no
lmov a,[m]           ; yes, exchange [m] and [m+1] data
mov  temp,a
lmov a,[m+1]
lmov [m],a
mov  a,temp
lmov [m+1],a
continue:
     :
```

Note: Here "m" is a data memory address located in any data memory sectors. For example, m=1F0H, it indicates address 0F0H in Sector 1.

Accumulator – ACC

The Accumulator is central to the operation of any microcontroller and is closely related with operations carried out by the ALU. The Accumulator is the place where all intermediate results from the ALU are stored. Without the Accumulator it would be necessary to write the result of each calculation or logical operation such as addition, subtraction, shift, etc., to the Data Memory resulting in higher programming and timing overheads. Data transfer operations usually involve the temporary storage function of the Accumulator; for example, when transferring data between one user-defined register and another, it is necessary to do this by passing the data through the Accumulator as no direct transfer between two registers is permitted.

Program Counter Low Register – PCL

To provide additional program control functions, the low byte of the Program Counter is made accessible to programmers by locating it within the Special Purpose area of the Data Memory. By manipulating this register, direct jumps to other program locations are easily implemented. Loading a value directly into this PCL register will cause a jump to the specified Program Memory location; however, as the register is only 8-bit wide, only jumps within the current Program Memory page are permitted. When such operations are used, note that a dummy cycle will be inserted.

Look-up Table Registers – TBLP, TBHP, TBLH

These three special function registers are used to control operation of the look-up table which is stored in the Program Memory. TBLP and TBHP are the table pointer registers and indicate the location where the table data is located. Their value must be setup before any table read commands are executed. Their value can be changed, for example using the "INC" or "DEC" instructions, allowing for easy table data pointing and reading. TBLH is the location where the high order byte of the table data is stored after a table read data instruction has been executed. Note that the lower order table data byte is transferred to a user defined location.

Status Register – STATUS

This 8-bit register contains the SC flag, CZ flag, zero flag (Z), carry flag (C), auxiliary carry flag (AC), overflow flag (OV), power down flag (PDF), and watchdog time-out flag (TO). These arithmetic/logical operation and system management flags are used to record the status and operation of the microcontroller.

With the exception of the TO and PDF flags, bits in the status register can be altered by instructions like most other registers. Any data written into the status register will not change the TO or PDF flag. In addition, operations related to the status register may give different results due to the different instruction operations. The TO flag can be affected only by a system power-up, a WDT time-out or by executing the "CLR WDT" or "HALT" instruction. The PDF flag is affected only by executing the "HALT" or "CLR WDT" instruction or during a system power-up.

The Z, OV, AC, C, SC and CZ flags generally reflect the status of the latest operations.

- SC is the result of the "XOR" operation which is performed by the OV flag and the MSB of the current instruction operation result.
- CZ is the operational result of different flags for different instructions. Refer to register definitions for more details.
- C is set if an operation results in a carry during an addition operation or if a borrow does not take place during a subtraction operation; otherwise C is cleared. C is also affected by a rotate through carry instruction.

- AC is set if an operation results in a carry out of the low nibbles in addition, or no borrow from the high nibble into the low nibble in subtraction; otherwise AC is cleared.
- Z is set if the result of an arithmetic or logical operation is zero; otherwise Z is cleared.
- OV is set if an operation results in a carry into the highest-order bit but not a carry out of the highest-order bit, or vice versa; otherwise OV is cleared.
- PDF is cleared by a system power-up or executing the "CLR WDT" instruction. PDF is set by executing the "HALT" instruction.
- TO is cleared by a system power-up or executing the "CLR WDT" or "HALT" instruction. TO is set by a WDT time-out.

In addition, on entering an interrupt sequence or executing a subroutine call, the status register will not be pushed onto the stack automatically. If the contents of the status registers are important and if the subroutine can corrupt the status register, precautions must be taken to correctly save it.

• STATUS Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	SC	CZ	TO	PDF	OV	Z	AC	C
R/W	R	R	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	x	x	0	0	x	x	x	x

"x" unknown

Bit 7 **SC**: The result of the "XOR" operation which is performed by the OV flag and the MSB of the instruction operation result.

Bit 6 **CZ**: The operational result of different flags for different instructions.
For SUB/SUBM/LSUB/LSUBM instructions, the CZ flag is equal to the Z flag.
For SBC/ SBCM/ LSBC/ LSBCM instructions, the CZ flag is the "AND" operation result which is performed by the previous operation CZ flag and current operation zero flag.
For other instructions, the CZ flag will not be affected.

Bit 5 **TO**: Watchdog Time-Out flag
0: After power up or executing the "CLR WDT" or "HALT" instruction
1: A watchdog time-out occurred.

Bit 4 **PDF**: Power down flag
0: After power up or executing the "CLR WDT" instruction
1: By executing the "HALT" instruction

Bit 3 **OV**: Overflow flag
0: no overflow
1: an operation results in a carry into the highest-order bit but not a carry out of the highest-order bit or vice versa.

Bit 2 **Z**: Zero flag
0: The result of an arithmetic or logical operation is not zero
1: The result of an arithmetic or logical operation is zero

Bit 1 **AC**: Auxiliary flag
0: no auxiliary carry
1: an operation results in a carry out of the low nibbles, in addition, or no borrow from the high nibble into the low nibble in subtraction

Bit 0 **C**: Carry flag
0: no carry-out
1: an operation results in a carry during an addition operation or if a borrow does not take place during a subtraction operation
C is also affected by a rotate through carry instruction.

EEPROM Data Memory

This device contains an area of internal EEPROM Data Memory. EEPROM, which stands for Electrically Erasable Programmable Read Only Memory, is by its nature a non-volatile form of re-programmable memory, with data retention even when its power supply is removed. By incorporating this kind of data memory, a whole new host of application possibilities are made available to the designer. The availability of EEPROM storage allows information such as product identification numbers, calibration values, specific user data, system setup data or other product information to be stored directly within the product microcontroller. The process of reading and writing data to the EEPROM memory has been reduced to a very trivial affair.

EEPROM Data Memory Structure

The EEPROM Data Memory capacity is 128×8 bits for the device. Unlike the Program Memory and RAM Data Memory, the EEPROM Data Memory is not directly mapped into memory space and is therefore not directly addressable in the same way as the other types of memory. Read and Write operations to the EEPROM are carried out in single byte operations using an address and data register in Sector 0 and a single control register in Sector 1.

EEPROM Registers

Three registers control the overall operation of the internal EEPROM Data Memory. These are the address register, EEA, the data register, EED and a single control register, EEC. As both the EEA and EED registers are located in all sectors, they can be directly accessed in the same was as any other Special Function Register. The EEC register, however, being located in Sector1, can be read from or written to indirectly using the MP1L/MP1H or MP2L/MP2H Memory Pointer pair and Indirect Addressing Register, IAR1/IAR2. Because the EEC control register is located at address 40H in Sector 1, the Memory Pointer low byte register, MP1L or MP2L, must first be set to the value 40H and the Memory Pointer high byte MP1H or MP2H register, set to the value, 01H, before any operations on the EEC register are executed.

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
EEA	—	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
EED	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
EEC	—	—	—	—	WREN	WR	RDEN	RD

EEPROM Register List

- **EEA Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

"x" unknown

Bit 7 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 6~0 **D6~D0**: Data EEPROM address
Data EEPROM address bit 6 ~ bit 0

• **EED Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

"x" unknown

Bit 7~0 **D7~D0**: Data EEPROM data
Data EEPROM data bit 7 ~ bit 0

• **EEC Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	WREN	WR	RDEN	RD
R/W	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~4 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 3 **WREN**: Data EEPROM Write Enable
0: Disable
1: Enable
This is the Data EEPROM Write Enable Bit which must be set high before Data EEPROM write operations are carried out. Clearing this bit to zero will inhibit Data EEPROM write operations.

Bit 2 **WR**: EEPROM Write Control
0: Write cycle has finished
1: Activate a write cycle
This is the Data EEPROM Write Control Bit and when set high by the application program will activate a write cycle. This bit will be automatically reset to zero by the hardware after the write cycle has finished. Setting this bit high will have no effect if the WREN has not first been set high.

Bit 1 **RDEN**: Data EEPROM Read Enable
0: Disable
1: Enable
This is the Data EEPROM Read Enable Bit which must be set high before Data EEPROM read operations are carried out. Clearing this bit to zero will inhibit Data EEPROM read operations.

Bit 0 **RD**: EEPROM Read Control
0: Read cycle has finished
1: Activate a read cycle
This is the Data EEPROM Read Control Bit and when set high by the application program will activate a read cycle. This bit will be automatically reset to zero by the hardware after the read cycle has finished. Setting this bit high will have no effect if the RDEN has not first been set high.

Note: The WREN, WR, RDEN and RD cannot be set high at the same time in one instruction. The WR and RD cannot be set high at the same time.

Reading Data from the EEPROM

To read data from the EEPROM, the read enable bit, RDEN, in the EEC register must first be set high to enable the read function. The EEPROM address of the data to be read must then be placed in the EEA register. If the RD bit in the EEC register is now set high, a read cycle will be initiated. Setting the RD bit high will not initiate a read operation if the RDEN bit has not been set. When the read cycle terminates, the RD bit will be automatically cleared to zero, after which the data can be read from the EED register. The data will remain in the EED register until another read or write operation is executed. The application program can poll the RD bit to determine when the data is valid for reading.

Writing Data to the EEPROM

The EEPROM address of the data to be written must first be placed in the EEA register and the data placed in the EED register. To write data to the EEPROM, the write enable bit, WREN, in the EEC register must first be set high to enable the write function. After this, the WR bit in the EEC register must be immediately set high to initiate a write cycle. These two instructions must be executed consecutively. The global interrupt bit EMI should also first be cleared before implementing any write operations, and then set again after the write cycle has started. Note that setting the WR bit high will not initiate a write cycle if the WREN bit has not been set. As the EEPROM write cycle is controlled using an internal timer whose operation is asynchronous to microcontroller system clock, a certain time will elapse before the data will have been written into the EEPROM. Detecting when the write cycle has finished can be implemented either by polling the WR bit in the EEC register or by using the EEPROM interrupt. When the write cycle terminates, the WR bit will be automatically cleared to zero by the microcontroller, informing the user that the data has been written to the EEPROM. The application program can therefore poll the WR bit to determine when the write cycle has ended.

Write Protection

Protection against inadvertent write operation is provided in several ways. After the device is powered-on the Write Enable bit in the control register will be cleared preventing any write operations. Also at power-on the Memory Pointer pairs, MP1L/MP1H and MP2L/MP2H, will be reset to zero, which means that Data Memory Sector 0 will be selected. As the EEPROM control register is located in Sector 1, this adds a further measure of protection against spurious write operations. During normal program operation, ensuring that the Write Enable bit in the control register is cleared will safeguard against incorrect write operations.

EEPROM Interrupt

The EEPROM write interrupt is generated when an EEPROM write cycle has ended. The EEPROM interrupt must first be enabled by setting the DEE bit in the relevant interrupt register. However as the EEPROM is contained within a Multi-function Interrupt, the associated multi-function interrupt enable bit must also be set. When an EEPROM write cycle ends, the DEF request flag and its associated multi-function interrupt request flag will both be set. If the global, EEPROM and Multi-function interrupts are enabled and the stack is not full, a jump to the associated Multi-function Interrupt vector will take place. When the interrupt is serviced only the Multi-function interrupt flag will be automatically reset, the EEPROM interrupt flag must be manually reset by the application program. More details can be obtained in the Interrupt section.

Programming Considerations

Care must be taken that data is not inadvertently written to the EEPROM. Protection can be enhanced by ensuring that the Write Enable bit is normally cleared to zero when not writing. Also the Memory Pointer high byte register, MP1H or MP2H, could be normally cleared to zero as this would inhibit access to Sector 1 where the EEPROM control register exist. Although certainly not necessary, consideration might be given in the application program to the checking of the validity of new write data by a simple read back process.

When writing data the WR bit must be set high immediately after the WREN bit has been set high, to ensure the write cycle executes correctly. The global interrupt bit EMI should also be cleared before a write cycle is executed and then re-enabled after the write cycle starts. Note that the device should not enter the IDLE or SLEEP mode until the EEPROM read or write operation is totally complete. Otherwise, the EEPROM read or write operation will fail.

Programming Examples

Reading data from the EEPROM – polling method

```
MOV  A, EEPROM_ADRES        ; user defined address
MOV  EEA, A
MOV  A, 040H                ; setup memory pointer MP1L
MOV  MP1L, A                ; MP1 points to EEC register
MOV  A, 01H                 ; setup memory pointer MP1H
MOV  MP1H, A
SET  IAR1.1                 ; set RDEN bit, enable read operations
SET  IAR1.0                 ; start Read Cycle - set RD bit
BACK:
SZ   IAR1.0                 ; check for read cycle end
JMP  BACK
CLR  IAR1                   ; disable EEPROM read/write
CLR  MP1H
MOV  A, EED                 ; move read data to register
MOV  READ_DATA, A
```

Writing Data to the EEPROM – polling method

```
MOV  A, EEPROM_ADRES        ; user defined address
MOV  EEA, A
MOV  A, EEPROM_DATA         ; user defined data
MOV  EED, A
MOV  A, 040H                ; setup memory pointer MP1L
MOV  MP1L, A                ; MP1 points to EEC register
MOV  A, 01H                 ; setup memory pointer MP1H
MOV  MP1H, A
CLR  EMI
SET  IAR1.3                 ; set WREN bit, enable write operations
SET  IAR1.2                 ; start Write Cycle - set WR bit - executed immediately
; after set WREN bit
SET  EMI
BACK:
SZ   IAR1.2                 ; check for write cycle end
JMP  BACK
CLR  IAR1                   ; disable EEPROM read/write
CLR  MP1H
```

Oscillators

Various oscillator options offer the user a wide range of functions according to their various application requirements. The flexible features of the oscillator functions ensure that the best optimisation can be achieved in terms of speed and power saving. Oscillator selections and operation are selected through a combination of configuration options and registers.

Oscillator Overview

In addition to being the source of the main system clock the oscillators also provide clock sources for the Watchdog Timer and Time Base Interrupts. External oscillators requiring some external components as well as fully integrated internal oscillators, requiring no external components, are provided to form a wide range of both fast and slow system oscillators. All oscillator options are selected through the configuration options. The higher frequency oscillators provide higher performance but carry with it the disadvantage of higher power requirements, while the opposite is of course true for the lower frequency oscillators. With the capability of dynamically switching between fast and slow system clock, the device has the flexibility to optimize the performance/power ratio, a feature especially important in power sensitive portable applications.

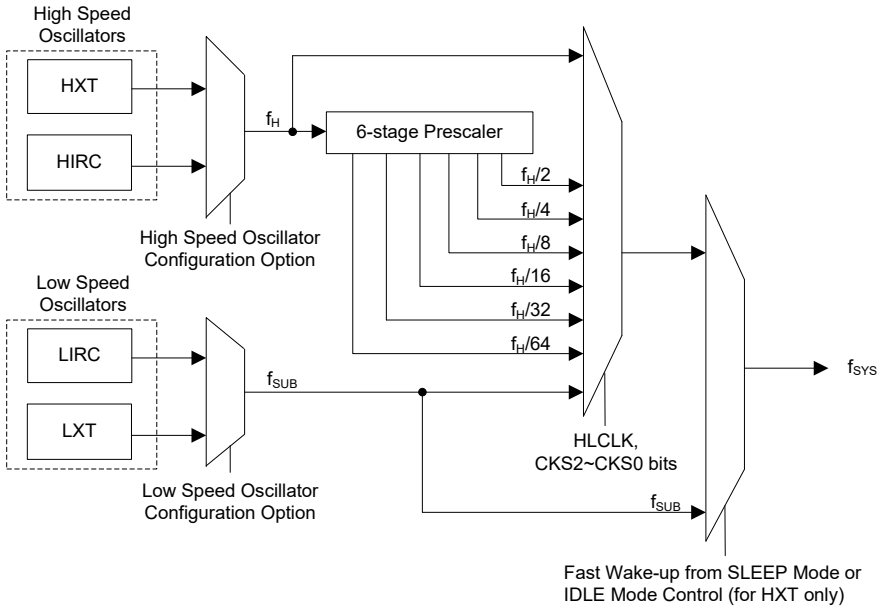
Type	Name	Frequency	Pins
External Crystal	HXT	400kHz~16MHz	OSC1/OSC2
Internal High Speed RC	HIRC	4.9152, 4.9152×2 or 4.9152×3MHz	—
External Low Speed Crystal	LXT	32.768kHz	XT1/XT2
Internal Low Speed RC	LIRC	32kHz	—

Oscillator Types

System Clock Configurations

There are four methods of generating the system clock, two high speed oscillators and two low speed oscillators. The high speed oscillators are the external crystal oscillator and the internal 4.9152MHz, 4.9152×2MHz or 4.9152×3MHz RC oscillator. The two low speed oscillators are the internal 32kHz RC oscillator and the external 32.768kHz crystal oscillator. Selecting whether the low or high speed oscillator is used as the system oscillator is implemented using the HLCLK bit and CKS2~CKS0 bits in the SMOD register and as the system clock can be dynamically selected.

The actual source clock used for each of the high speed and low speed oscillators is chosen via configuration options. The frequency of the slow speed or high speed system clock is also determined using the HLCLK bit and CKS2~CKS0 bits in the SMOD register. Note that two oscillator selections must be made namely one high speed and one low speed system oscillators. It is not possible to choose a no-oscillator selection for either the high or low speed oscillator.

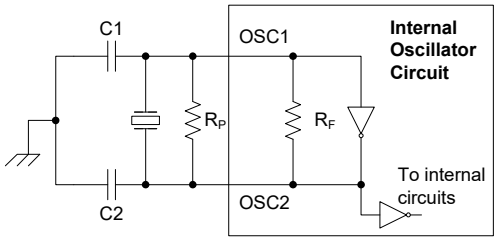


System Clock Configurations

External Crystal/Ceramic Oscillator – HXT

The External Crystal/Ceramic System Oscillator is one of the high frequency oscillator choices, which is selected via configuration option. For most crystal oscillator configurations, the simple connection of a crystal across OSC1 and OSC2 will create the necessary phase shift and feedback for oscillation, without requiring external capacitors. However, for some crystal types and frequencies, to ensure oscillation, it may be necessary to add two small value capacitors, C1 and C2. Using a ceramic resonator will usually require two small value capacitors, C1 and C2, to be connected as shown for oscillation to occur. The values of C1 and C2 should be selected in consultation with the crystal or resonator manufacturer's specification.

For oscillator stability and to minimise the effects of noise and crosstalk, it is important to ensure that the crystal and any associated resistors and capacitors along with interconnecting lines are all located as close to the MCU as possible.



Note: 1. R_P is normally not required. C1 and C2 are required.
2. Although not shown OSC1/OSC2 pins have a parasitic capacitance of around 7pF.

Crystal/Resonator Oscillator – HXT

Crystal Oscillator C1 and C2 Values		
Crystal Frequency	C1	C2
16MHz	0pF	0pF
12MHz	0pF	0pF
8MHz	0pF	0pF
4MHz	0pF	0pF
1MHz	100pF	100pF
Note: C1 and C2 values are for guidance only.		

Crystal Recommended Capacitor Values

Internal RC Oscillator – HIRC

The internal RC oscillator is a fully integrated system oscillator requiring no external components. The internal RC oscillator has three fixed frequencies of either 4.9152MHz, 4.9152×2MHz or 4.9152×3MHz. Device trimming during the manufacturing process and the inclusion of internal frequency compensation circuits are used to ensure that the influence of the power supply voltage, temperature and process variations on the oscillation frequency are minimised. Note that if this internal system clock option is selected, as it requires no external pins for its operation, I/O pins PB1 and PB2 are free for use as normal I/O pins.

Internal 32kHz Oscillator – LIRC

The Internal 32kHz System Oscillator is one of the low frequency oscillator choices, which is selected via configuration option. It is a fully integrated RC oscillator with a typical frequency of 32kHz at 5V, requiring no external components for its implementation. Device trimming during the manufacturing process and the inclusion of internal frequency compensation circuits are used to ensure that the influence of the power supply voltage, temperature and process variations on the oscillation frequency are minimised.

External 32.768kHz Crystal Oscillator – LXT

The External 32.768kHz Crystal System Oscillator is one of the low frequency oscillator choices, which is selected via configuration option. This clock source has a fixed frequency of 32.768kHz and requires a 32.768kHz crystal to be connected between pins XT1 and XT2. The external resistor and capacitor components connected to the 32.768kHz crystal are necessary to provide oscillation. For applications where precise frequencies are essential, these components may be required to provide frequency compensation due to different crystal manufacturing tolerances. During power-up there is a time delay associated with the LXT oscillator waiting for it to start-up.

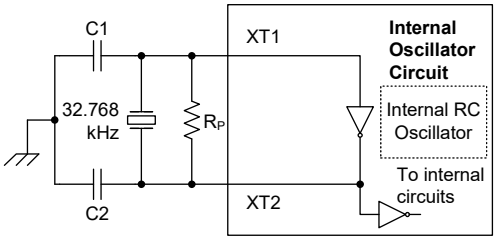
When the microcontroller enters the SLEEP or IDLE Mode, the system clock is switched off to stop microcontroller activity and to conserve power. However, in many microcontroller applications it may be necessary to keep the internal timers operational even when the microcontroller is in the SLEEP or IDLE Mode. To do this, another clock, independent of the system clock, must be provided.

However, for some crystals, to ensure oscillation and accurate frequency generation, it is necessary to add two small value external capacitors, C1 and C2. The exact values of C1 and C2 should be selected in consultation with the crystal or resonator manufacturer specification. The external parallel feedback resistor, R_P, is required.

Some configuration options determine if the XT1/XT2 pins are used for the LXT oscillator or as I/O pins.

- If the LXT oscillator is not used for any clock source, the XT1/XT2 pins can be used as normal I/O pins.
- If the LXT oscillator is used for any clock source, the 32.768kHz crystal should be connected to the XT1/XT2 pins.

For oscillator stability and to minimise the effects of noise and crosstalk, it is important to ensure that the crystal and any associated resistors and capacitors along with interconnecting lines are all located as close to the MCU as possible.



Note: 1. R_P, C1 and C2 are required.
2. Although not shown XT1/XT2 pins have a parasitic capacitance of around 7pF.

External LXT Oscillator

LXT Oscillator C1 and C2 Values		
Crystal Frequency	**C1**	**C2**
32.768kHz	10pF	10pF
Note: 1. C1 and C2 values are for guidance only. 2. R_P=5M~10MΩ is recommended.		

32.768kHz Crystal Recommended Capacitor Values

LXT Oscillator Low Power Function

The LXT oscillator can function in one of two modes, the Quick Start Mode and the Low Power Mode. The mode selection is executed using the LXTLP bit in the TBC register.

LXTLP Bit	LXT Mode
0	Quick Start
1	Low-power

After power on, the LXTLP bit will be automatically cleared to zero ensuring that the LXT oscillator is in the Quick Start operating mode. In the Quick Start Mode the LXT oscillator will power up and stabilise quickly. However, after the LXT oscillator has fully powered up it can be placed into the Low-power mode by setting the LXTLP bit high. The oscillator will continue to run but with reduced current consumption, as the higher current consumption is only required during the LXT oscillator start-up. In power sensitive applications, such as battery applications, where power consumption must be kept to a minimum, it is therefore recommended that the application program sets the LXTLP bit high about 2 seconds after power-on.

It should be noted that, no matter what condition the LXTLP bit is set to, the LXT oscillator will always be function normally, the only difference is that it will take more time to start up if in the Low-power mode.

Supplementary Oscillators

The low speed oscillators, in addition to providing a system clock source are also used to provide a clock source to four other device functions. These are the Watchdog Timer, the Time Base Interrupts function, the LCD driver, and the SIM.

Operating Modes and System Clocks

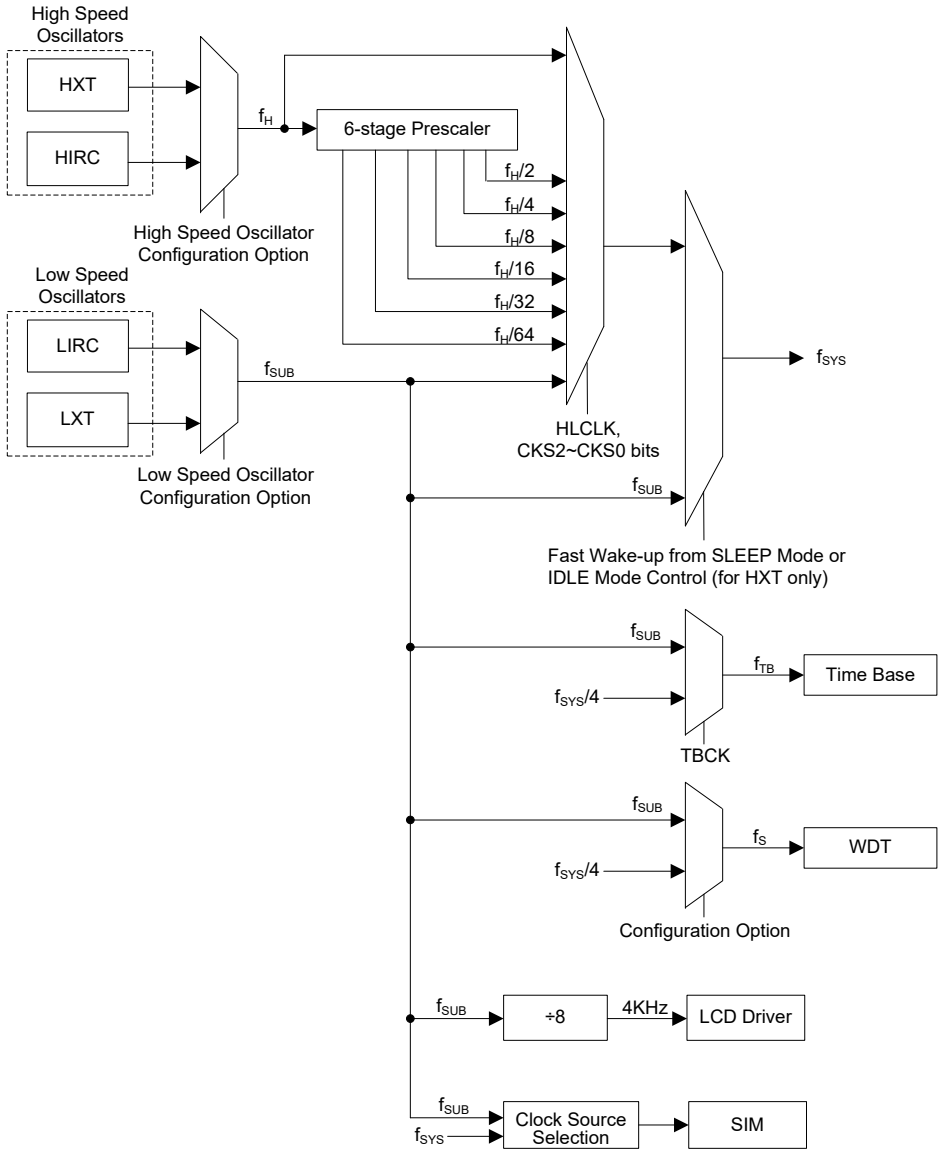
Present day applications require that their microcontrollers have high performance but often still demand that they consume as little power as possible, conflicting requirements that are especially true in battery powered portable applications. The fast clocks required for high performance will by their nature increase current consumption and of course vice-versa, lower speed clocks reduce current consumption. As Holtek has provided this device with both high and low speed clock sources and the means to switch between them dynamically, the user can optimise the operation of their microcontroller to achieve the best performance/power ratio.

System Clocks

The device has many different clock sources for both the CPU and peripheral function operation. By providing the user with a wide range of clock options using configuration options and register programming, a clock system can be configured to obtain maximum application performance.

The main system clock, can come from either a high frequency f_H or low frequency f_{SUB} source, and is selected using the HLCLK bit and CKS2~CKS0 bits in the SMOD register. The high speed system clock can be sourced from either an HXT or HIRC oscillator, selected via a configuration option. The low speed system clock source can be sourced from internal clock f_{SUB}. If f_{SUB} is selected then it can be sourced by either the LXT or LIRC oscillator, selected via a configuration option. The other choice, which is a divided version of the high speed system oscillator has a range of $f_H/2$~$f_H/64$.

The f_{SUB} clock is used to provide a substitute clock for the microcontroller just after a wake-up has occurred to enable faster wake-up times. The f_{SUB} is used as a clock source for the Watchdog timer, the Time Base interrupt, the TMs, the LCD and the SIM functions.



Device Clock Configurations

Note: When the system clock source f_{SYS} is switched to f_{SUB} from f_H, the high speed oscillation will stop to conserve the power. Thus there is no f_H~$f_H/64$ for peripheral circuit to use.

System Operation Modes

There are six different modes of operation for the microcontroller, each one with its own special characteristics and which can be chosen according to the specific performance and power requirements of the application. There are two modes allowing normal operation of the microcontroller, the NORMAL Mode and SLOW Mode. The remaining four modes, the SLEEP0, SLEEP1, IDLE0 and IDLE1 Mode are used when the microcontroller CPU is switched off to conserve power.

Operating Mode	Description			
	CPU	f_{SYS}	f_{SUB}	f_S
NORMAL Mode	on	f_H~f_H/64	on	on
SLOW Mode	on	f_{SUB}	on	on
IDLE0 Mode	off	off	on	on/off
IDLE1 Mode	off	on	on	on
SLEEP0 Mode	off	off	off	off
SLEEP1 Mode	off	off	on	on

NORMAL Mode

As the name suggests this is one of the main operating modes where the microcontroller has all of its functions operational and where the system clock is provided by one of the high speed oscillators. This mode operates allowing the microcontroller to operate normally with a clock source will come from one of the high speed oscillators, either the HXT or HIRC oscillators. The high speed oscillator will however first be divided by a ratio ranging from 1 to 64, the actual ratio being selected by the CKS2~CKS0 and HLCLK bits in the SMOD register. Although a high speed oscillator is used, running the microcontroller at a divided clock ratio reduces the operating current.

SLOW Mode

This is also a mode where the microcontroller operates normally although now with a slower speed clock source. The clock source used will be from one of the low speed oscillators, either the LXT or the LIRC. Running the microcontroller in this mode allows it to run with much lower operating currents. In the SLOW Mode, the f_H is off.

SLEEP0 Mode

The SLEEP Mode is entered when a HALT instruction is executed and when the IDLEN bit in the SMOD register is low. In the SLEEP0 mode the CPU will be stopped, and the f_{SUB} and f_S clocks will be stopped too, and the Watchdog Timer function is disabled. In this mode, the LVDEN is must cleared to zero. If the LVDEN is set high, it won't enter the SLEEP0 Mode. In this mode, the ENLCD is must cleared to zero. If the ENLCD is set high, it won't enter the SLEEP0 Mode.

SLEEP1 Mode

The SLEEP Mode is entered when a HALT instruction is executed and when the IDLEN bit in the SMOD register is low. In the SLEEP1 mode the CPU will be stopped. However the f_{SUB} and f_S clocks will continue to operate if the LVDEN is "1" or the ENLCD is "1" or the Watchdog Timer function is enabled and if its clock source is chosen via configuration option to come from the f_{SUB}.

IDLE0 Mode

The IDLE0 Mode is entered when a HALT instruction is executed and when the IDLEN bit in the SMOD register is high and the FSYSON bit in the CTRL register is low. In the IDLE0 Mode the system oscillator will be inhibited from driving the CPU but some peripheral functions will remain operational such as the Watchdog Timer, TMs, LCD driver and SIM. In the IDLE0 Mode, the system oscillator will be stopped. In the IDLE0 Mode the Watchdog Timer clock, f_S, will either be on or off depending upon the f_S clock source. If the WDT clock source selects $f_{SYS}/4$ then the f_S clock will be off, and if the source comes from f_{SUB} then f_S will be on.

IDLE1 Mode

The IDLE1 Mode is entered when a HALT instruction is executed and when the IDLEN bit in the SMOD register is high and the FSYSON bit in the CTRL register is high. In the IDLE1 Mode the system oscillator will be inhibited from driving the CPU but may continue to provide a clock source to keep some peripheral functions operational such as the Watchdog Timer, TMs, LCD driver and SIM. In the IDLE1 Mode, the system oscillator will continue to run, and this system oscillator may be high speed or low speed system oscillator. In the IDLE1 Mode the Watchdog Timer clock, f_S, will be on.

Control Register

The registers, SMOD and CTRL, are used for overall control of the internal clocks within the device.

- **SMOD Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	CKS2	CKS1	CKS0	FSTEN	LTO	HTO	IDLEN	HLCLK
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R	R	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1

Bit 7~5 **CKS2~CKS0**: The system clock selection when HLCLK is "0"
000: f_{SUB} (f_{LXT} or f_{LIRC})
001: f_{SUB} (f_{LXT} or f_{LIRC})
010: $f_H/64$
011: $f_H/32$
100: $f_H/16$
101: $f_H/8$
110: $f_H/4$
111: $f_H/2$

These three bits are used to select which clock is used as the system clock source. In addition to the system clock source, which can be either the LXT or LIRC, a divided version of the high speed system oscillator can also be chosen as the system clock source.

Bit 4 **FSTEN**: Fast Wake-up Control (only for HXT)
0: Disable
1: Enable

This is the Fast Wake-up Control bit which determines if the f_{SUB} clock source is initially used after the device wakes up. When the bit is high, the f_{SUB} clock source can be used as a temporary system clock to provide a faster wake up time as the f_{SUB} clock is available.

Bit 3 **LTO**: Low speed system oscillator ready flag
0: Not ready
1: Ready
This is the low speed system oscillator ready flag which indicates when the low speed system oscillator is stable after power on reset or a wake-up has occurred. The flag will be low when in the SLEEP0 Mode but after a wake-up has occurred, the flag will change to a high level after 1024 clock cycles if the LXT oscillator is used and 1~2 clock cycles if the LIRC oscillator is used.

Bit 2 **HTO**: High speed system oscillator ready flag
0: Not ready
1: Ready
This is the high speed system oscillator ready flag which indicates when the high speed system oscillator is stable. This flag is cleared to zero by hardware when the device is powered on and then changes to a high level after the high speed system oscillator is stable.
Therefore this flag will always be read as "1" by the application program after device power-on. The flag will be low when in the SLEEP or IDLE0 Mode but after a wake-up has occurred, the flag will change to a high level after 1024 clock cycles if the HXT oscillator is used and after 15~16 clock cycles if the HIRC oscillator is used.

Bit 1 **IDLEN**: IDLE Mode control
0: Disable
1: Enable
This is the IDLE Mode Control bit and determines what happens when the HALT instruction is executed. If this bit is high, when a HALT instruction is executed the device will enter the IDLE Mode. In the IDLE1 Mode the CPU will stop running but the system clock will continue to keep the peripheral functions operational, if FSYSON bit is high. If FSYSON bit is low, the CPU and the system clock will all stop in IDLE0 mode. If the bit is low the device will enter the SLEEP Mode when a HALT instruction is executed.

Bit 0 **HLCLK**: system clock selection
0: $f_H/2 \sim f_H/64$ or f_{SUB}
1: f_H
This bit is used to select if the f_H clock or the $f_H/2 \sim f_H/64$ or f_{SUB} clock is used as the system clock. When the bit is high the f_H clock will be selected and if low the $f_H/2 \sim f_H/64$ or f_{SUB} clock will be selected. When system clock switches from the f_H clock to the f_{SUB} clock and the f_H clock will be automatically switched off to conserve power.

• CTRL Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	FSYSON	—	—	—	—	LVRF	LRF	WRF
R/W	R/W	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	—	—	—	—	x	0	0

"x" unknown

Bit 7 **FSYSON**: f_{SYS} Control in IDLE Mode
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 6~3 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 2 **LVRF**: LVR function reset flag
Described elsewhere.

Bit 1 **LRF**: LVR Control register software reset flag
Described elsewhere.

Bit 0 **WRF**: WDT Control register software reset flag
Described elsewhere.

Fast Wake-up

To minimise power consumption the device can enter the SLEEP or IDLE0 Mode, where the system clock source to the device will be stopped. However when the device is woken up again, it can take a considerable time for the original system oscillator to restart, stabilise and allow normal operation to resume. To ensure the device is up and running as fast as possible a Fast Wake-up function is provided, which allows f_{SUB}, namely either the LXT or LIRC oscillator, to act as a temporary clock to first drive the system until the original system oscillator has stabilised. As the clock source for the Fast Wake-up function is f_{SUB}, the Fast Wake-up function is only available in the SLEEP1 and IDLE0 modes. When the device is woken up from the SLEEP0 mode, the Fast Wake-up function has no effect because the f_{SUB} clock is stopped. The Fast Wake-up enable/disable function is controlled using the FSTEN bit in the SMOD register.

If the HXT oscillator is selected as the NORMAL Mode system clock, and if the Fast Wake-up function is enabled, then it will take one to two t_{SUB} clock cycles of the LIRC or LXT oscillator for the system to wake-up. The system will then initially run under the f_{SUB} clock source until 1024 HXT clock cycles have elapsed, at which point the HTO flag will switch high and the system will switch over to operating from the HXT oscillator.

If the HIRC oscillator or LIRC oscillator is used as the system oscillator then it will take 15~16 clock cycles of the HIRC or 1~2 cycles of the LIRC to wake up the system from the SLEEP or IDLE0 Mode. The Fast Wake-up bit, FSTEN will have no effect in these cases.

System Oscillator	FSTEN Bit	Wake-up Time (SLEEP0 Mode)	Wake-up Time (SLEEP1 Mode)	Wake-up Time (IDLE0 Mode)	Wake-up Time (IDLE1 Mode)
HXT	0	1024 HXT cycles	1024 HXT cycles		1~2 HXT cycles
	1	1024 HXT cycles	1~2 f_{SUB} cycles (System runs with f_{SUB} first for 1024 HXT cycles and then switches over to run with the HXT clock)		1~2 HXT cycles
HIRC	x	15~16 HIRC cycles	15~16 HIRC cycles		1~2 HIRC cycles
LIRC	x	1~2 LIRC cycles	1~2 LIRC cycles		1~2 LIRC cycles
LXT	x	1024 LXT cycles	1024 LXT cycles		1~2 LXT cycles

"x": don't care

Wake-Up Times

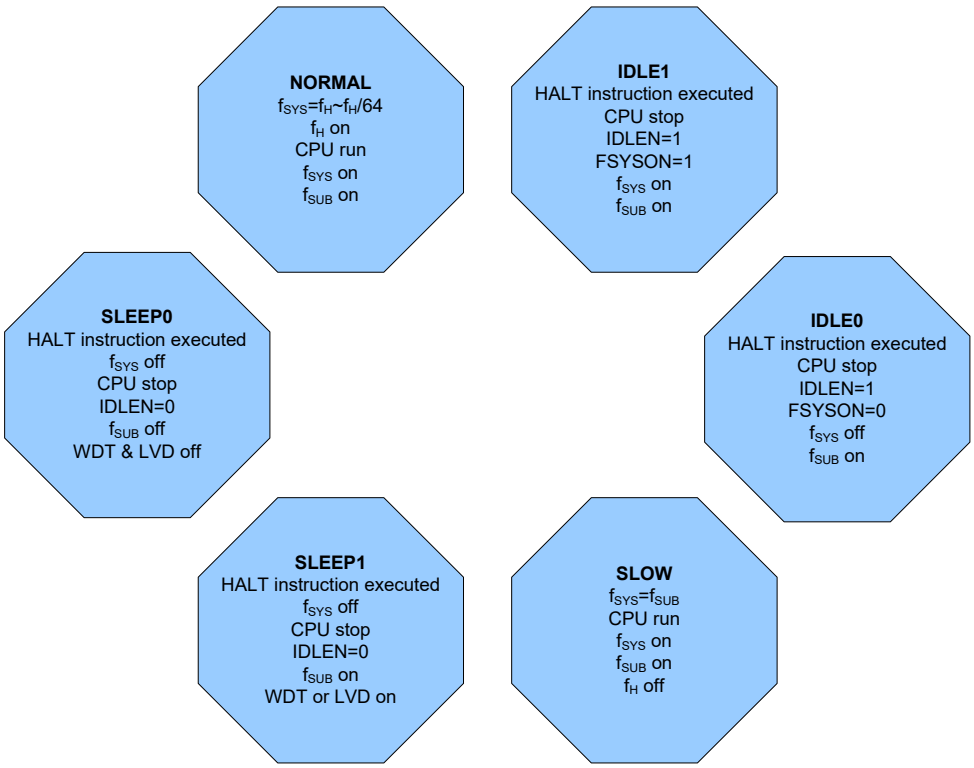
Note that if the Watchdog Timer is disabled, which means that the LXT and LIRC are all both off, then there will be no Fast Wake-up function available when the device wake-up from the SLEEP0 Mode.

Operating Mode Switching

The device can switch between operating modes dynamically allowing the user to select the best performance/power ratio for the present task in hand. In this way microcontroller operations that do not require high performance can be executed using slower clocks thus requiring less operating current and prolonging battery life in portable applications.

In simple terms, Mode Switching between the NORMAL Mode and SLOW Mode is executed using the HLCLK bit and CKS2~CKS0 bits in the SMOD register while Mode Switching from the NORMAL/SLOW Modes to the SLEEP/IDLE Modes is executed via the HALT instruction. When a HALT instruction is executed, whether the device enters the IDLE Mode or the SLEEP Mode is determined by the condition of the IDLEN bit in the SMOD register and FSYSON in the CTRL register.

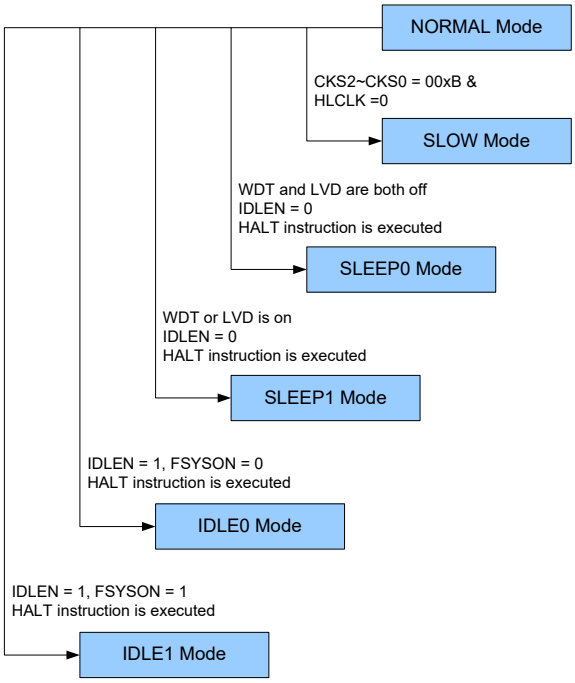
When the HLCLK bit switches to a low level, which implies that clock source is switched from the high speed clock source, f_H, to the clock source, $f_H/2$~$f_H/64$ or f_{SUB}. If the clock is from the f_{SUB}, the high speed clock source will stop running to conserve power. When this happens it must be noted that the $f_H/16$ and $f_H/64$ internal clock sources will also stop running, which may affect the operation of other internal functions such as the TMs and the SIM. The accompanying flowchart shows what happens when the device moves between the various operating modes.



NORMAL Mode to SLOW Mode Switching

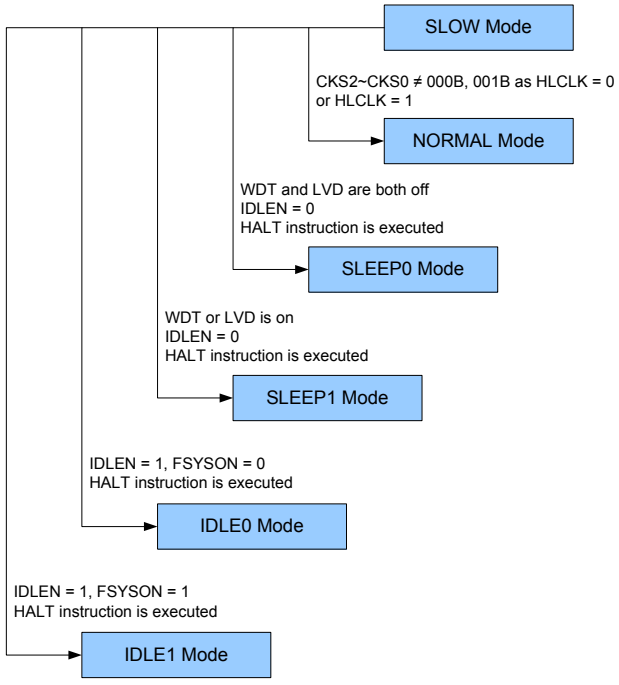
When running in the NORMAL Mode, which uses the high speed system oscillator, and therefore consumes more power, the system clock can switch to run in the SLOW Mode by set the HLCLK bit to "0" and set the CKS2~CKS0 bits to "000" or "001" in the SMOD register. This will then use the low speed system oscillator which will consume less power. Users may decide to do this for certain operations which do not require high performance and can subsequently reduce power consumption.

The SLOW Mode is sourced from the LXT or the LIRC oscillators and therefore requires these oscillators to be stable before full mode switching occurs. This is monitored using the LTO bit in the SMOD register.



SLOW Mode to NORMAL Mode Switching

In SLOW Mode the system uses either the LXT or LIRC low speed system oscillator. To switch back to the NORMAL Mode, where the high speed system oscillator is used, the HLCLK bit should be set high or HLCLK bit is "0", but CKS2~CKS0 is set to "010", "011", "100", "101", "110" or "111". As a certain amount of time will be required for the high frequency clock to stabilise, the status of the HTO bit is checked. The amount of time required for high speed system oscillator stabilization depends upon which high speed system oscillator type is used.



Entering the SLEEP0 Mode

There is only one way for the device to enter the SLEEP0 Mode and that is to execute the "HALT" instruction in the application program with the IDLEN bit in SMOD register equal to "0" and the WDT, LVD and LCD all off. When this instruction is executed under the conditions described above, the following will occur:

- The system clock and the f_{SUB} clock will be stopped and the application program will stop at the "HALT" instruction.
- The Data Memory contents and registers will maintain their present condition.
- The WDT will be cleared and stopped no matter if the WDT clock source originates from the f_{SUB} clock or from the system clock.
- The I/O ports will maintain their present conditions.
- In the status register, the Power Down flag, PDF, will be set and the Watchdog time-out flag, TO, will be cleared.

Entering the SLEEP1 Mode

There is only one way for the device to enter the SLEEP1 Mode and that is to execute the "HALT" instruction in the application program with the IDLEN bit in SMOD register equal to "0" and the WDT or LVD on. When this instruction is executed under the conditions described above, the following will occur:

- The system clock will be stopped and the application program will stop at the "HALT" instruction, but the WDT or LVD will remain with the clock source coming from the f_{SUB} clock.
- The Data Memory contents and registers will maintain their present condition.
- The WDT will be cleared and resume counting if the WDT clock source is selected to come from the f_{SUB} clock as the WDT is enabled.
- The I/O ports will maintain their present conditions.
- In the status register, the Power Down flag, PDF, will be set and the Watchdog time-out flag, TO, will be cleared.

Entering the IDLE0 Mode

There is only one way for the device to enter the IDLE0 Mode and that is to execute the "HALT" instruction in the application program with the IDLEN bit in SMOD register equal to "1" and the FSYSON bit in CTRL register equal to "0". When this instruction is executed under the conditions described above, the following will occur:

- The system clock will be stopped and the application program will stop at the "HALT" instruction, but the f_{SUB} clock will be on.
- The Data Memory contents and registers will maintain their present condition.
- The WDT will be cleared and resume counting if the WDT clock source is selected to come from the f_{SUB} clock and the WDT is enabled. The WDT will stop if its clock source originates from the system clock.
- The I/O ports will maintain their present conditions.
- In the status register, the Power Down flag, PDF, will be set and the Watchdog time-out flag, TO, will be cleared.

Entering the IDLE1 Mode

There is only one way for the device to enter the IDLE1 Mode and that is to execute the "HALT" instruction in the application program with the IDLEN bit in SMOD register equal to "1" and the FSYSON bit in CTRL register equal to "1". When this instruction is executed under the conditions described above, the following will occur:

- The system clock and the f_{SUB} clock will be on and the application program will stop at the "HALT" instruction.
- The Data Memory contents and registers will maintain their present condition.
- The WDT will be cleared and resume counting if the WDT is enabled regardless of the WDT clock source which originates from the f_{SUB} clock or from the system clock.
- The I/O ports will maintain their present conditions.
- In the status register, the Power Down flag, PDF, will be set and the Watchdog time-out flag, TO, will be cleared.

Standby Current Considerations

As the main reason for entering the SLEEP or IDLE Mode is to keep the current consumption of the device to as low a value as possible, perhaps only in the order of several micro-amps except in the IDLE1 Mode, there are other considerations which must also be taken into account by the circuit designer if the power consumption is to be minimised. Special attention must be made to the I/O pins on the device. All high-impedance input pins must be connected to either a fixed high or low level as any floating input pins could create internal oscillations and result in increased current consumption. This also applies to the device which has different package types, as there may be unbonbed pins. These must either be setup as outputs or if setup as inputs must have pull-high resistors connected.

Care must also be taken with the loads, which are connected to I/O pins, which are setup as outputs. These should be placed in a condition in which minimum current is drawn or connected only to external circuits that do not draw current, such as other CMOS inputs. Also note that additional standby current will also be required if the configuration options have enabled the LXT or LIRC oscillator.

In the IDLE1 Mode the system oscillator is on, if the system oscillator is from the high speed system oscillator, the additional standby current will also be perhaps in the order of several hundred micro-amps.

Wake-up

After the system enters the SLEEP or IDLE Mode, it can be woken up from one of various sources listed as follows:

- An external falling edge on Port A
- A system interrupt
- A WDT overflow

If the device is woken up by a WDT overflow, a Watchdog Timer reset will be initiated. The PDF flag is cleared by a system power-up or executing the clear Watchdog Timer instructions and is set when executing the "HALT" instruction. The TO flag is set if a WDT time-out occurs, and causes a wake-up that only resets the Program Counter and Stack Pointer, the other flags remain in their original status.

Each pin on Port A can be setup using the PAWU register to permit a negative transition on the pin to wake-up the system. When a Port A pin wake-up occurs, the program will resume execution at the instruction following the "HALT" instruction. If the system is woken up by an interrupt, then two possible situations may occur. The first is where the related interrupt is disabled or the interrupt

is enabled but the stack is full, in which case the program will resume execution at the instruction following the "HALT" instruction. In this situation, the interrupt which woke-up the device will not be immediately serviced, but will rather be serviced later when the related interrupt is finally enabled or when a stack level becomes free. The other situation is where the related interrupt is enabled and the stack is not full, in which case the regular interrupt response takes place. If an interrupt request flag is set high before entering the SLEEP or IDLE Mode, the wake-up function of the related interrupt will be disabled.

Programming Considerations

The HXT and LXT oscillators both use the same SST counter. For example, if the system is woken up from the SLEEP0 Mode and both the HXT and LXT oscillators need to start-up from an off state. The LXT oscillator uses the SST counter after HXT oscillator has finished its SST period.

- If the device is woken up from the SLEEP0 Mode to the NORMAL Mode, the high speed system oscillator needs an SST period. The device will execute first instruction after HTO is "1". At this time, the LXT oscillator may not be stability if f_{SUB} is from LXT oscillator. The same situation occurs in the power-on state. The LXT oscillator is not ready yet when the first instruction is executed.
- If the device is woken up from the SLEEP1 Mode to NORMAL Mode, and the system clock source is from HXT oscillator and FSTEN is "1", the system clock can be switched to the LXT or LIRC oscillator after wake up.
- There are peripheral functions, such as WDT, TMs, LCD driver and SIM, for which the f_{SYS} is used. If the system clock source is switched from f_H to f_{SUB}, the clock source to the peripheral functions mentioned above will change accordingly.

Watchdog Timer

The Watchdog Timer is provided to prevent program malfunctions or sequences from jumping to unknown locations, due to certain uncontrollable external events such as electrical noise.

Watchdog Timer Clock Source

The Watchdog Timer clock source is provided by the internal clock, f_S, which is in turn supplied by one of two sources selected by configuration option: f_{SUB} or $f_{SYS}/4$. The f_{SUB} clock can be sourced from either the LXT or LIRC oscillators, again chosen via a configuration option. The Watchdog Timer source clock is then subdivided by a ratio of 2^8 to 2^{18} to give longer timeouts, the actual value being chosen using the WS2~WS0 bits in the WDTC register. The LIRC internal oscillator has an approximate period of 32kHz at a supply voltage of 5V. However, it should be noted that this specified internal clock period can vary with V_{DD}, temperature and process variations. The LXT oscillator is supplied by an external 32.768kHz crystal. The other Watchdog Timer clock source option is the $f_{SYS}/4$ clock.

Watchdog Timer Control Register

A single register, WDTC, controls the required timeout period as well as the enable/disable and MCU reset operation. This register together with several configuration options control the overall operation of the Watchdog Timer.

• **WDTC Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	WE4	WE3	WE2	WE1	WE0	WS2	WS1	WS0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	1	0	1	0	0	1	1

Bit 7~3 **WE4~WE0**: WDT function software control
If the WDT configuration option is "always enable":
10101 or 01010: Enable
Others: Reset MCU
If the WDT configuration option is "controlled by the WDT control register":
10101: Disable
01010: Enable
Others: Reset MCU
When these bits are changed by the environmental noise or software setting to reset the microcontroller, the reset operation will be activated after 2~3 LIRC clock cycles and the WRF bit in the CTRL register will be set high.

Bit 2~0 **WS2~WS0**: WDT time-out period selection
000: $2^8/f_S$
001: $2^{10}/f_S$
010: $2^{12}/f_S$
011: $2^{14}/f_S$
100: $2^{15}/f_S$
101: $2^{16}/f_S$
110: $2^{17}/f_S$
111: $2^{18}/f_S$

• **CTRL Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	FSYSON	—	—	—	—	LVRF	LRF	WRF
R/W	R/W	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	—	—	—	—	x	0	0

"x" unknown

Bit 7 **FSYSON**: f_{SYS} Control in IDLE Mode
Described elsewhere.

Bit 6~3 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 2 **LVRF**: LVR function reset flag
Described elsewhere.

Bit 1 **LRF**: LVR Control register software reset flag
Described elsewhere.

Bit 0 **WRF**: WDT Control register software reset flag
0: Not occur
1: Occurred
This bit is set high by the WDT Control register software reset and cleared by the application program. Note that this bit can only be cleared to zero by the application program.

Watchdog Timer Operation

The Watchdog Timer operates by providing a device reset when its timer overflows. This means that in the application program and during normal operation the user has to strategically clear the Watchdog Timer before it overflows to prevent the Watchdog Timer from executing a reset. This is done using the clear watchdog instructions. If the program malfunctions for whatever reason, jumps

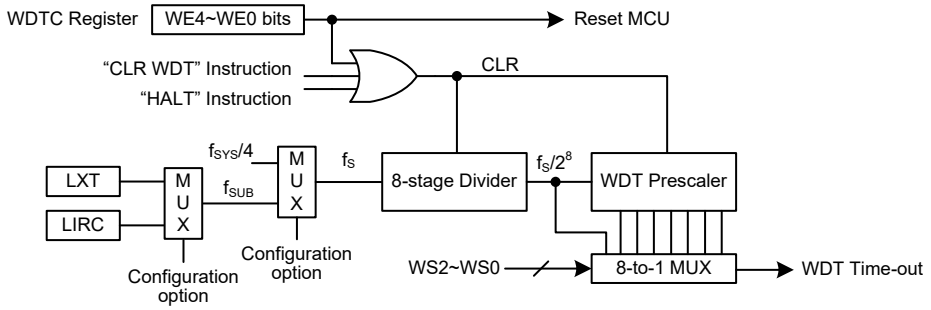
to an unknown location, or enters an endless loop, these clear instructions will not be executed in the correct manner, in which case the Watchdog Timer will overflow and reset the device. Some of the Watchdog Timer options, such as always on select and clock source are selected using configuration options. With regard to the Watchdog Timer enable/disable function, there are also five bits, WE4~WE0, in the WDTC register to offer additional enable/disable and reset control of the Watchdog Timer. If the WDT configuration option is determined that the WDT function is always enabled, the WE4~WE0 bits still have effects on the WDT function. When the WE4~WE0 bits value is equal to 01010B or 10101B, the WDT function is enabled. However, if the WE4~WE0 bits are changed to any other values except 01010B and 10101B, which is caused by the environmental noise or software setting, it will reset the microcontroller after 2~3 LIRC clock cycles. If the WDT configuration option is determined that the WDT function is controlled by the WDT control register, the WE4~WE0 values can determine which mode the WDT operates in. The WDT function will be disabled when the WE4~WE0 bits are set to a value of 10101B. The WDT function will be enabled if the WE4~WE0 bits value is equal to 01010B. If the WE4~WE0 bits are set to any other values by the environmental noise or software setting, except 01010B and 10101B, it will reset the device after 2~3 LIRC clock cycles. After power on these bits will have the value of 01010B.

WDT Configuration Option	WE4 ~ WE0 Bits	WDT Function
Always Enable	01010B or 10101B	Enable
	Any other values	Reset MCU
Controlled by WDT Control Register	10101B	Disable
	01010B	Enable
	Any other values	Reset MCU

Watchdog Timer Enable/Disable ControlUnder normal program operation, a Watchdog Timer time-out will initialise a device reset and set the status bit TO. However, if the system is in the SLEEP or IDLE Mode, when a Watchdog Timer time-out occurs, the TO bit in the status register will be set and only the Program Counter and Stack Pointer will be reset. Three methods can be adopted to clear the contents of the Watchdog Timer. The first is a WDT reset, which means a certain value except 01010B and 10101B written into the WE4~WE0 bit filed, the second is using the Watchdog Timer software clear instructions and the third is via a HALT instruction.

There is only one method of using software instruction to clear the Watchdog Timer. That is to use the single "CLR WDT" instruction to clear the WDT.

The maximum time out period is when the 2^{18} division ratio is selected. As an example, with a 32kHz LIRC oscillator as its source clock, this will give a maximum watchdog period of around 8 second for the 2^{18} division ratio, and a minimum timeout of 7.8ms for the 2^8 division ration.



Watchdog Timer

Reset and Initialisation

A reset function is a fundamental part of any microcontroller ensuring that the device can be set to some predetermined condition irrespective of outside parameters. The most important reset condition is after power is first applied to the microcontroller. In this case, internal circuitry will ensure that the microcontroller, after a short delay, will be in a well-defined state and ready to execute the first program instruction. After this power-on reset, certain important internal registers will be set to defined states before the program commences. One of these registers is the Program Counter, which will be reset to zero forcing the microcontroller to begin program execution from the lowest Program Memory address.

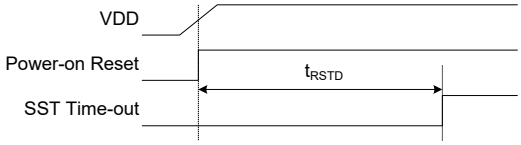
Another type of reset is when the Watchdog Timer overflows and resets. All types of reset operations result in different register conditions being setup. Another reset exists in the form of a Low Voltage Reset, LVR, where a full reset, is implemented in situations where the power supply voltage falls below a certain threshold.

Reset Functions

There are four ways in which a reset can occur, through events occurring internally:

Power-on Reset

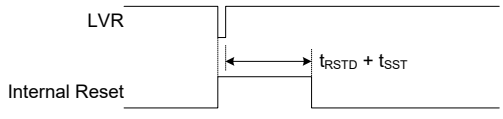
The most fundamental and unavoidable reset is the one that occurs after power is first applied to the microcontroller. As well as ensuring that the Program Memory begins execution from the first memory address, a power-on reset also ensures that certain other registers are preset to known conditions. All the I/O port and port control registers will power up in a high condition ensuring that all I/O ports will be first set to inputs.



Power-On Reset Timing Chart

Low Voltage Reset – LVR

The microcontroller contains a low voltage reset circuit in order to monitor the supply voltage of the device. The LVR function is always enabled with a specific LVR voltage V_{LVR}. If the supply voltage of the device drops to within a range of 0.9V~V_{LVR} such as might occur when changing the battery, the LVR will automatically reset the device internally and the LVRF bit in the CTRL register will also be set high. For a valid LVR signal, a low supply voltage, i.e., a voltage in the range between 0.9V~V_{LVR} must exist for a time greater than that specified by t_{LVR} in the A.C. characteristics. If the low supply voltage state does not exceed this value, the LVR will ignore the low supply voltage and will not perform a reset function. The actual V_{LVR} value can be selected by the LVS bits in the LVRC register. If the LVS7~LVS0 bits are changed to some certain values by the environmental noise or software setting, the LVR will reset the device after 2~3 LIRC clock cycles. When this happens, the LRF bit in the CTRL register will be set high. After power on the register will have the value of 01010101B. Note that the LVR function will be automatically disabled when the device enters the power down mode.



Low Voltage Reset Timing Chart

• **LVRC Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	LVS7	LVS6	LVS5	LVS4	LVS3	LVS2	LVS1	LVS0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	1	0	1	0	1	0	1

Bit 7~0 **LVS7~LVS0**: LVR voltage select
01010101: 2.1V
00110011: 2.55V
10011001: 3.15V
10101010: 3.8V
Other values: Reset MCU (register is reset to POR value).

When an actual low voltage condition occurs, as specified by one of the four defined LVR voltage values above, an MCU reset will be generated. The reset operation will be activated after the low voltage condition keeps more than a t_{LVR} time. In this situation the register contents will remain the same after such a reset occurs.

Any register value, other than the four defined LVR values above, will also result in the generation of an MCU reset. The reset operation will be activated after 2~3 LIRC clock cycles. However in this situation the register contents will be reset to the POR value.

• **CTRL Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	FSYSON	—	—	—	—	LVRF	LRF	WRF
R/W	R/W	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	—	—	—	—	x	0	0

"x" unknown

Bit 7 **FSYSON**: f_{SYS} Control in IDLE Mode
Described elsewhere.

Bit 6~3 Unimplemented, read as "0"

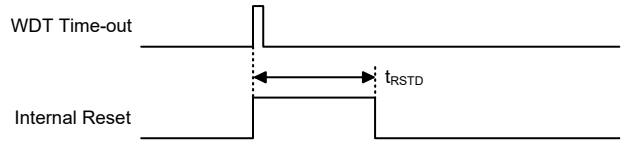
Bit 2 **LVRF**: LVR function reset flag
0: not occur
1: occurred
This bit is set high when a specific Low Voltage Reset situation condition occurs. This bit can only be cleared to zero by the application program.

Bit 1 **LRF**: LVR Control register software reset flag
0: not occur
1: occurred
This bit is set high if the LVRC register contains any non-defined LVR voltage register values. This in effect acts like a software-reset function. This bit can only be cleared to zero by the application program.

Bit 0 **WRF**: WDT Control register software reset flag
Described elsewhere.

Watchdog Time-out Reset during Normal Operation

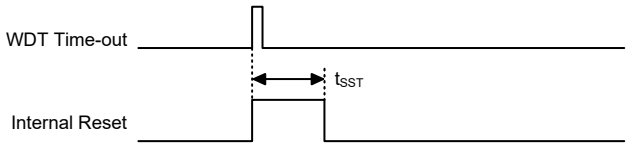
The Watchdog time-out Reset during normal operation is the same as LVR reset except that the Watchdog time-out flag TO will be set high.



WDT Time-out Reset during Normal Operation Timing Chart

Watchdog Time-out Reset during SLEEP or IDLE Mode

The Watchdog time-out Reset during SLEEP or IDLE Mode is a little different from other kinds of reset. Most of the conditions remain unchanged except that the Program Counter and the Stack Pointer will be cleared to zero and the TO flag will be set high. Refer to the A.C. Characteristics for t_{SST} details.



WDT Time-out Reset during Sleep or IDLE Timing Chart

Reset Initial Conditions

The different types of reset described affect the reset flags in different ways. These flags, known as PDF and TO are located in the status register and are controlled by various microcontroller operations, such as the SLEEP or IDLE Mode function or Watchdog Timer. The reset flags are shown in the table:

TO	PDF	Reset Conditions
0	0	Power-on reset
u	u	LVR reset during Normal or SLOW Mode operation
1	u	WDT time-out reset during Normal or SLOW Mode operation
1	1	WDT time-out reset during IDLE or SLEEP Mode operation

"u" stands for unchanged

The following table indicates the way in which the various components of the microcontroller are affected after a power-on reset occurs.

Item	Condition after Reset
Program Counter	Reset to zero
Interrupts	All interrupts will be disabled
WDT	Clear after reset, WDT begins counting
Timer Modules	Timer Modules will be turned off
Input/Output Ports	I/O ports will be setup as inputs, and AN0~AN7 as A/D input pin.
Stack Pointer	Stack Pointer will point to the top of the stack

The different kinds of resets all affect the internal registers of the microcontroller in different ways. To ensure reliable continuation of normal program execution after a reset occurs, it is important to know what condition the microcontroller is in after a particular reset occurs. The following table describes how each type of reset affects each of the microcontroller internal registers.

Register Name	Power On Reset	LVR Reset	WDT Time-out (Normal Operation)	WDT Time-out (IDLE/SLEEP)
MP0	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
MP1L	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
MP1H	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
MP2L	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
MP2H	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
IAR0	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
IAR1	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
IAR2	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
ACC	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
PCL	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000
TBLP	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TBLH	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TBHP	---x xxxx	---u uuuu	---u uuuu	---u uuuu
STATUS	xx00 xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uu1u uuuu	uu11 uuuu
SMOD	0000 0011	0000 0011	0000 0011	uuuu uuuu
INTEG	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
LVDC	--00 -000	--00 -000	--00 -000	--uu -uuu
INTC0	-000 0000	-000 0000	-000 0000	-uuu uuuu
INTC1	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
INTC2	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
INTC3	--00 --00	--00 --00	--00 --00	--uu --uu
MFI0	--00 --00	--00 --00	--00 --00	--uu --uu
MFI1	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
MFI2	0-00 0-00	0-00 0-00	0-00 0-00	u-uu u-uu
MFI3	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PA	1111 1111	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
PAC	1111 1111	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
PB	1111 1111	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
PBC	1111 1111	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
PC	1111 1111	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
PCC	1111 1111	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
PD	1111 1111	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
PDC	1111 1111	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
WDTC	0101 0011	0101 0011	0101 0011	uuuu uuuu
TBC	0011 0111	0011 0111	0011 0111	uuuu uuuu
PAWU	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PAPU	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PBPU	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PCPU	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PDPU	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TM0C0	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TM0C1	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TM0DL	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu

Register Name	Power On Reset	LVR Reset	WDT Time-out (Normal Operation)	WDT Time-out (IDLE/SLEEP)
TM0DH	---- --00	---- --00	---- --00	---- --uu
TM0AL	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TM0AH	---- --00	---- --00	---- --00	---- --uu
LCDC	0000 -000	0000 -000	0000 -000	uuuu -uuu
LCD1	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
LCD2	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
LCD3	---- --00	---- --00	---- --00	---- --uu
CP1C	1000 0--1	1000 0--1	1000 0--1	uuuu u--u
CP0C	1000 0--1	1000 0--1	1000 0--1	uuuu u--u
PWRC	0--- -000	0--- -000	0--- -000	u--- -uuu
PGAC0	-000 0000	-000 0000	-000 0000	-uuu uuuu
PGAC1	-000 000-	-000 000-	-000 000-	-uuu uuu-
PGACS	--00 0000	--00 0000	--00 0000	--uu uuuu
USR	0000 1011	0000 1011	0000 1011	uuuu uuuu
UCR1	0000 00x0	0000 00x0	0000 00x0	uuuu uuuu
UCR2	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
BRG	xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TXR_RXR	xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
IRCTRL0	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
IRCTRL1	---- ---0	---- ---0	---- ---0	---- ---u
ADCR0	0010 00-0	0010 00-0	0010 00-0	uuuu uu-u
ADCR1	0000 000-	0000 000-	0000 000-	uuuu uuu-
ADRL	xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
ADRH	xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
ADCS	---0 0000	---0 0000	---0 0000	---u uuuu
ADRM	xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
LVRC	0101 0101	0101 0101	0101 0101	uuuu uuuu
CTRL	0--- -x00	0--- -x00	0--- -x00	u--- -uuu
PTM1C0	0000 0---	0000 0---	0000 0---	uuuu u---
PTM1C1	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PTM1DL	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PTM1DH	---- --00	---- --00	---- --00	---- --uu
PTM1AL	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PTM1AH	---- --00	---- --00	---- --00	---- --uu
PTM2C0	0000 0---	0000 0---	0000 0---	uuuu u---
PTM2C1	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PTM2DL	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PTM2DH	---- --00	---- --00	---- --00	---- --uu
PTM2AL	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PTM2AH	---- --00	---- --00	---- --00	---- --uu
CTRL0	---- 0000	---- 0000	---- 0000	---- uuuu
PTM1RPL	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PTM1RPH	---- --00	---- --00	---- --00	---- --uu
PTM2RPL	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PTM2RPH	---- --00	---- --00	---- --00	---- --uu
SIMC0	111- 0000	111- 0000	111- 0000	uuu- uuuu
SIMC1	1000 0001	1000 0001	1000 0001	uuuu uuuu

Register Name	Power On Reset	LVR Reset	WDT Time-out (Normal Operation)	WDT Time-out (IDLE/SLEEP)
SIMA/SIMC2	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
SIMD	xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
SIMTOC	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
STM3C0	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
STM3C1	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
STM3DL	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
STM3DH	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
STM3AL	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
STM3AH	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
STM3RP	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
FARL	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
FARH	---0 0000	---0 0000	---0 0000	---u uuuu
FD0L	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
FD0H	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
FD1L	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
FD1H	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
FD2L	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
FD2H	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
FD3L	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
FD3H	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
LCDCP	---- 0-00	---- 0-00	---- 0-00	---- u-uu
EEA	-xxx xxxx	-xxx xxxx	-xxx xxxx	-uuu uuuu
EED	xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
EEC	---- 0000	---- 0000	---- 0000	---- uuuu
FC0	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
FC1	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
FC2	---- ---0	---- ---0	---- ---0	---- ---u
DSDAH	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000	0000 0000
DSDAL	---- 0000	---- 0000	---- 0000	---- 0000
DSDACC	00-- ----	00-- ----	00-- ----	00-- ----
DSOPC	0--- 0000	0--- 0000	0--- 0000	0--- 0000

Note: "u" stands for unchanged
"x" stands for unknown
"-" stands for unimplemented

Input/Output Ports

Holtek microcontrollers offer considerable flexibility on their I/O ports. With the input or output designation of every pin fully under user program control, pull-high selections for all ports and wake-up selections on certain pins, the user is provided with an I/O structure to meet the needs of a wide range of application possibilities.

The device provides bidirectional input/output lines labeled with port names PA~PD. These I/O ports are mapped to the RAM Data Memory with specific addresses as shown in the Special Purpose Data Memory table. All of these I/O ports can be used for input and output operations. For input operation, these ports are non-latching, which means the inputs must be ready at the T2 rising edge of instruction "MOV A, [m]", where m denotes the port address. For output operation, all the data is latched and remains unchanged until the output latch is rewritten.

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
PAWU	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
PAPU	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
PA	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
PAC	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
PBPU	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
PB	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
PBC	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
PCPU	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
PC	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
PCC	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
PDPU	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
PD	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
PDC	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0

I/O Register List

Pull-high Resistors

Many product applications require pull-high resistors for their switch inputs usually requiring the use of an external resistor. To eliminate the need for these external resistors, all I/O pins, when configured as an input have the capability of being connected to an internal pull-high resistor. These pull-high resistors are selected using registers PAPU~PDPU, and are implemented using weak PMOS transistors.

- **PAPU Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 Port A bit 7 ~ bit 0 Pull-high Control
0: Disable
1: Enable

• **PBPU Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 Port B bit 7 ~ bit 0 Pull-high Control
0: Disable
1: Enable

• **PCPU Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 Port C bit 7 ~ bit 0 Pull-high Control
0: Disable
1: Enable

• **PDPU Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 Port D bit 7 ~ bit 0 Pull-high Control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Port A Wake-up

The HALT instruction forces the microcontroller into the SLEEP or IDLE Mode which preserves power, a feature that is important for battery and other low-power applications. Various methods exist to wake-up the microcontroller, one of which is to change the logic condition on one of the Port A pins from high to low. This function is especially suitable for applications that can be woken up via external switches. Each pin on Port A can be selected individually to have this wake-up feature using the PAWU register.

• **PAWU Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 Port A bit 7~bit 0 Wake-up Control
0: Disable
1: Enable

I/O Port Control Registers

Each I/O port has its own control register known as PAC~PDC, to control the input/output configuration. With this control register, each CMOS output or input can be reconfigured dynamically under software control. Each pin of the I/O ports is directly mapped to a bit in its associated port control register. For the I/O pin to function as an input, the corresponding bit of the control register must be written as a "1". This will then allow the logic state of the input pin to be directly read by instructions. When the corresponding bit of the control register is written as a "0", the I/O pin will be setup as a CMOS output. If the pin is currently setup as an output, instructions can still be used to read the output register. However, it should be noted that the program will in fact only read the status of the output data latch and not the actual logic status of the output pin.

• **PAC Registr**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1

Bit 7~0 Port A bit 7 ~ bit 0 Input/Output Control
0: Output
1: Input

• **PBC Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1

Bit 7~0 Port B bit 7 ~ bit 0 Input/Output Control
0: Output
1: Input

• **PCC Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1

Bit 7~0 Port C bit 7 ~ bit 0 Input/Output Control
0: Output
1: Input

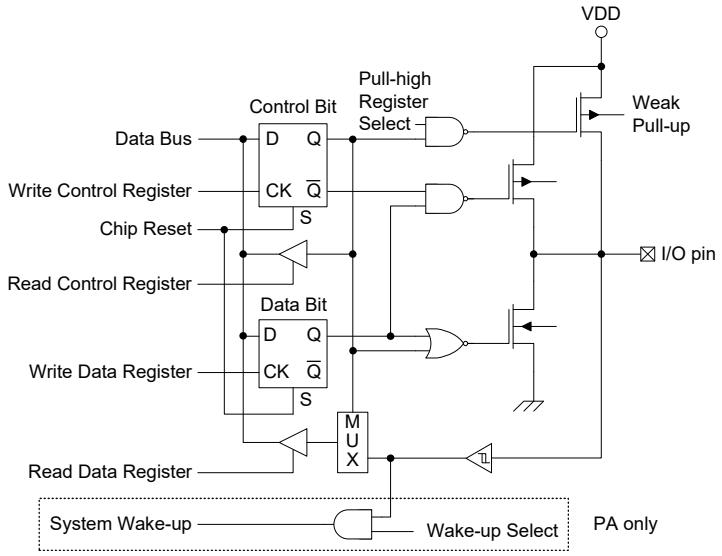
• **PDC Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1

Bit 7~0 Port D bit 7 ~ bit 0 Input/Output Control
0: Output
1: Input

I/O Pin Structures

The accompanying diagrams illustrate the internal structures of some generic I/O pin types. As the exact logical construction of the I/O pin will differ from these drawings, they are supplied as a guide only to assist with the functional understanding of the I/O pins. The wide range of pin-shared structures does not permit all types to be shown.



Generic Input/Output Structure

Programming Considerations

Within the user program, one of the first things to consider is port initialisation. After a reset, all of the I/O data and port control registers will be set high. This means that all I/O pins will default to an input state, the level of which depends on the other connected circuitry and whether pull-high selections have been chosen. If the port control registers, PAC~PDC, are then programmed to setup some pins as outputs, these output pins will have an initial high output value unless the associated port data registers, PA~PD, are first programmed. Selecting which pins are inputs and which are outputs can be achieved byte-wide by loading the correct values into the appropriate port control register or by programming individual bits in the port control register using the "SET [m].i" and "CLR [m].i" instructions. Note that when using these bit control instructions, a read-modify-write operation takes place. The microcontroller must first read in the data on the entire port, modify it to the required new bit values and then rewrite this data back to the output ports.

Port A has the additional capability of providing wake-up functions. When the device is in the SLEEP or IDLE Mode, various methods are available to wake the device up. One of these is a high to low transition of any of the Port A pins. Single or multiple pins on Port A can be setup to have this function.

Timer Modules – TM

One of the most fundamental functions in any microcontroller device is the ability to control and measure time. To implement time related functions each device includes several Timer Modules, abbreviated to the name TM. The TMs are multi-purpose timing units and serve to provide operations such as Timer/Counter, Input Capture, Compare Match Output and Single Pulse Output as well as being the functional unit for the generation of PWM signals. Each of the TMs has two individual interrupts. The addition of input and output pins for each TM ensures that users are provided with timing units with a wide and flexible range of features.

The common features of the different TM types are described here with more detailed information provided in the individual Compact, Periodic and Standard TM sections.

Introduction

The device contains four TMs having a reference name of TM0, TM1, TM2 and TM3. Each individual TM can be categorised as a certain type, namely Compact Type TM, Periodic Type TM or Standard Type TM. Although similar in nature, the different TM types vary in their feature complexity. The common features to all of the Compact, Periodic and Standard TMs will be described in this section; the detailed operation regarding each of the TM types will be described in separate sections. The main features and differences between the three types of TMs are summarised in the accompanying table.

Function	CTM	PTM	STM
Timer/Counter	√	√	√
I/P Capture	—	√	√
Compare Match Output	√	√	√
PWM Channels	1	1	1
Single Pulse Output	—	1	1
PWM Alignment	Edge	Edge	Edge
PWM Adjustment Period & Duty	Duty or Period	Duty or Period	Duty or Period

TM Function Summary

TM0	TM1	TM2	TM3
10-bit CTM	10-bit PTM	10-bit PTM	16-bit STM

TM Name/Type Reference

TM Operation

The three different types of TM offer a diverse range of functions, from simple timing operations to PWM signal generation. The key to understanding how the TM operates is to see it in terms of a free running counter whose value is then compared with the value of pre-programmed internal comparators. When the free running counter has the same value as the pre-programmed comparator, known as a compare match situation, a TM interrupt signal will be generated which can clear the counter and perhaps also change the condition of the TM output pin. The internal TM counter is driven by a user selectable clock source, which can be an internal clock or an external pin.

TM Clock Source

The clock source which drives the main counter in each TM can originate from various sources. The selection of the required clock source is implemented using the TnCK2~TnCK0 bits in the TM control registers. The clock source can be a ratio of the system clock f_{SYS} or the internal high clock f_H, the f_{SUB} clock source or the external TCKn pin. The TCKn pin clock source is used to allow an external signal to drive the TM as an external clock source or for event counting.

TM Interrupts

The Compact Type, Periodic Type and Standard Type TMs each have two internal interrupts, one for each of the internal comparator A or comparator P, which generate a TM interrupt when a compare match condition occurs. When a TM interrupt is generated it can be used to clear the counter and also to change the state of the TM output pin.

TM External Pins

Each of the TMs, irrespective of what type, has one TM input pin, with the label TCKn. The TM input pin is essentially a clock source for the TM and is selected using the TnCK2~TnCK0 bits in the TMnC0/PTMnC0/STMnC0 register. This external TM input pin allows an external clock source to drive the internal TM. This external TM input pin is shared with other functions but will be connected to the internal TM if selected using the TnCK2~TnCK0 bits. The TM input pin can be chosen to have either a rising or falling active edge.

The TMs each have two output pins with the label TPn_0 and TPn_1. When the TM is in the Compare Match Output Mode, these pins can be controlled by the TM to switch to a high or low level or to toggle when a compare match situation occurs. The external TPn_0 and TPn_1 output pins are also the pin where the TM generates the PWM output waveform. As the TM output pins are pin-shared with other function, the TM output function must first be setup using the CTRL0 register. A single bit in one of the registers determines if its associated pin is to be used as an external TM output pin or if it is to have another function. The details of the TM output pins for each TM type are provided in the accompanying table.

All TM output pin names have a "_n" suffix. Pin names that include a "_0" or "_1" suffix indicate that they are from a TM with multiple output pins. This allows the TM to generate a complimentary output pair, selected using the I/O register data bits.

TM0	TM1	TM2	TM3	Register
TP0_0, TP0_1	TP1_0, TP1_1	TP2_0, TP2_1	TP3_0, TP3_1	CTRL0

TM Output Pins

TM Input/Output Pin Control Registers

Selecting to have a TM input/output or whether to retain its other shared functions is implemented using one register with a single bit in each register corresponding to a TM input/output pin. When the TMn is enabled, if the corresponding pin is setup as a TM input/output, and the complimentary output will be as a normal I/O pin.

- **CTRL0 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	TP3CPS	TP2CPS	TP1CPS	TP0CPS
R/W	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~4 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 3 **TP3CPS**: TP3_0, TP3_1 pin selection
0: TP3_0
1: TP3_1
When TM3 is enabled, the output function of TP3_0 is timer, then the TP3_1 is I/O, and vice versa.

Bit 2 **TP2CPS**: TP2_0, TP2_1 pin selection
0: TP2_0
1: TP2_1
When TM2 is enabled, the output function of TP2_0 is timer, then the TP2_1 is I/O, and vice versa.

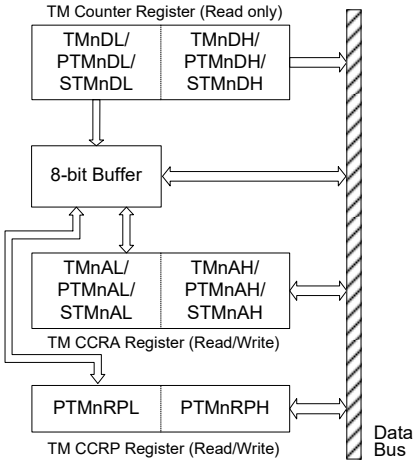
Bit 1 **TP1CPS**: TP1_0, TP1_1 pin selection
0: TP1_0
1: TP1_1
When TM1 is enabled, the output function of TP1_0 is timer, then the TP1_1 is I/O, and vice versa.

Bit 0 **TP0CPS**: TP0_0, TP0_1 pin selection
0: TP0_0
1: TP0_1
When TM0 is enabled, the output function of TP0_0 is timer, then the TP0_1 is I/O, and vice versa.

Programming Considerations

The TM Counter Registers and the Capture/Compare CCRA registers, being either 10-bit or 16-bit, and CCRP register pair for Periodic Timer Module, being 10-bit, all have a low and high byte structure. The high bytes can be directly accessed, but as the low bytes can only be accessed via an internal 8-bit buffer, reading or writing to these register pairs must be carried out in a specific way. The important point to note is that data transfer to and from the 8-bit buffer and its related low byte only takes place when a write or read operation to its corresponding high byte is executed.

As the CCRA and PTM CCRP registers are implemented in the way shown in the following diagram and accessing the register is carried out in a specific way described above, it is recommended to use the "MOV" instruction to access the CCRA and PTM CCRP low byte registers, named TMnAL/PTMnAL/STMnAL and PTMnRPL, using the following access procedures. Accessing the CCRA or PTM CCRP low byte register without following these access procedures will result in unpredictable values.



The following steps show the read and write procedures:

- Writing Data to CCRA or PTM CCRP
  - Step 1. Write data to Low Byte TMnAL/PTMnAL/STMnAL or PTMnRPL
    - Note that here data is only written to the 8-bit buffer.
  - Step 2. Write data to High Byte TMnAH/PTMnAH/STMnAH or PTMnRPH
    - Here data is written directly to the high byte registers and simultaneously data is latched from the 8-bit buffer to the Low Byte registers.

- Reading Data from the Counter Registers and CCRA or PTM CCRP
  - Step 1. Read data from the High Byte TMnDH/PTMnDH/STMnDH, TMnAH/PTMnAH/STMnAH or PTMnRPH
    - Here data is read directly from the High Byte registers and simultaneously data is latched from the Low Byte register into the 8-bit buffer.
  - Step 2. Read data from the Low Byte TMnDL/PTMnDL/STMnDL, TMnAL/PTMnAL/STMnAL or PTMnRPL
    - This step reads data from the 8-bit buffer.

Compact Type TM – CTM (TM0)

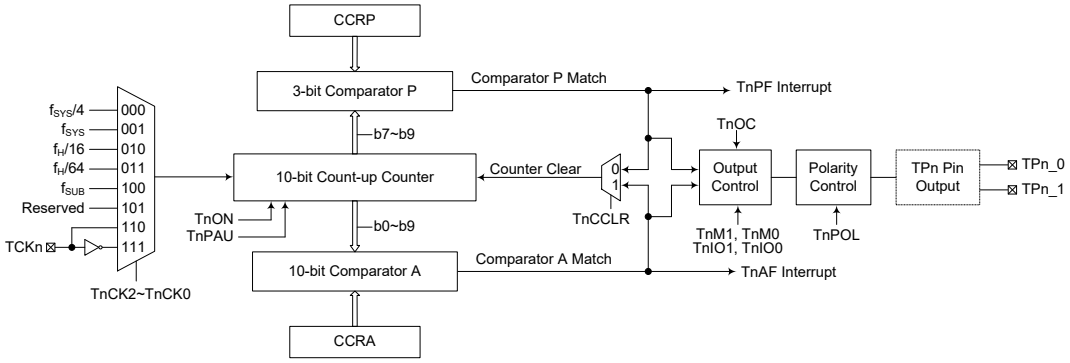
Although the simplest form of the three TM types, the Compact TM type still contains three operating modes, which are Compare Match Output, Timer/Event Counter and PWM Output modes. The Compact TM can be controlled with an external input pin and can drive two external output pins.

Name	TM No.	TM Input Pin	TM Output Pin
10-bit CTM	0	TCK0	TP0_0, TP0_1

Compact TM Operation

At its core is a 10-bit count-up counter which is driven by a user selectable internal or external clock source. There are also two internal comparators with the names, Comparator A and Comparator P. These comparators will compare the value in the counter with CCRP and CCRA registers. The CCRP is three bits wide whose value is compared with the highest three bits in the counter while the CCRA is the ten bits and therefore compares with all counter bits.

The only way of changing the value of the 10-bit counter using the application program, is to clear the counter by changing the TnON bit from low to high. The counter will also be cleared automatically by a counter overflow or a compare match with one of its associated comparators. When these conditions occur, a TM interrupt signal will also usually be generated. The Compact Type TM can operate in a number of different operational modes, can be driven by different clock sources including an input pin and can also control the output pin. All operating setup conditions are selected using relevant internal registers.



Compact Type TM Block Diagram (n=0)

Compact Type TM Register Description

Overall operation of the Compact TM is controlled using a series of registers. A read only register pair exists to store the internal counter 10-bit value, while a read/write register pair exists to store the internal 10-bit CCRA value. The remaining two registers are control registers which setup the different operating and control modes as well as the three CCRP bits.

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
TMnC0	TnPAU	TnCK2	TnCK1	TnCK0	TnON	TnRP2	TnRP1	TnRP0
TMnC1	TnM1	TnM0	TnIO1	TnIO0	TnOC	TnPOL	TnDPX	TnCCLR
TMnDL	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
TMnDH	—	—	—	—	—	—	D9	D8
TMnAL	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
TMnAH	—	—	—	—	—	—	D9	D8

Compact TM Register List (n=0)

- **TMnC0 Register (n=0)**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	TnPAU	TnCK2	TnCK1	TnCK0	TnON	TnRP2	TnRP1	TnRP0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7 **TnPAU**: TMn Counter Pause Control
0: Run
1: Pause
The counter can be paused by setting this bit high. Clearing the bit to zero restores normal counter operation. When in a Pause condition the TM will remain powered up and continue to consume power. The counter will retain its residual value when this bit changes from low to high and resume counting from this value when the bit changes to a low value again.

Bit 6~4 **TnCK2~TnCK0**: Select TMn Counter clock
000: $f_{SYS}/4$
001: f_{SYS}
010: $f_H/16$
011: $f_H/64$
100: f_{SUB}
101: Reserved
110: TCKn rising edge clock
111: TCKn falling edge clock
These three bits are used to select the clock source for the TM. Selecting the Reserved clock input will effectively disable the internal counter. The external pin clock source can be chosen to be active on the rising or falling edge. The clock source f_{SYS} is the system clock, while f_H and f_{SUB} are other internal clocks, the details of which can be found in the oscillator section.

Bit 3 **TnON**: TMn Counter On/Off Control
0: Off
1: On
This bit controls the overall on/off function of the TM. Setting the bit high enables the counter to run, clearing the bit disables the TM. Clearing this bit to zero will stop the counter from counting and turn off the TM which will reduce its power consumption. When the bit changes state from low to high the internal counter value will be reset to zero, however when the bit changes from high to low, the internal counter will retain its residual value. If the TM is in the Compare Match Output Mode then the TM output pin will be reset to its initial condition, as specified by the TnOC bit, when the TnON bit changes from low to high.

Bit 2~0 **TnRP2~TnRP0**: TMn CCRP 3-bit register, compared with the TMn Counter bit 9~bit 7 Comparator P Match Period

000: 1024 TMn clocks
001: 128 TMn clocks
010: 256 TMn clocks
011: 384 TMn clocks
100: 512 TMn clocks
101: 640 TMn clocks
110: 768 TMn clocks
111: 896 TMn clocks

These three bits are used to setup the value on the internal CCRP 3-bit register, which are then compared with the internal counter's highest three bits. The result of this comparison can be selected to clear the internal counter if the TnCCLR bit is set to zero. Setting the TnCCLR bit to zero ensures that a compare match with the CCRP values will reset the internal counter. As the CCRP bits are only compared with the highest three counter bits, the compare values exist in 128 clock cycle multiples. Clearing all three bits to zero is in effect allowing the counter to overflow at its maximum value.

• TMnC1 Register (n=0)

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	TnM1	TnM0	TnIO1	TnIO0	TnOC	TnPOL	TnDPX	TnCCLR
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~6 **TnM1~TnM0**: Select TMn Operating Mode

00: Compare Match Output Mode
01: Undefined
10: PWM Output Mode
11: Timer/Counter Mode

These bits setup the required operating mode for the TM. To ensure reliable operation the TM should be switched off before any changes are made to the TnM1 and TnM0 bits. In the Timer/Counter Mode, the TM output pin control must be disabled.

Bit 5~4 **TnIO1~TnIO0**: Select TPn_0, TPn_1 output function

Compare Match Output Mode

00: No change
01: Output low
10: Output high
11: Toggle output

PWM Output Mode

00: PWM Output inactive state
01: PWM Output active state
10: PWM output
11: Undefined

Timer/Counter Mode

Unused

These two bits are used to determine how the TM output pin changes state when a certain condition is reached. The function that these bits select depends upon in which mode the TM is running.

In the Compare Match Output Mode, the TnIO1 and TnIO0 bits determine how the TM output pin changes state when a compare match occurs from the Comparator A. The TM output pin can be setup to switch high, switch low or to toggle its present state when a compare match occurs from the Comparator A. When the bits are both zero, then no change will take place on the output. The initial value of the TM output pin should be setup using the TnOC bit in the TMnC1 register. Note that the output level requested by the TnIO1 and TnIO0 bits must be different from the initial value

setup using the TnOC bit otherwise no change will occur on the TM output pin when a compare match occurs. After the TM output pin changes state, it can be reset to its initial level by changing the level of the TnON bit from low to high.

In the PWM Output Mode, the TnIO1 and TnIO0 bits determine how the TM output pin changes state when a certain compare match condition occurs. The PWM output function is modified by changing these two bits. It is necessary to only change the values of the TnIO1 and TnIO0 bits only after the TMn has been switched off. Unpredictable PWM outputs will occur if the TnIO1 and TnIO0 bits are changed when the TM is running.

Bit 3 **TnOC**: TPn_0, TPn_1 Output control bit

Compare Match Output Mode
0: Initial low
1: Initial high

PWM Output Mode
0: Active low
1: Active high

This is the output control bit for the TM output pin. Its operation depends upon whether TM is being used in the Compare Match Output Mode or in the PWM Output Mode. It has no effect if the TM is in the Timer/Counter Mode. In the Compare Match Output Mode it determines the logic level of the TM output pin before a compare match occurs. In the PWM Output Mode it determines if the PWM signal is active high or active low.

Bit 2 **TnPOL**: TPn_0, TPn_1 Output polarity Control
0: Non-invert
1: Invert

This bit controls the polarity of the TPn_0 or TPn_1 output pin. When the bit is set high the TM output pin will be inverted and not inverted when the bit is zero. It has no effect if the TM is in the Timer/Counter Mode.

Bit 1 **TnDPX**: TMn PWM period/duty Control
0: CCRP - period; CCRA - duty
1: CCRP - duty; CCRA - period

This bit, determines which of the CCRA and CCRP registers are used for period and duty control of the PWM waveform.

Bit 0 **TnCCLR**: Select TMn Counter clear condition
0: TMn Comparator P match
1: TMn Comparator A match

This bit is used to select the method which clears the counter. Remember that the Compact TM contains two comparators, Comparator A and Comparator P, either of which can be selected to clear the internal counter. With the TnCCLR bit set high, the counter will be cleared when a compare match occurs from the Comparator A. When the bit is low, the counter will be cleared when a compare match occurs from the Comparator P or with a counter overflow. A counter overflow clearing method can only be implemented if the CCRP bits are all cleared to zero. The TnCCLR bit is not used in the PWM Output Mode.

• **TMnDL Register (n=0)**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 **D7~D0**: TMn Counter Low Byte Register bit 7 ~ bit 0
TMn 10-bit Counter bit 7 ~ bit 0

• **TMnDH Register (n=0)**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	—	—	D9	D8
R/W	—	—	—	—	—	—	R	R
POR	—	—	—	—	—	—	0	0

Bit 7~2 Unimplemented, read as "0"
Bit 1~0 **D9~D8**: TMn Counter High Byte Register bit 1 ~ bit 0
TMn 10-bit Counter bit 9 ~ bit 8

• **TMnAL Register (n=0)**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 **D7~D0**: TMn CCRA Low Byte Register bit 7 ~ bit 0
TMn 10-bit CCRA bit 7 ~ bit 0

• **TMnAH Register (n=0)**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	—	—	D9	D8
R/W	—	—	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	—	—	0	0

Bit 7~2 Unimplemented, read as "0"
Bit 1~0 **D9~D8**: TMn CCRA High Byte Register bit 1 ~ bit 0
TMn 10-bit CCRA bit 9 ~ bit 8

Compact Type TM Operating Modes

The Compact Type TM can operate in one of three operating modes, Compare Match Output Mode, PWM Output Mode or Timer/Counter Mode. The operating mode is selected using the TnM1 and TnM0 bits in the TMnC1 register.

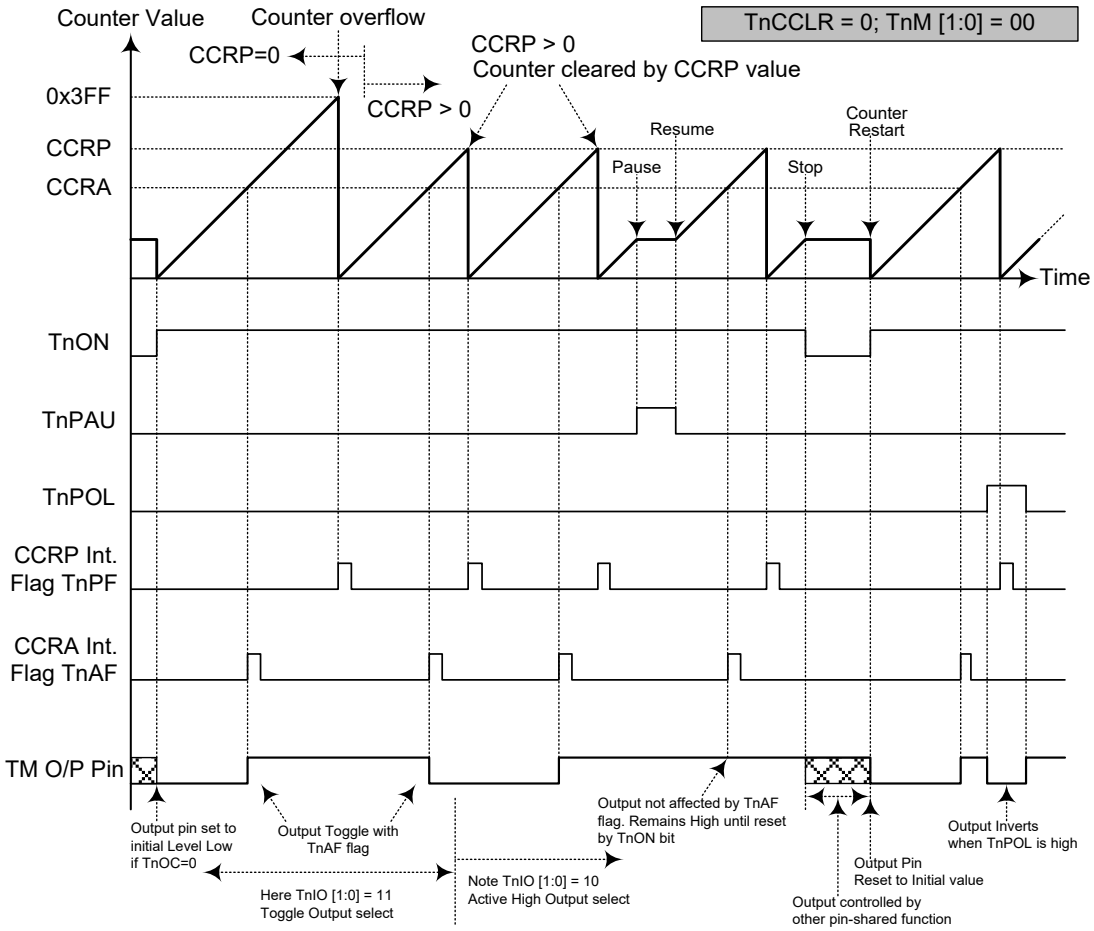
Compare Match Output Mode

To select this mode, bits TnM1 and TnM0 in the TMnC1 register, should be set to 00 respectively. In this mode once the counter is enabled and running it can be cleared by three methods. These are a counter overflow, a compare match from Comparator A and a compare match from Comparator P. When the TnCCLR bit is low, there are two ways in which the counter can be cleared. One is when a compare match occurs from Comparator P, the other is when the CCRP bits are all zero which allows the counter to overflow. Here both TnAF and TnPF interrupt request flags for the Comparator A and Comparator P respectively, will both be generated.

If the TnCCLR bit in the TMnC1 register is high then the counter will be cleared when a compare match occurs from Comparator A. However, here only the TnAF interrupt request flag will be generated even if the value of the CCRP bits is less than that of the CCRA registers. Therefore when TnCCLR is high no TnPF interrupt request flag will be generated.

If the CCRA bits are all zero, the counter will overflow when it reaches its maximum 10-bit, 3FF Hex, value, however here the TnAF interrupt request flag will not be generated.

As the name of the mode suggests, after a comparison is made, the TM output pin will change state. The TM output pin condition however only changes state when a TnAF interrupt request flag is generated after a compare match occurs from Comparator A. The TnPF interrupt request flag, generated from a compare match occurs from Comparator P, will have no effect on the TM output pin. The way in which the TM output pin changes state are determined by the condition of the TnIO1 and TnIO0 bits in the TMnC1 register. The TM output pin can be selected using the TnIO1 and TnIO0 bits to go high, to go low or to toggle from its present condition when a compare match occurs from Comparator A. The initial condition of the TM output pin, which is setup after the TnON bit changes from low to high, is setup using the TnOC bit. Note that if the TnIO1 and TnIO0 bits are zero then no pin change will take place.

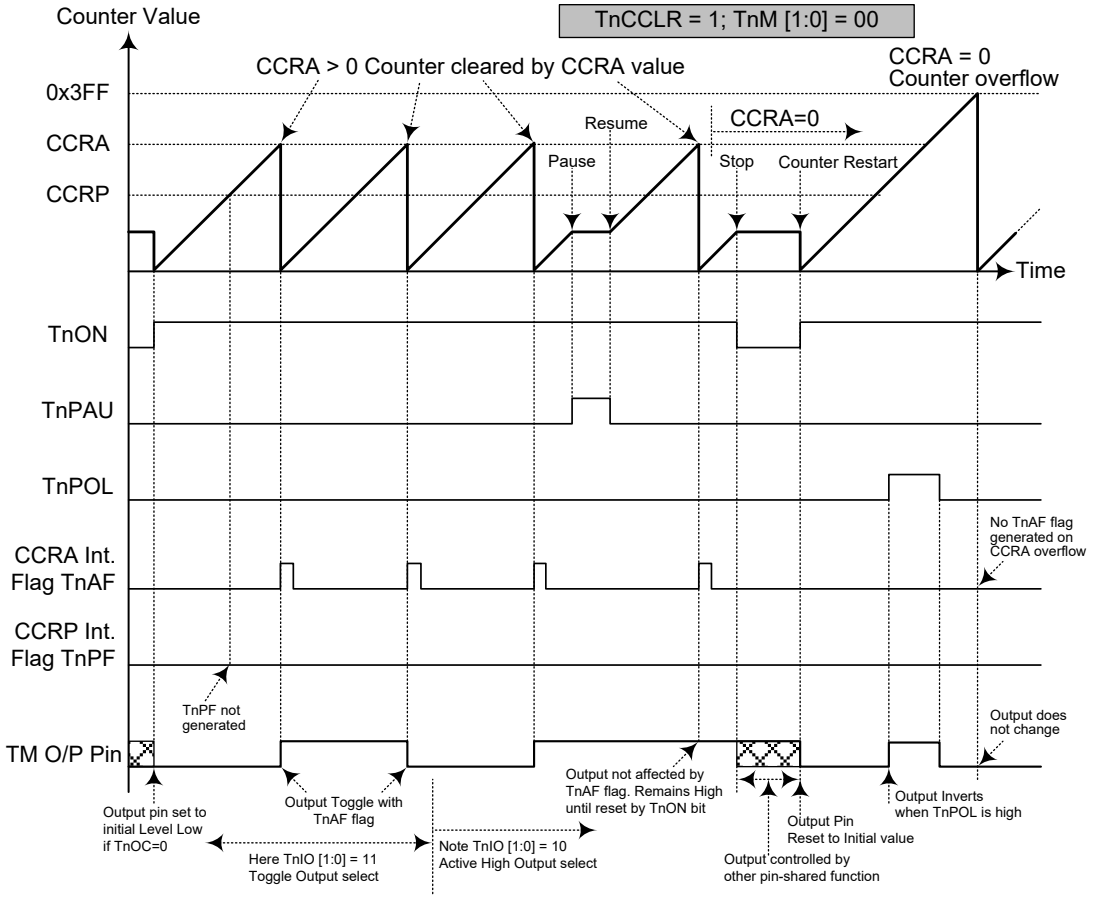


Compare Match Output Mode – TnCCLR = 0 (n=0)

Note: 1. With TnCCLR=0, a Comparator P match will clear the counter

2. The TM output pin is controlled only by the TnAF flag

3. The output pin is reset to its initial state by a TnON bit rising edge



Compare Match Output Mode – TnCCLR = 1 (n=0)

Note: 1. With TnCCLR=1, a Comparator A match will clear the counter

2. The TM output pin is controlled only by the TnAF flag
3. The output pin is reset to its initial state by a TnON bit rising edge
4. The TnPF flag is not generated when TnCCLR=1

Timer/Counter Mode

To select this mode, bits TnM1 and TnM0 in the TMnC1 register should be set to 11 respectively. The Timer/Counter Mode operates in an identical way to the Compare Match Output Mode generating the same interrupt flags. The exception is that in the Timer/Counter Mode the TM output pin is not used. Therefore the above description and Timing Diagrams for the Compare Match Output Mode can be used to understand its function. As the TM output pin is not used in this mode, the pin can be used as a normal I/O pin or other pin-shared function.

PWM Output Mode

To select this mode, bits TnM1 and TnM0 in the TMnC1 register should be set to 10 respectively. The PWM function within the TM is useful for applications which require functions such as motor control, heating control, illumination control etc. By providing a signal of fixed frequency but of varying duty cycle on the TM output pin, a square wave AC waveform can be generated with varying equivalent DC RMS values.

As both the period and duty cycle of the PWM waveform can be controlled, the choice of generated waveform is extremely flexible. In the PWM mode, the TnCCLR bit has no effect on the PWM operation. Both of the CCRA and CCRP registers are used to generate the PWM waveform, one register is used to clear the internal counter and thus control the PWM waveform frequency, while the other one is used to control the duty cycle. Which register is used to control either frequency or duty cycle is determined using the TnDPX bit in the TMnC1 register. The PWM waveform frequency and duty cycle can therefore be controlled by the values in the CCRA and CCRP registers.

An interrupt flag, one for each of the CCRA and CCRP, will be generated when a compare match occurs from either Comparator A or Comparator P. The TnOC bit in the TMnC1 register is used to select the required polarity of the PWM waveform while the two TnIO1 and TnIO0 bits are used to enable the PWM output or to force the TM output pin to a fixed high or low level. The TnPOL bit is used to reverse the polarity of the PWM output waveform.

CTM, PWM Output Mode, Edge-aligned Mode, TnDPX=0

CCRP	001b	010b	011b	100b	101b	110b	111b	000b
Period	128	256	384	512	640	768	896	1024
Duty	CCRA							

If f_{SYS} = 16MHz, TM clock source is $f_{SYS}/4$, CCRP = 100b and CCRA = 128,

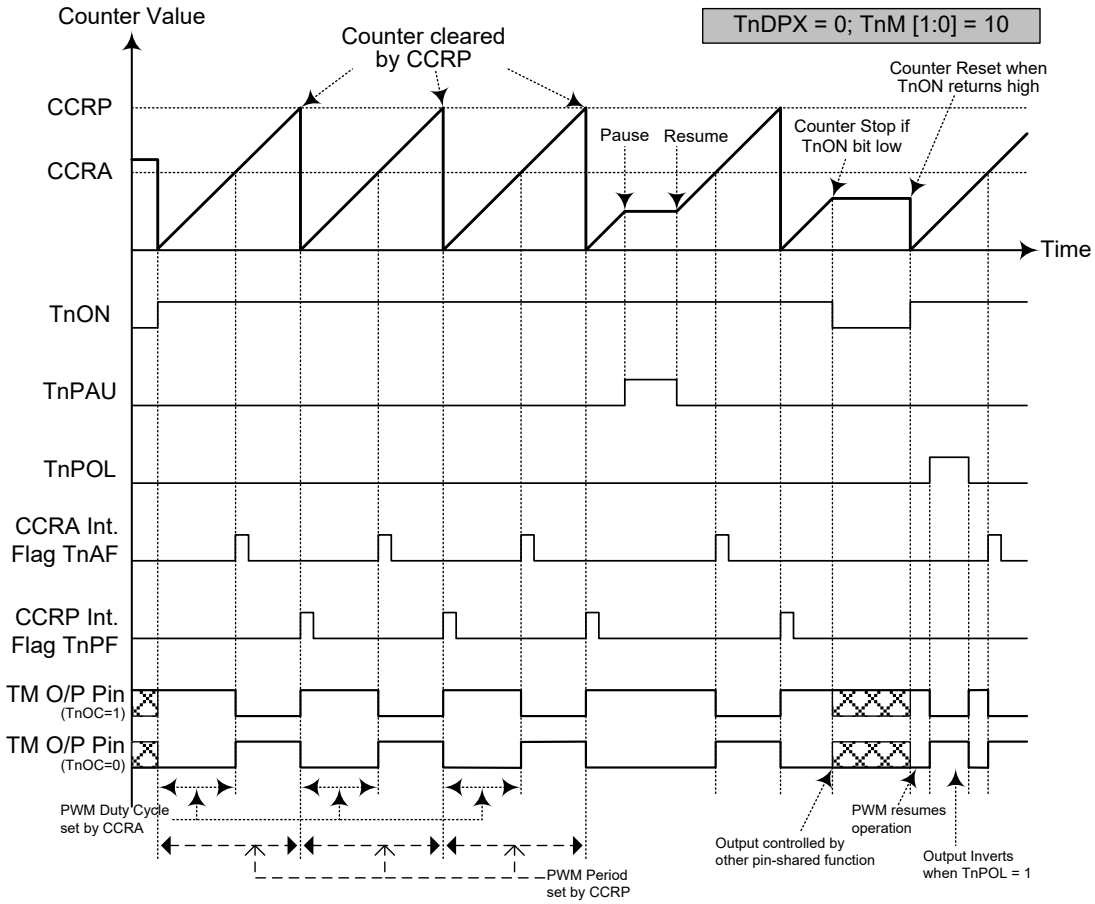
The CTM PWM output frequency = $(f_{SYS}/4)/512 = f_{SYS}/2048$ = 7.8125 kHz, duty = 128/512 = 25%.

If the Duty value defined by the CCRA register is equal to or greater than the Period value, then the PWM output duty is 100%.

CTM, PWM Output Mode, Edge-aligned Mode, TnDPX=1

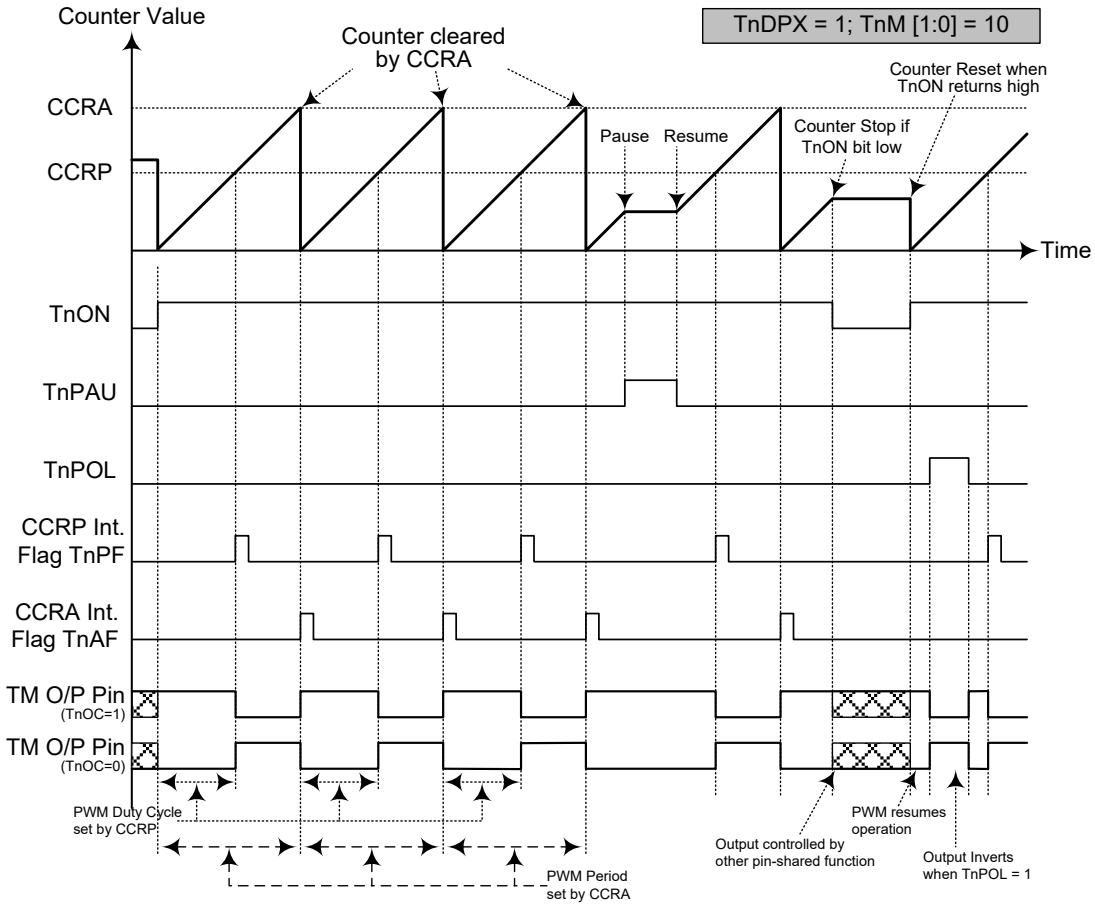
CCRP	001b	010b	011b	100b	101b	110b	111b	000b
Period	CCRA							
Duty	128	256	384	512	640	768	896	1024

The PWM output period is determined by the CCRA register value together with the TM clock while the PWM duty cycle is defined by the CCRP register value.



PWM Output Mode – TnDPX = 0 (n=0)

Note: 1. Here TnDPX=0 – Counter cleared by CCRP
2. A counter clear sets the PWM Period
3. The internal PWM function continues even when TnIO [1:0] = 00 or 01
4. The TnCCLR bit has no influence on PWM operation



PWM Output Mode – TnDPX = 1 (n=0)

Note: 1. Here TnDPX = 1 – Counter cleared by CCRA
2. A counter clear sets the PWM Period
3. The internal PWM function continues even when TnIO [1:0] = 00 or 01
4. The TnCCLR bit has no influence on PWM operation

Periodic Type TM – PTM (TM1, TM2)

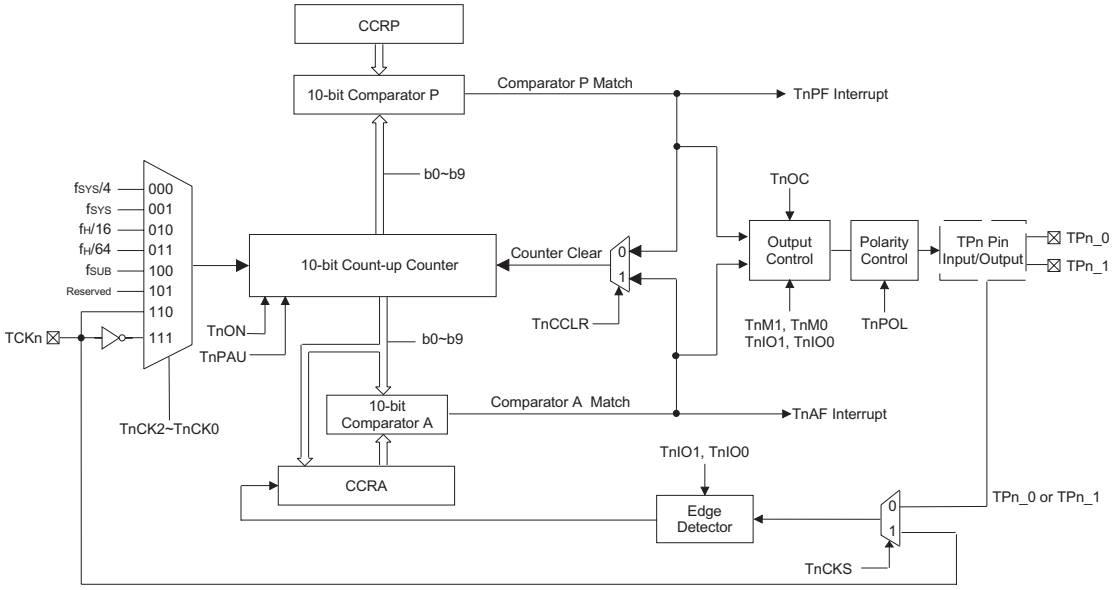
The Periodic Type TM contains five operating modes, which are Compare Match Output, Timer/ Event Counter, Capture Input, Single Pulse Output and PWM Output modes. The Periodic TM can be controlled with an external input pin and can drive two external output pins.

Name	TM No.	TM Input Pin	TM Output Pin
10-bit PTM	1, 2	TCK1; TCK2	TP1_0, TP1_1; TP2_0, TP2_1

Periodic TM Operation

At its core is a 10-bit count-up counter which is driven by a user selectable internal or external clock source. There are two internal comparators with the names, Comparator A and Comparator P. These comparators will compare the value in the counter with the CCRA and CCRP registers.

The only way of changing the value of the 10-bit counter using the application program, is to clear the counter by changing the TnON bit from low to high. The counter will also be cleared automatically by a counter overflow or a compare match with one of its associated comparators. When these conditions occur, a TM interrupt signal will also usually be generated. The Periodic Type TM can operate in a number of different operational modes, can be driven by different clock sources including an input pin and can also control the output pin. All operating setup conditions are selected using relevant internal registers.



Periodic Type TM Block Diagram (n=1 or 2)

Periodic Type TM Register Description

Overall operation of the Periodic TM is controlled using a series of registers. A read only register pair exists to store the internal counter 10-bit value, while two read/write register pairs exist to store the internal 10-bit CCRA and CCRP value. The remaining two registers are control registers which setup the different operating and control modes.

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
PTMnC0	TnPAU	TnCK2	TnCK1	TnCK0	TnON	—	—	—
PTMnC1	TnM1	TnM0	TnIO1	TnIO0	TnOC	TnPOL	TnCKS	TnCCLR
PTMnDL	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
PTMnDH	—	—	—	—	—	—	D9	D8
PTMnAL	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
PTMnAH	—	—	—	—	—	—	D9	D8
PTMnRPL	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
PTMnRPH	—	—	—	—	—	—	D9	D8

10-bit Periodic TM Register List (n=1 or 2)

- **PTMnC0 Register (n=1 or 2)**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	TnPAU	TnCK2	TnCK1	TnCK0	TnON	—	—	—
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	—	—	—
POR	0	0	0	0	0	—	—	—

Bit 7 **TnPAU**: TMn Counter Pause Control
0: Run
1: Pause
The counter can be paused by setting this bit high. Clearing the bit to zero restores normal counter operation. When in a Pause condition the TM will remain powered up and continue to consume power. The counter will retain its residual value when this bit changes from low to high and resume counting from this value when the bit changes to a low value again.

Bit 6~4 **TnCK2~TnCK0**: Select TMn Counter clock
000: $f_{SYS}/4$
001: f_{SYS}
010: $f_H/16$
011: $f_H/64$
100: f_{SUB}
101: Reserved
110: TCKn rising edge clock
111: TCKn falling edge clock
These three bits are used to select the clock source for the TM. Selecting the Reserved clock input will effectively disable the internal counter. The external pin clock source can be chosen to be active on the rising or falling edge. The clock source f_{SYS} is the system clock, while f_H and f_{SUB} are other internal clocks, the details of which can be found in the oscillator section.

Bit 3 **TnON**: TMn Counter On/Off Control
0: Off
1: On
This bit controls the overall on/off function of the TM. Setting the bit high enables the counter to run, clearing the bit disables the TM. Clearing this bit to zero will stop the counter from counting and turn off the TM which will reduce its power consumption. When the bit changes state from low to high the internal counter value will be reset to zero, however when the bit changes from high to low, the internal counter will retain its residual value until the bit returns high again.
If the TM is in the Compare Match Output Mode then the TM output pin will be reset to its initial condition, as specified by the TM Output control bit, when the bit changes from low to high.

Bit 2~0 Unimplemented, read as "0"

• **PTMnC1 Register (n=1 or 2)**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	TnM1	TnM0	TnIO1	TnIO0	TnOC	TnPOL	TnCKS	TnCCLR
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~6 **TnM1~TnM0**: Select TMn Operation Mode
00: Compare Match Output Mode
01: Capture Input Mode
10: PWM Output Mode or Single Pulse Output Mode
11: Timer/Counter Mode

These bits setup the required operating mode for the TM. To ensure reliable operation the TM should be switched off before any changes are made to the TnM1 and TnM0 bits. In the Timer/Counter Mode, the TM output pin control must be disabled.

Bit 5~4 **TnIO1~TnIO0**: Select TPn_0, TPn_1 output function

Compare Match Output Mode
00: No change
01: Output low
10: Output high
11: Toggle output

PWM Output Mode/Single Pulse Output Mode
00: PWM Output inactive state
01: PWM Output active state
10: PWM output
11: Single pulse output

Capture Input Mode
00: Input capture at rising edge of TPn_0, TPn_1, TCKn
01: Input capture at falling edge of TPn_0, TPn_1, TCKn
10: Input capture at falling/rising edge of TPn_0, TPn_1, TCKn
11: Input capture disabled

Timer/counter Mode
Unused

These two bits are used to determine how the TM output pin changes state when a certain condition is reached. The function that these bits select depends upon in which mode the TM is running.

In the Compare Match Output Mode, the TnIO1 and TnIO0 bits determine how the TM output pin changes state when a compare match occurs from the Comparator A. The TM output pin can be setup to switch high, switch low or to toggle its present state when a compare match occurs from the Comparator A. When these bits are both zero, then no change will take place on the output. The initial value of the TM output pin should be setup using the TnOC bit. Note that the output level requested by the TnIO1 and TnIO0 bits must be different from the initial value setup using the TnOC bit otherwise no change will occur on the TM output pin when a compare match occurs. After the TM output pin changes state, it can be reset to its initial level by changing the level of the TnON bit from low to high.

In the PWM Output Mode, the TnIO1 and TnIO0 bits determine how the TM output pin changes state when a certain compare match condition occurs. The PWM output function is modified by changing these two bits. It is necessary to change the values of the TnIO1 and TnIO0 bits only after the TM has been switched off. Unpredictable PWM outputs will occur if the TnIO1 and TnIO0 bits are changed when the TM is running.

Bit 3 **TnOC**: TPn_0, TPn_1 Output control bit

Compare Match Output Mode
0: Initial low
1: Initial high

PWM Output Mode/ Single Pulse Output Mode
0: Active low
1: Active high

This is the output control bit for the TM output pin. Its operation depends upon whether TM is being used in the Compare Match Output Mode or in the PWM Output Mode/ Single Pulse Output Mode. It has no effect if the TM is in the Timer/Counter Mode. In the Compare Match Output Mode it determines the logic level of the TM output pin before a compare match occurs. In the PWM Output Mode it determines if the PWM signal is active high or active low.

Bit 2 **TnPOL**: TPn_0, TPn_1 Output polarity Control
0: Non-invert
1: Invert

This bit controls the polarity of the TPn_0, TPn_1 output pin. When the bit is set high the TM output pin will be inverted and not inverted when the bit is zero. It has no effect if the TM is in the Timer/Counter Mode.

Bit 1 **TnCKS**: TMn capture trigger source select
0: From TPn_0, TPn_1 pin
1: From TCKn pin

Bit 0 **TnCCLR**: Select TMn Counter clear condition
0: TMn Comparator P match
1: TMn Comparator A match

This bit is used to select the method which clears the counter. Remember that the Periodic TM contains two comparators, Comparator A and Comparator P, either of which can be selected to clear the internal counter. With the TnCCLR bit set high, the counter will be cleared when a compare match occurs from the Comparator A. When the bit is low, the counter will be cleared when a compare match occurs from the Comparator P or with a counter overflow. A counter overflow clearing method can only be implemented if the CCRP bits are all cleared to zero. The TnCCLR bit is not used in the PWM, Single Pulse or Input Capture Mode.

• PTMnDL Register (n=1 or 2)

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 **PTMnDL**: TMn Counter Low Byte Register bit 7 ~ bit 0
TMn 10-bit Counter bit 7 ~ bit 0

• PTMnDH Register (n=1 or 2)

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	—	—	D9	D8
R/W	—	—	—	—	—	—	R	R
POR	—	—	—	—	—	—	0	0

Bit 7~2 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 1~0 **PTMnDH**: TMn Counter High Byte Register bit 1 ~ bit 0
TMn 10-bit Counter bit 9 ~ bit 8

• **PTMnAL Register (n=1 or 2)**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 **PTMnAL**: TMn CCRA Low Byte Register bit 7 ~ bit 0
TMn 10-bit CCRA bit 7 ~ bit 0

• **PTMnAH Register (n=1 or 2)**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	—	—	D9	D8
R/W	—	—	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	—	—	0	0

Bit 7~2 Unimplemented, read as "0"
Bit 1~0 **PTMnAH**: TMn CCRA High Byte Register bit 1 ~ bit 0
TMn 10-bit CCRA bit 9 ~ bit 8

• **PTMnRPL Register (n=1 or 2)**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 **PTMnRPL**: TMn CCRP Low Byte Register bit 7 ~ bit 0
TMn 10-bit CCRP bit 7 ~ bit 0

• **PTMnRPH Register (n=1 or 2)**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	—	—	D9	D8
R/W	—	—	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	—	—	0	0

Bit 7~2 Unimplemented, read as "0"
Bit 1~0 **PTMnRPH**: TMn CCRP High Byte Register bit 1 ~ bit 0
TMn 10-bit CCRP bit 9 ~ bit 8

Periodic Type TM Operating Modes

The Periodic Type TM can operate in one of five operating modes, Compare Match Output Mode, PWM Output Mode, Single Pulse Output Mode, Capture Input Mode or Timer/Counter Mode. The operating mode is selected using the TnM1 and TnM0 bits in the PTMnC1 register.

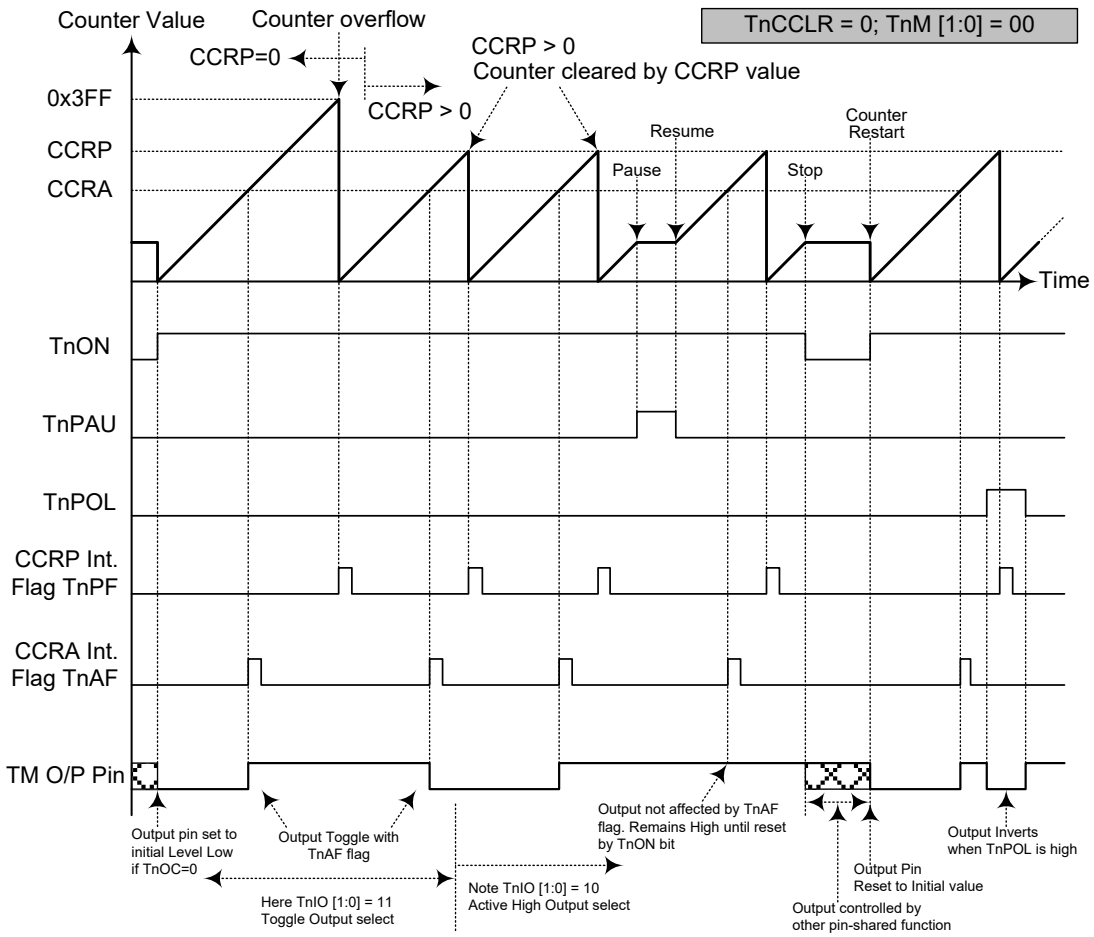
Compare Match Output Mode

To select this mode, bits TnM1 and TnM0 in the PTMnC1 register, should be all cleared to 00 respectively. In this mode once the counter is enabled and running it can be cleared by three methods. These are a counter overflow, a compare match from Comparator A and a compare match from Comparator P. When the TnCCLR bit is low, there are two ways in which the counter can be cleared. One is when a compare match occurs from Comparator P, the other is when the CCRP bits are all zero which allows the counter to overflow. Here both the TnAF and TnPF interrupt request flags for Comparator A and Comparator P respectively, will both be generated.

If the TnCCLR bit in the PTMnC1 register is high then the counter will be cleared when a compare match occurs from Comparator A. However, here only the TnAF interrupt request flag will be generated even if the value of the CCRP bits is less than that of the CCRA registers. Therefore when TnCCLR is high no TnPF interrupt request flag will be generated. In the Compare Match Output Mode, the CCRA cannot be cleared to zero.

If the CCRA bits are all zero, the counter will overflow when it reaches its maximum 10-bit, 3FF Hex, value, however here the TnAF interrupt request flag will not be generated.

As the name of the mode suggests, after a comparison is made, the TM output pin, will change state. The TM output pin condition however only changes state when a TnAF interrupt request flag is generated after a compare match occurs from Comparator A. The TnPF interrupt request flag, generated from a compare match from Comparator P, will have no effect on the TM output pin. The way in which the TM output pin changes state are determined by the condition of the TnIO1 and TnIO0 bits in the PTMnC1 register. The TM output pin can be selected using the TnIO1 and TnIO0 bits to go high, to go low or to toggle from its present condition when a compare match occurs from Comparator A. The initial condition of the TM output pin, which is setup after the TnON bit changes from low to high, is setup using the TnOC bit. Note that if the TnIO1, TnIO0 bits are zero then no pin change will take place.

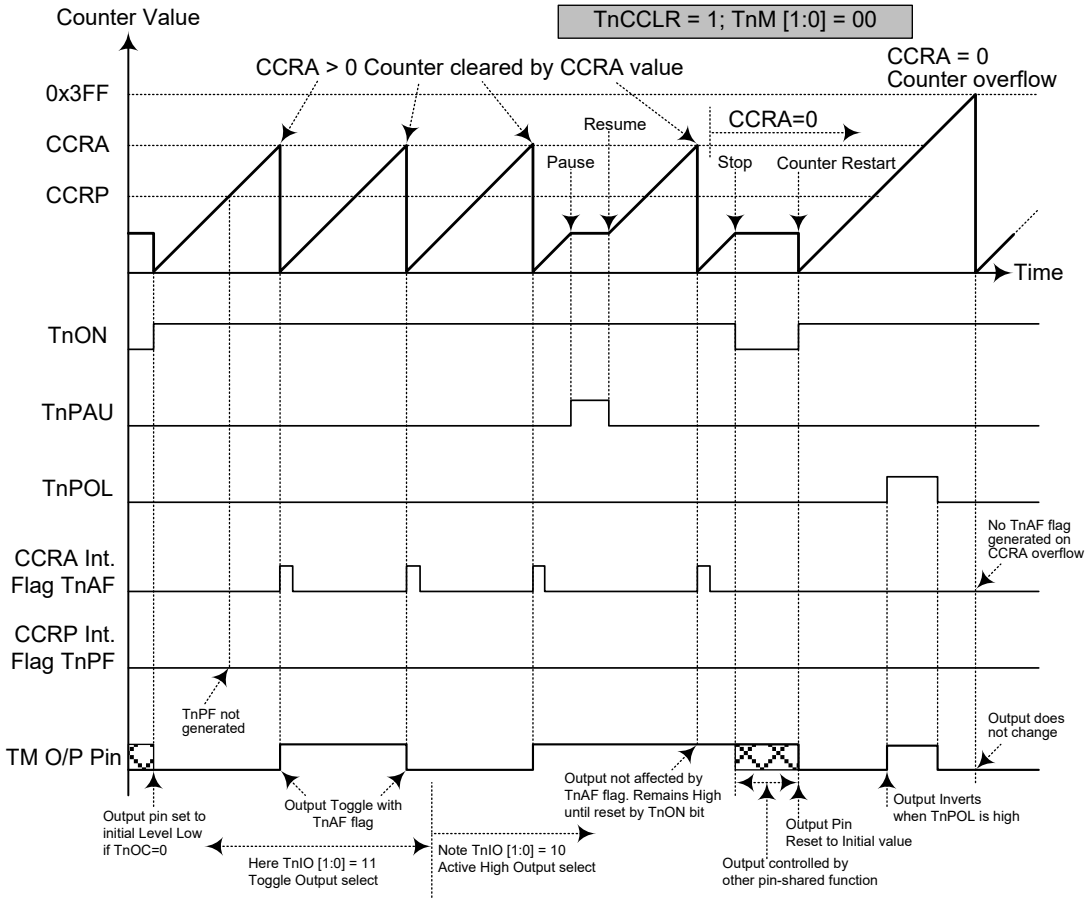


Compare Match Output Mode – TnCCLR = 0 (n=1 or 2)

Note: 1. With TnCCLR = 0 – a Comparator P match will clear the counter

2. The TM output pin is controlled only by the TnAF flag

3. The output pin is reset to initial state by a TnON bit rising edge



Compare Match Output Mode – TnCCLR = 1 (n=1 or 2)

Note: 1. With TnCCLR = 1 – a Comparator A match will clear the counter
2. The TM output pin is controlled only by the TnAF flag
3. The output pin is reset to initial state by a TnON rising edge
4. The TnPF flag is not generated when TnCCLR = 1

Timer/Counter Mode

To select this mode, bits TnM1 and TnM0 in the PTMnC1 register should all be set to 11 respectively. The Timer/Counter Mode operates in an identical way to the Compare Match Output Mode generating the same interrupt flags. The exception is that in the Timer/Counter Mode the TM output pin is not used. Therefore the above description and Timing Diagrams for the Compare Match Output Mode can be used to understand its function. As the TM output pin is not used in this mode, the pin can be used as a normal I/O pin or other pin-shared function.

PWM Output Mode

To select this mode, bits TnM1 and TnM0 in the PTMnC1 register should be set to 10 respectively and also the TnIO1 and TnIO0 bits should be set to 10 respectively. The PWM function within the TM is useful for applications which require functions such as motor control, heating control, illumination control etc. By providing a signal of fixed frequency but of varying duty cycle on the TM output pin, a square wave AC waveform can be generated with varying equivalent DC RMS values.

As both the period and duty cycle of the PWM waveform can be controlled, the choice of generated waveform is extremely flexible. In the PWM Output Mode, the TnCCLR bit has no effect as the PWM period. Both of the CCRP and CCRA registers are used to generate the PWM waveform, one register is used to clear the internal counter and thus control the PWM waveform frequency, while the other one is used to control the duty cycle. The PWM waveform frequency and duty cycle can therefore be controlled by the values in the CCRA and CCRP registers.

An interrupt flag, one for each of the CCRA and CCRP, will be generated when a compare match occurs from either Comparator A or Comparator P. The TnOC bit in the PTMnC1 register is used to select the required polarity of the PWM waveform while the two TnIO1 and TnIO0 bits are used to enable the PWM output or to force the TM output pin to a fixed high or low level. The TnPOL bit is used to reverse the polarity of the PWM output waveform.

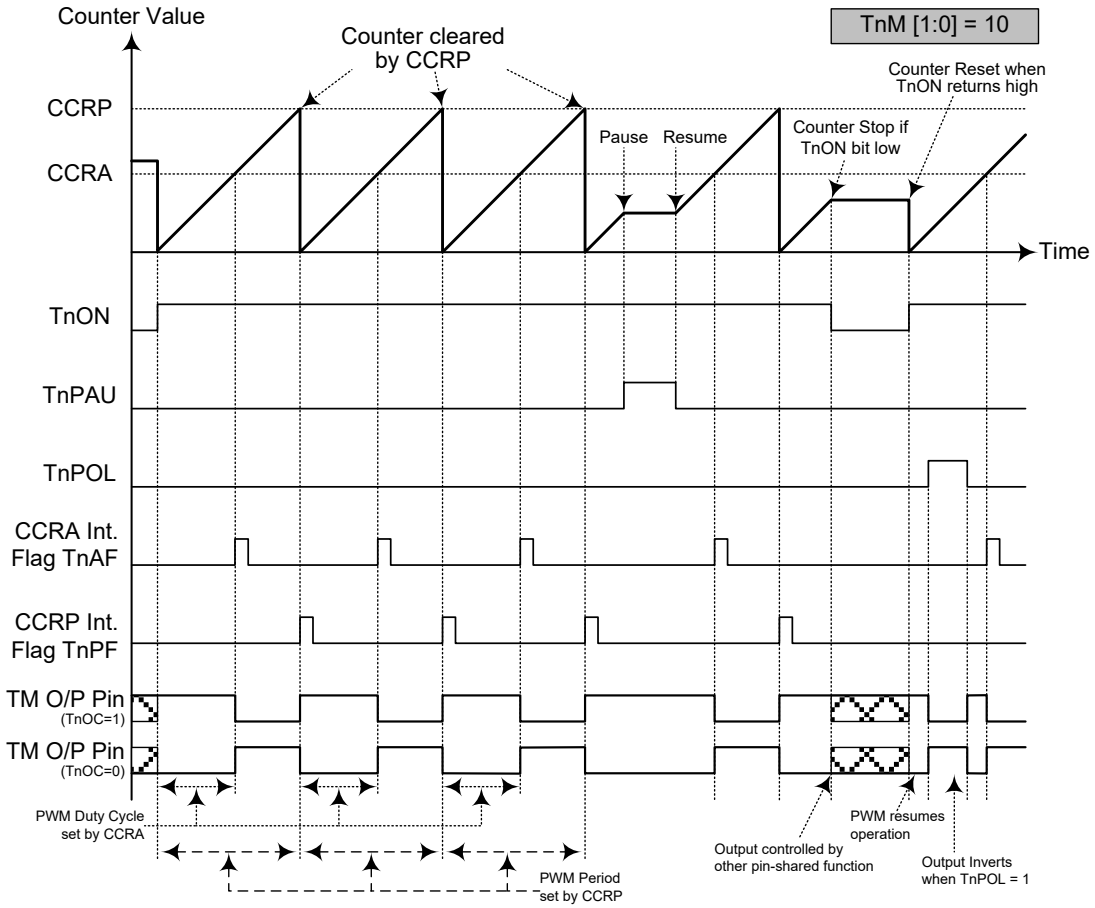
10-bit PTM, PWM Output Mode

CCRP	0	1~1023
Period	1024	1~1023
Duty	CCRA	

If f_{SYS} = 16MHz, TM clock source select $f_{SYS}/4$, CCRP = 512 and CCRA = 128,

The PTM PWM output frequency = ($f_{SYS}/4$) / 512 = $f_{SYS}/2048$ =7.8125kHz, duty = 128/512 = 25%,

If the Duty value defined by the CCRA register is equal to or greater than the Period value, then the PWM output duty is 100%.



PWM Output Mode (n=1 or 2)

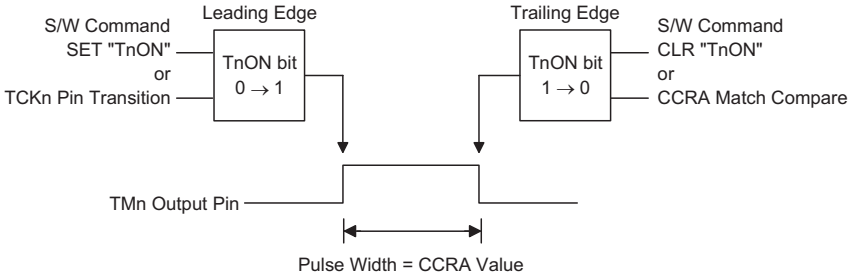
Note: 1. Here Counter cleared by CCRP
2. A counter clear sets the PWM Period
3. The internal PWM function continues running even when TnIO[1:0] = 00 or 01
4. The TnCCLR bit has no influence on PWM operation

Single Pulse Output Mode

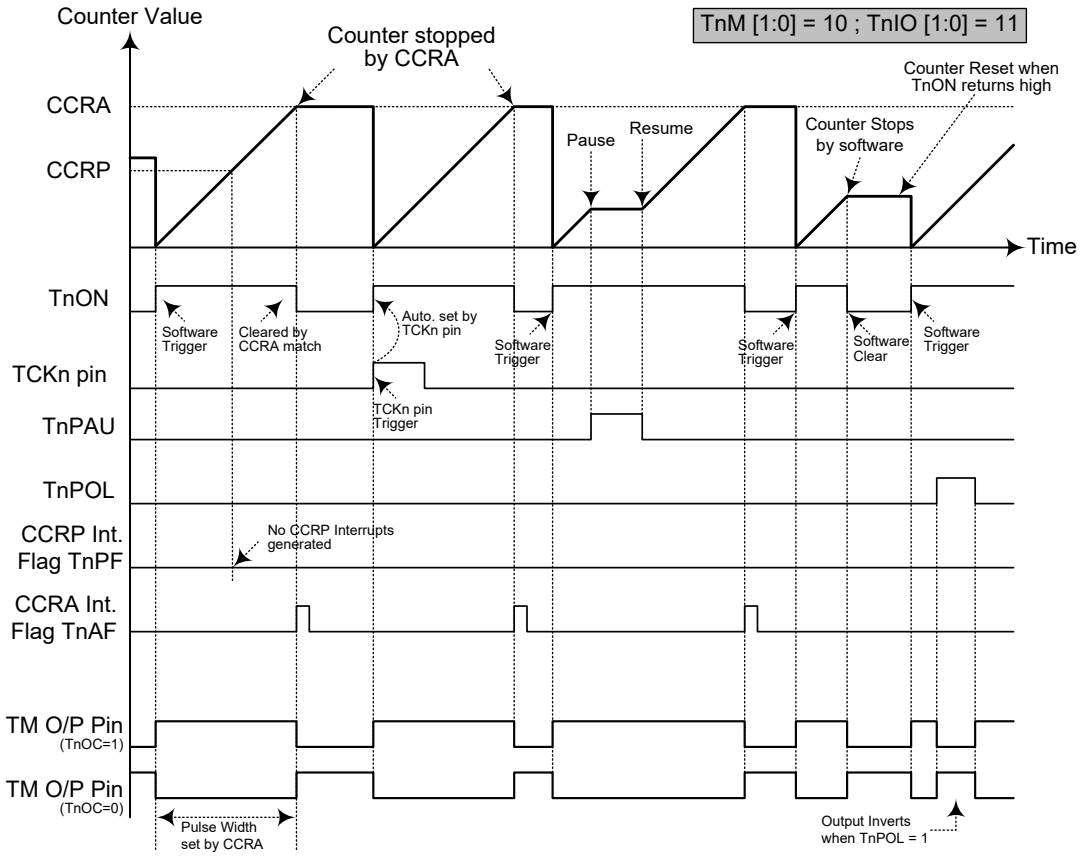
To select this mode, the required bit pairs, TnM1 and TnM0 should be set to 10 respectively and also the corresponding TnIO1 and TnIO0 bits should be set to 11 respectively. The Single Pulse Output Mode, as the name suggests, will generate a single shot pulse on the TM output pin.

The trigger for the pulse output leading edge is a low to high transition of the TnON bit, which can be implemented using the application program. However in the Single Pulse Mode, the TnON bit can also be made to automatically change from low to high using the external TCKn pin, which will in turn initiate the Single Pulse output. When the TnON bit transitions to a high level, the counter will start running and the pulse leading edge will be generated. The TnON bit should remain high when the pulse is in its active state. The generated pulse trailing edge will be generated when the TnON bit is cleared to zero, which can be implemented using the application program or when a compare match occurs from Comparator A.

However a compare match from Comparator A will also automatically clear the TnON bit and thus generate the Single Pulse output trailing edge. In this way the CCRA value can be used to control the pulse width. A compare match from Comparator A will also generate TM interrupts. The counter can only be reset back to zero when the TnON bit changes from low to high when the counter restarts. In the Single Pulse Mode CCRP is not used. The TnCCLR bit is also not used.



Single Pulse Generation (n=1 or 2)



Single Pulse Mode (n=1 or 2)

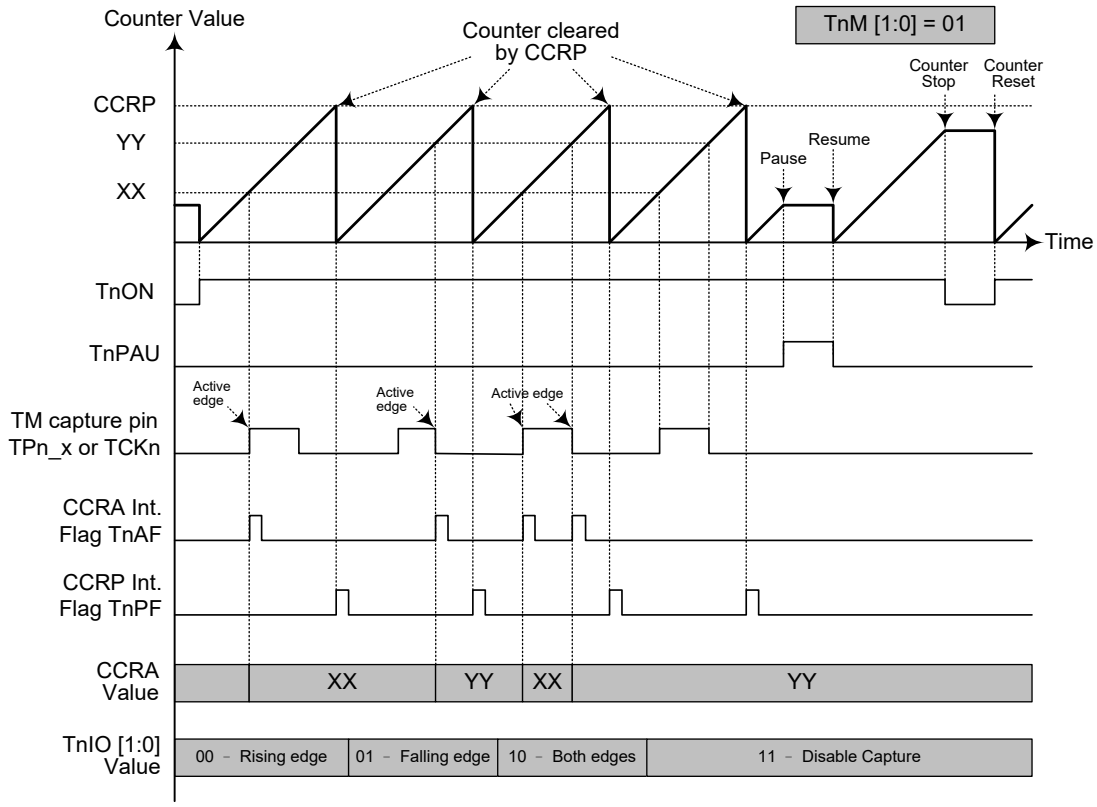
Note: 1. Counter stopped by CCRA
2. CCRP is not used
3. The pulse is triggered by the TCKn pin or by setting the TnON bit high
4. A TCKn pin active edge will automatically set the TnON bit high
5. In the Single Pulse Mode, TnIO [1:0] must be set to "11" and cannot be changed.

Capture Input Mode

To select this mode bits TnM1 and TnM0 in the PTMnC1 register should be set to 01 respectively. This mode enables external signals to capture and store the present value of the internal counter and can therefore be used for applications such as pulse width measurements. The external signal is supplied on the TPn_0, TPn_1 or TCKn pin, selected by the TnCKS bit in the PTMnC1 register. The input pin active edge can be either a rising edge, a falling edge or both rising and falling edges; the active edge transition type is selected using the TnIO1 and TnIO0 bits in the PTMnC1 register. The counter is started when the TnON bit changes from low to high which is initiated using the application program.

When the required edge transition appears on the TPn_0, TPn_1 or TCKn pin the present value in the counter will be latched into the CCRA register and a TM interrupt generated. Irrespective of what events occur on the TPn_0, TPn_1 or TCKn pin the counter will continue to free run until the TnON bit changes from high to low. When a CCRP compare match occurs the counter will reset back to zero; in this way the CCRP value can be used to control the maximum counter value. When a CCRP compare match occurs from Comparator P, a TM interrupt will also be generated. Counting the number of overflow interrupt signals from the CCRP can be a useful method in measuring long pulse widths. The TnIO1 and TnIO0 bits can select the active trigger edge on the TPn_0, TPn_1 or TCKn pin to be a rising edge, falling edge or both edge types. If the TnIO1 and TnIO0 bits are both set high, then no capture operation will take place irrespective of what happens on the TPn_0, TPn_1 or TCKn pin, however it must be noted that the counter will continue to run.

As the TPn_0, TPn_1 or TCKn pin is pin shared with other functions, care must be taken if the TMn is in the Capture Input Mode. This is because if the pin is setup as an output, then any transitions on this pin may cause an input capture operation to be executed. The TnCCLR, TnOC and TnPOL bits are not used in this Mode.



Capture Input Mode (n=1 or 2)

Note: 1. TnM[1:0] = 01 and active edge set by the TnIO[1:0] bits
2. A TM Capture input pin active edge transfers counter value to CCRA
3. The TnCCLR bit is not used
4. No output function – TnOC and TnPOL bits are not used
5. CCRP determines the counter value and the counter has a maximum count value when CCRP is equal to zero

Standard Type TM – STM (TM3)

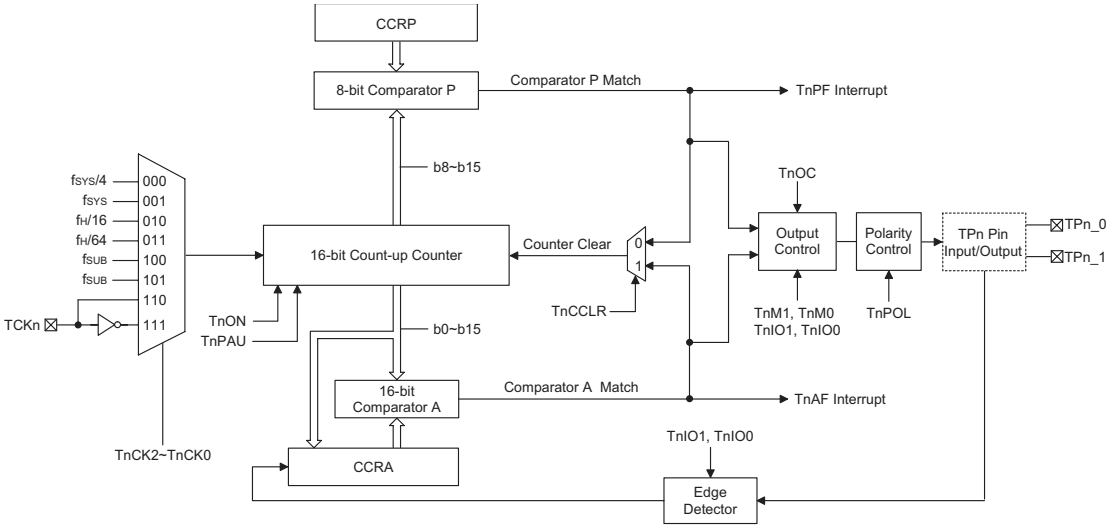
The Standard Type TM contains five operating modes, which are Compare Match Output, Timer/ Event Counter, Capture Input, Single Pulse Output and PWM Output modes. The Standard TM can also be controlled with an external input pin and can drive two external output pins.

Name	TM No.	TM Input Pin	TM Output Pin
16-bit STM	3	TCK3	TP3_0, TP3_1

Standard TM Operation

There is a 16-bit wide STM. At the core is a 16-bit count-up counter which is driven by a user selectable internal or external clock source. There are also two internal comparators with the names, Comparator A and Comparator P. These comparators will compare the value in the counter with CCRP and CCRA registers. The CCRP comparator is 8-bit wide whose value is compared with the highest 8 bits in the counter while the CCRA is the 16 bits and therefore compares all counter bits.

The only way of changing the value of the 16-bit counter using the application program, is to clear the counter by changing the TnON bit from low to high. The counter will also be cleared automatically by a counter overflow or a compare match with one of its associated comparators. When these conditions occur, a TM interrupt signal will also usually be generated. The Standard Type TM can operate in a number of different operational modes, can be driven by different clock sources including an input pin and can also control the output pin. All operating setup conditions are selected using relevant internal registers.



Standard Type TM Block Diagram (n=3)

Standard Type TM Register Description

Overall operation of the Standard TM is controlled using a series of registers. A read only register pair exists to store the internal counter 16-bit value, while a read/write register pair exists to store the internal 16-bit CCRA value. There is also a read/write register used to store the internal 8-bit CCRP value. The remaining two registers are control registers which setup the different operating and control modes.

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
STMnC0	TnPAU	TnCK2	TnCK1	TnCK0	TnON	—	—	—
STMnC1	TnM1	TnM0	TnIO1	TnIO0	TnOC	TnPOL	TnDPX	TnCCLR
STMnDL	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
STMnDH	D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8
STMnAL	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
STMnAH	D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8
STMnRP	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0

16-bit Standard TM Register List (n=3)

- **STMnC0 Register (n=3)**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	TnPAU	TnCK2	TnCK1	TnCK0	TnON	—	—	—
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	—	—	—
POR	0	0	0	0	0	—	—	—

Bit 7 **TnPAU**: TMn Counter Pause Control
0: Run
1: Pause

The counter can be paused by setting this bit high. Clearing the bit to zero restores normal counter operation. When in a Pause condition the TM will remain powered up and continue to consume power. The counter will retain its residual value when this bit changes from low to high and resume counting from this value when the bit changes to a low value again.

Bit 6~4 **TnCK2~TnCK0**: Select TMn Counter clock
000: $f_{SYS}/4$
001: f_{SYS}
010: $f_H/16$
011: $f_H/64$
100: f_{SUB}
101: f_{SUB}
110: TCKn rising edge clock
111: TCKn falling edge clock

These three bits are used to select the clock source for the TM. The external pin clock source can be chosen to be active on the rising or falling edge. The clock source f_{SYS} is the system clock, while f_H and f_{SUB} are other internal clocks, the details of which can be found in the oscillator section.

Bit 3 **TnON**: TMn Counter On/Off Control
0: Off
1: On

This bit controls the overall on/off function of the TM. Setting the bit high enables the counter to run, clearing the bit disables the TM. Clearing this bit to zero will stop the counter from counting and turn off the TM which will reduce its power consumption. When the bit changes state from low to high the internal counter value will be reset to zero, however when the bit changes from high to low, the internal counter will retain its residual value. If the TM is in the Compare Match Output Mode or the PWM output Mode or Single Pulse Output Mode then the TM output pin will be reset to its initial condition, as specified by the TnOC bit, when the TnON bit changes from low to high.

Bit 2~0 Unimplemented, read as "0"

• **STMnC1 Register (n=3)**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	TnM1	TnM0	TnIO1	TnIO0	TnOC	TnPOL	TnDPX	TnCCLR
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~6 **TnM1~TnM0**: Select TMn Operating Mode
00: Compare Match Output Mode
01: Capture Input Mode
10: PWM Output Mode or Single Pulse Output Mode
11: Timer/Counter Mode

These bits setup the required operating mode for the TM. To ensure reliable operation the TM should be switched off before any changes are made to the TnM1 and TnM0 bits. In the Timer/Counter Mode, the TM output pin state is undefined.

Bit 5~4 **TnIO1~TnIO0**: Select TPn_0 or TPn_1 output function

Compare Match Output Mode
00: No change
01: Output low
10: Output high
11: Toggle output

PWM Output Mode/Single Pulse Output Mode
00: PWM Output inactive state
01: PWM Output active state
10: PWM output
11: Single pulse output

Capture Input Mode
00: Input capture at rising edge of TPn_0 or TPn_1
01: Input capture at falling edge of TPn_0 or TPn_1
10: Input capture at falling/rising edge of TPn_0 or TPn_1
11: Input capture disabled

Timer/Counter Mode
Unused

These two bits are used to determine how the TM output pin changes state when a certain condition is reached. The function that these bits select depends upon in which mode the TM is running.

In the Compare Match Output Mode, the TnIO1 and TnIO0 bits determine how the TM output pin changes state when a compare match occurs from the Comparator A. The TM output pin can be setup to switch high, switch low or to toggle its present state when a compare match occurs from the Comparator A. When the bits are both zero, then no change will take place on the output. The initial value of the TM output pin should be setup using the TnOC bit in the STMnC1 register. Note that the output level requested by the TnIO1 and TnIO0 bits must be different from the initial value setup using the TnOC bit otherwise no change will occur on the TM output pin when a compare match occurs. After the TM output pin changes state, it can be reset to its initial level by changing the level of the TnON bit from low to high.

In the PWM Output Mode, the TnIO1 and TnIO0 bits determine how the TM output pin changes state when a certain compare match condition occurs. The PWM output function is modified by changing these two bits. It is necessary to only change the values of the TnIO1 and TnIO0 bits only after the TM has been switched off. Unpredictable PWM outputs will occur if the TnIO1 and TnIO0 bits are changed when the TM is running.

Bit 3 **TnOC**: TPn_0 or TPn_1 Output control bit

Compare Match Output Mode
0: Initial low
1: Initial high

PWM Output Mode/Single Pulse Output Mode
0: Active low
1: Active high

This is the output control bit for the TM output pin. Its operation depends upon whether TM is being used in the Compare Match Output Mode or in the PWM Output Mode/ Single Pulse Output Mode. It has no effect if the TM is in the Timer/Counter Mode. In the Compare Match Output Mode it determines the logic level of the TM output pin before a compare match occurs. In the PWM Output Mode it determines if the PWM signal is active high or active low.

Bit 2 **TnPOL**: TPn_0 or TPn_1 Output polarity Control
0: Non-invert
1: Invert

This bit controls the polarity of the TPn_0 or TPn_1 output pin. When the bit is set high the TM output pin will be inverted and not inverted when the bit is zero. It has no effect if the TM is in the Timer/Counter Mode.

Bit 1 **TnDPX**: TMn PWM period/duty Control
0: CCRP - period; CCRA - duty
1: CCRP - duty; CCRA - period

This bit, determines which of the CCRA and CCRP registers are used for period and duty control of the PWM waveform.

Bit 0 **TnCCLR**: Select TMn Counter clear condition
0: TMn Comparator P match
1: TMn Comparator A match

This bit is used to select the method which clears the counter. Remember that the Compact TM contains two comparators, Comparator A and Comparator P, either of which can be selected to clear the internal counter. With the TnCCLR bit set high, the counter will be cleared when a compare match occurs from the Comparator A. When the bit is low, the counter will be cleared when a compare match occurs from the Comparator P or with a counter overflow. A counter overflow clearing method can only be implemented if the CCRP bits are all cleared to zero. The TnCCLR bit is not used in the PWM Output Mode, Single Pulse or Input Capture Mode.

• STMnDL Register (n=3)

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 **D7~D0**: TMn Counter Low Byte Register bit 7 ~ bit 0
TMn 16-bit Counter bit 7 ~ bit 0

• STMnDH Register (n=3)

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8
R/W	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 **D15~D8**: TMn Counter High Byte Register bit 7 ~ bit 0
TMn 16-bit Counter bit 15 ~ bit 8

• **STMnAL Register (n=3)**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 **D7~D0**: TMn CCRA Low Byte Register bit 7 ~ bit 0
TMn 16-bit CCRA bit 7 ~ bit 0

• **STMnAH Register (n=3)**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 **D15~D8**: TMn CCRA High Byte Register bit 7 ~ bit 0
TMn 16-bit CCRA bit 15 ~ bit 8

• **STMnRP Register (n=3)**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 **D7~D0**: TMn CCRP Register bit 7 ~ bit 0, compared with the TMn Counter bit 15 ~ bit 8.
Comparator P Match Period
0: 65536 TMn clocks
1~255: 256×(1~255) TMn clocks
These eight bits are used to setup the value on the internal CCRP 8-bit register, which are then compared with the internal counter's highest eight bits. The result of this comparison can be selected to clear the internal counter if the TnCCLR bit is set to zero. Setting the TnCCLR bit to zero ensures that a compare match with the CCRP values will reset the internal counter. As the CCRP bits are only compared with the highest eight counter bits, the compare values exist in 256 clock cycle multiples. Clearing all eight bits to zero is in effect allowing the counter to overflow at its maximum value.

Standard Type TM Operating Modes

The Standard Type TM can operate in one of five operating modes, Compare Match Output Mode, PWM Output Mode, Single Pulse Output Mode, Capture Input Mode or Timer/Counter Mode. The operating mode is selected using the TnM1 and TnM0 bits in the STMnC1 register.

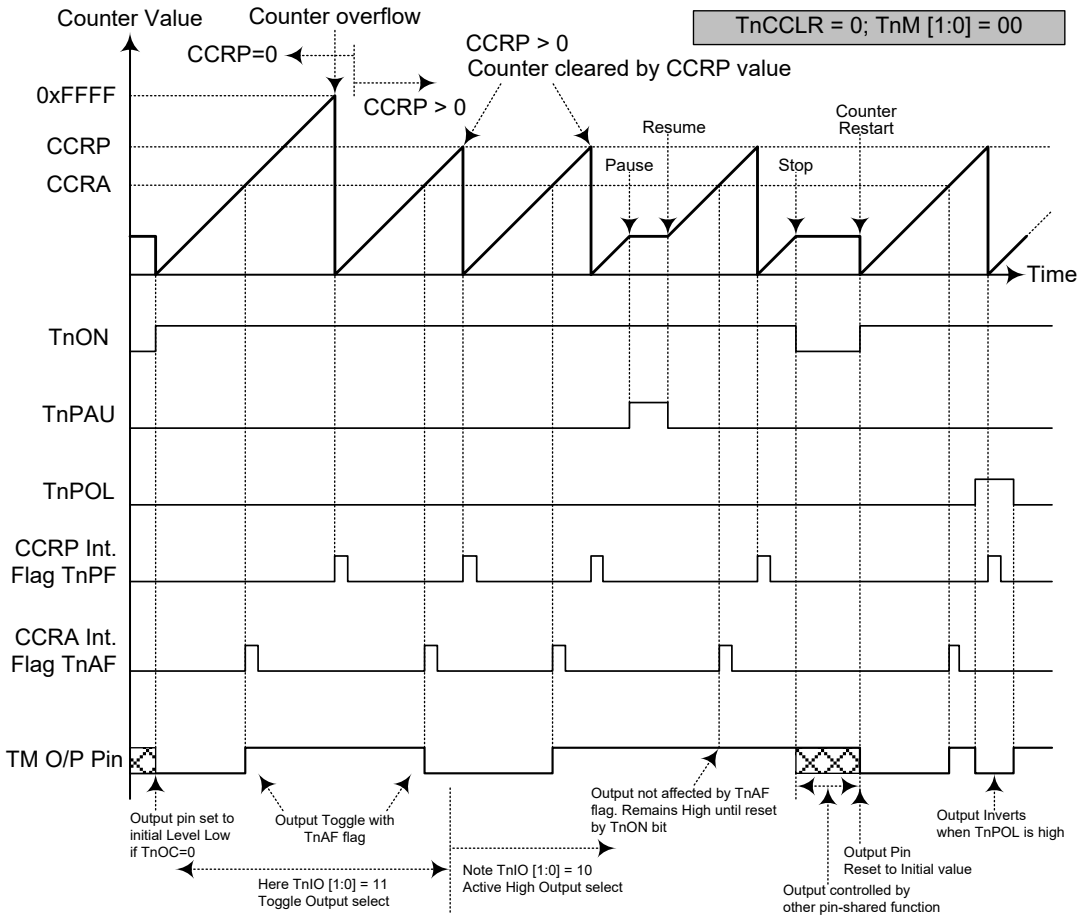
Compare Match Output Mode

To select this mode, bits TnM1 and TnM0 in the STMnC1 register, should be set to 00 respectively. In this mode once the counter is enabled and running it can be cleared by three methods. These are a counter overflow, a compare match from Comparator A and a compare match from Comparator P. When the TnCCLR bit is low, there are two ways in which the counter can be cleared. One is when a compare match from Comparator P, the other is when the CCRP bits are all zero which allows the counter to overflow. Here both TnAF and TnPF interrupt request flags for Comparator A and Comparator P respectively, will both be generated.

If the TnCCLR bit in the STMnC1 register is high then the counter will be cleared when a compare match occurs from Comparator A. However, here only the TnAF interrupt request flag will be generated even if the value of the CCRP bits is less than that of the CCRA registers. Therefore when TnCCLR is high no TnPF interrupt request flag will be generated. In the Compare Match Output Mode, the CCRA cannot be set to "0".

If the CCRA bits are all zero, the counter will overflow when it reaches its maximum 16-bit, FFFF Hex, value, however here the TnAF interrupt request flag will not be generated.

As the name of the mode suggests, after a comparison is made, the TM output pin, will change state. The TM output pin condition however only changes state when a TnAF interrupt request flag is generated after a compare match occurs from Comparator A. The TnPF interrupt request flag, generated from a compare match occurs from Comparator P, will have no effect on the TM output pin. The way in which the TM output pin changes state are determined by the condition of the TnIO1 and TnIO0 bits in the STMnC1 register. The TM output pin can be selected using the TnIO1 and TnIO0 bits to go high, to go low or to toggle from its present condition when a compare match occurs from Comparator A. The initial condition of the TM output pin, which is setup after the TnON bit changes from low to high, is setup using the TnOC bit. Note that if the TnIO1 and TnIO0 bits are zero then no pin change will take place.

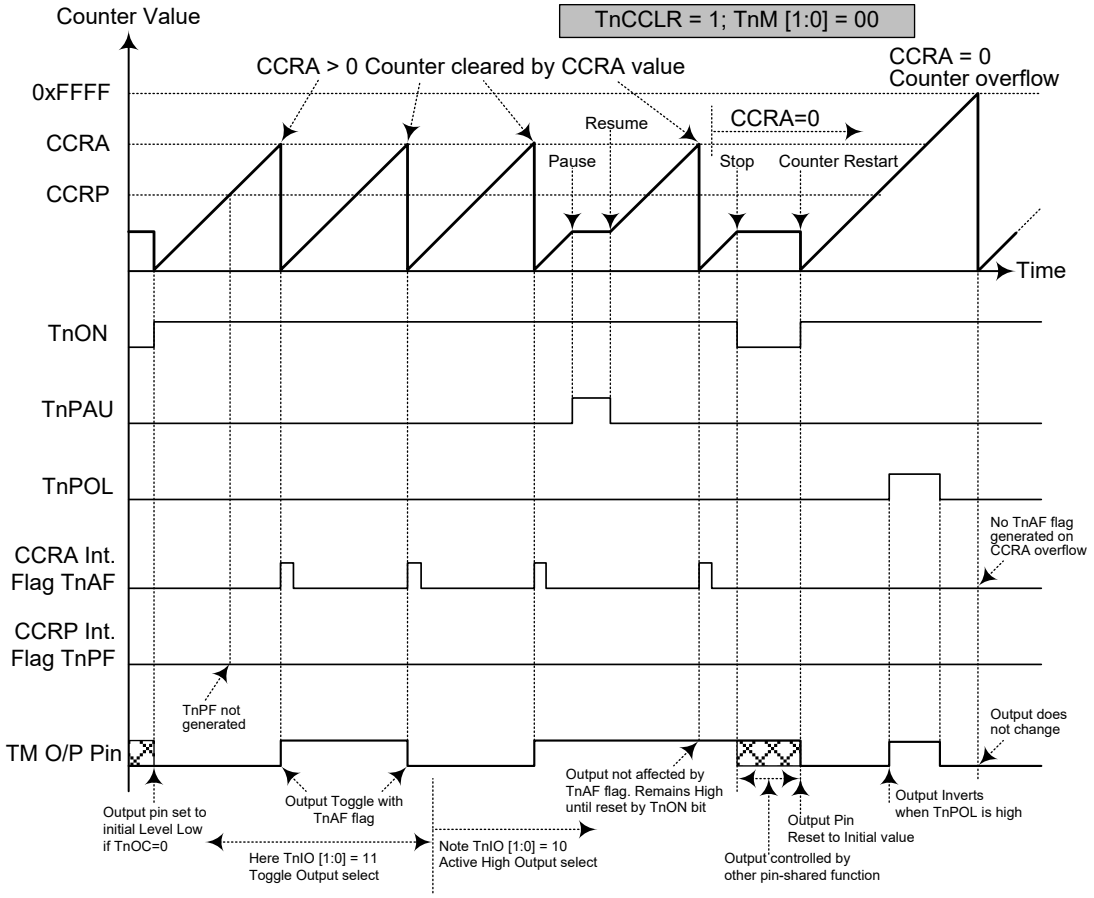


Compare Match Output Mode – TnCCLR = 0 (n=3)

Note: 1. With TnCCLR=0 a Comparator P match will clear the counter

2. The TM output pin is controlled only by the TnAF flag

3. The output pin is reset to its initial state by a TnON bit rising edge



Compare Match Output Mode – TnCCLR = 1 (n=3)

Note: 1. With TnCCLR=1 a Comparator A match will clear the counter
2. The TM output pin is controlled only by the TnAF flag
3. The output pin is reset to its initial state by a TnON bit rising edge
4. A TnPF flag is not generated when TnCCLR=1

Timer/Counter Mode

To select this mode, bits TnM1 and TnM0 in the STMnC1 register should be set to 11 respectively. The Timer/Counter Mode operates in an identical way to the Compare Match Output Mode generating the same interrupt flags. The exception is that in the Timer/Counter Mode the TM output pin is not used. Therefore the above description and Timing Diagrams for the Compare Match Output Mode can be used to understand its function. As the TM output pin is not used in this mode, the pin can be used as a normal I/O pin or other pin-shared function.

PWM Output Mode

To select this mode, bits TnM1 and TnM0 in the STMnC1 register should be set to 10 respectively and also the TnIO1 and TnIO0 bits should be set to 10 respectively. The PWM function within the TM is useful for applications which require functions such as motor control, heating control, illumination control etc. By providing a signal of fixed frequency but of varying duty cycle on the TM output pin, a square wave AC waveform can be generated with varying equivalent DC RMS values.

As both the period and duty cycle of the PWM waveform can be controlled, the choice of generated waveform is extremely flexible. In the PWM Output Mode, the TnCCLR bit has no effect as the PWM period. Both of the CCRA and CCRP registers are used to generate the PWM waveform, one register is used to clear the internal counter and thus control the PWM waveform frequency, while the other one is used to control the duty cycle. Which register is used to control either frequency or duty cycle is determined using the TnDPX bit in the STMnC1 register. The PWM waveform frequency and duty cycle can therefore be controlled by the values in the CCRA and CCRP registers.

An interrupt flag, one for each of the CCRA and CCRP, will be generated when a compare match occurs from either Comparator A or Comparator P. The TnOC bit in the STMnC1 register is used to select the required polarity of the PWM waveform while the two TnIO1 and TnIO0 bits are used to enable the PWM output or to force the TM output pin to a fixed high or low level. The TnPOL bit is used to reverse the polarity of the PWM output waveform.

16-bit STM, PWM Output Mode, Edge-aligned Mode, TnDPX=0

CCRP	1~255	0
Period	CCRP×256	65536
Duty	CCRA	

If f_{SYS} = 16MHz, TM clock source select $f_{SYS}/4$, CCRP = 2 and CCRA = 128,

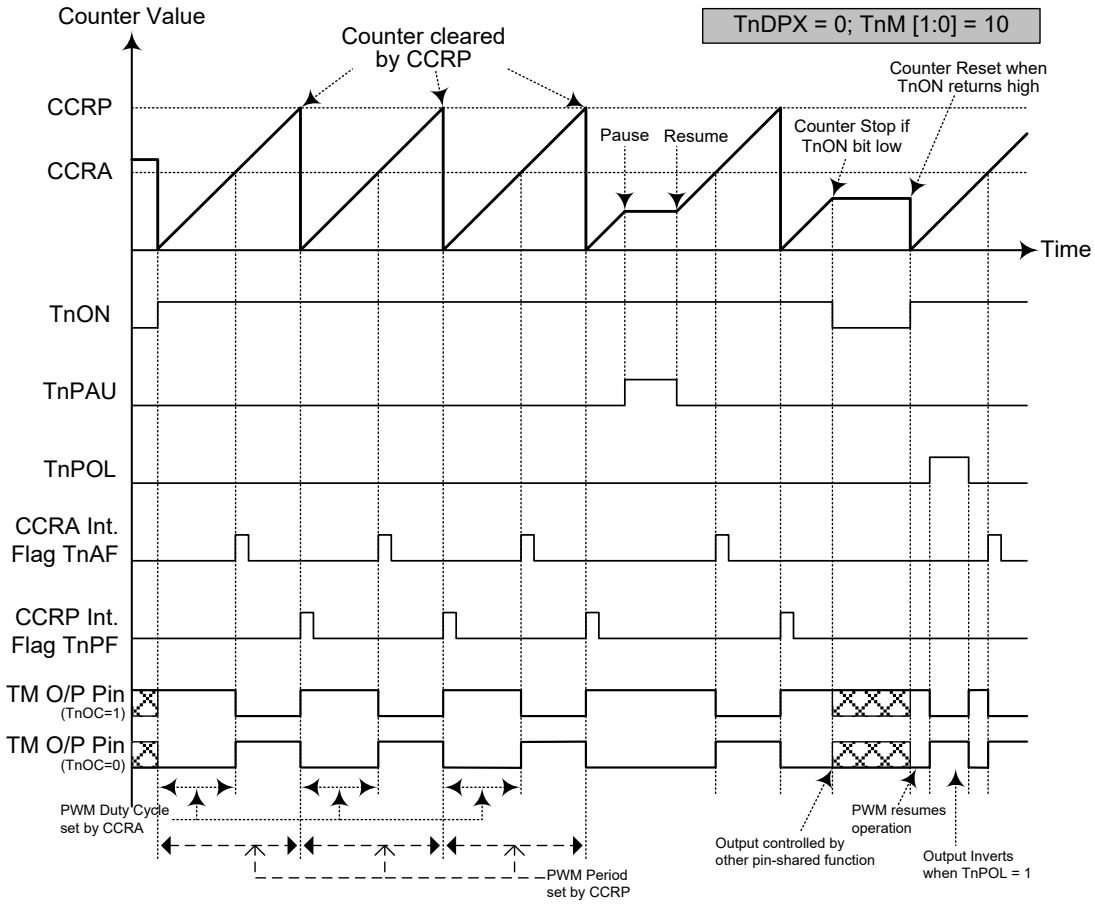
The STM PWM output frequency = $(f_{SYS}/4)/(2\times256) = f_{SYS}/2048$ = 7.8125kHz, duty = 128/(2×256) = 25%.

If the Duty value defined by the CCRA register is equal to or greater than the Period value, then the PWM output duty is 100%.

16-bit STM, PWM Output Mode, Edge-aligned Mode, TnDPX=1

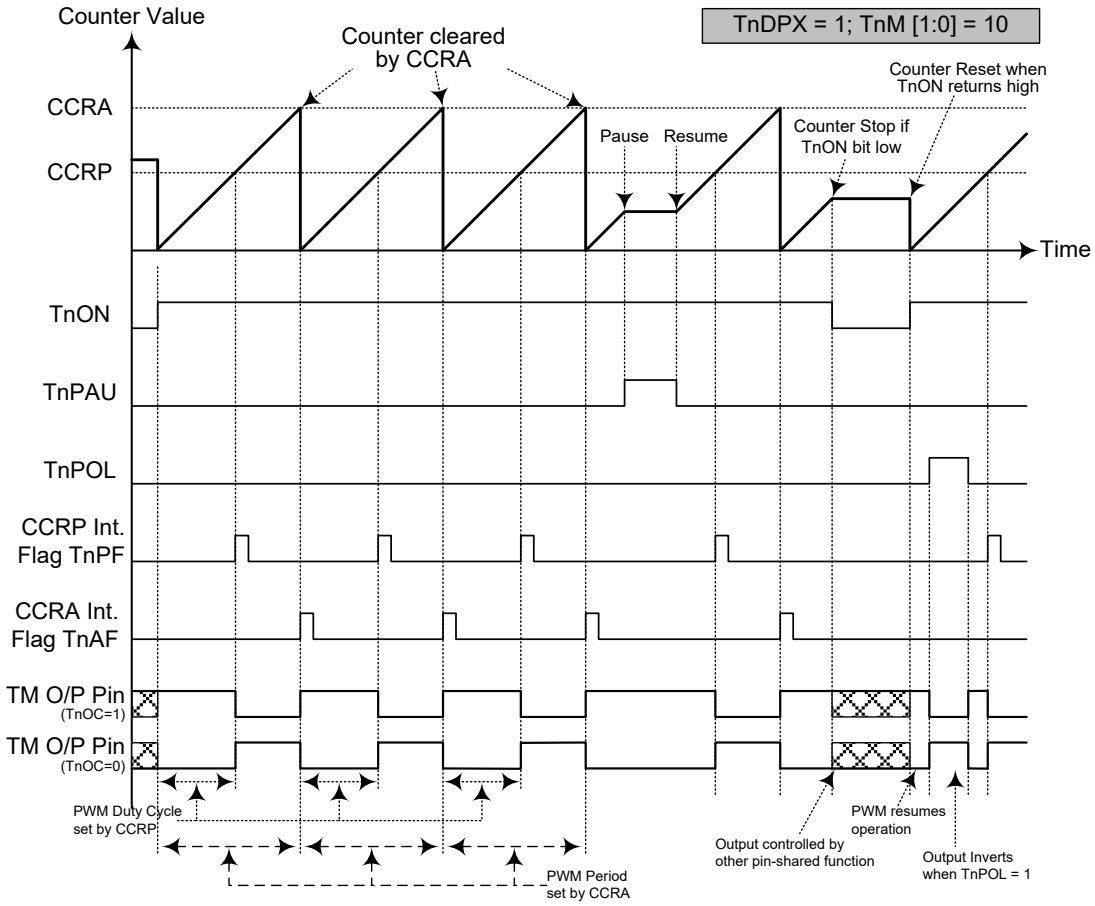
CCRP	1~255	0
Period	CCRA	
Duty	CCRP×256	65536

The PWM output period is determined by the CCRA register value together with the TM clock while the PWM duty cycle is defined by the (CCRP×256) except when the CCRP value is equal to 000b.



PWM Output Mode – TnDPX = 0 (n=3)

Note: 1. Here TnDPX=0 – Counter cleared by CCRP
2. A counter clear sets the PWM Period
3. The internal PWM function continues running even when TnIO [1:0] = 00 or 01
4. The TnCCLR bit has no influence on PWM operation



PWM Output Mode – TnDPX = 1 (n=3)

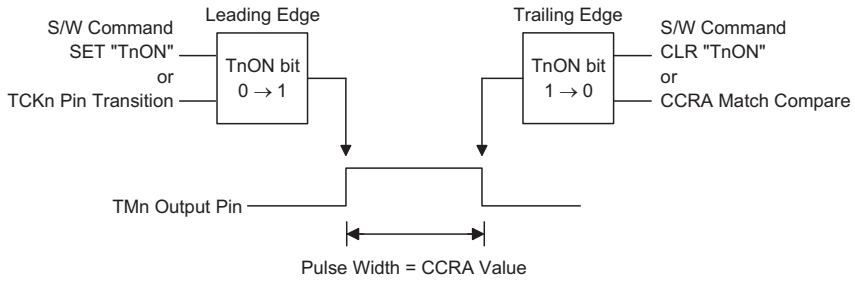
Note: 1. Here TnDPX=1 – Counter cleared by CCRA
2. A counter clear sets the PWM Period
3. The internal PWM function continues even when TnIO [1:0] = 00 or 01
4. The TnCCLR bit has no influence on PWM operation

Single Pulse Mode

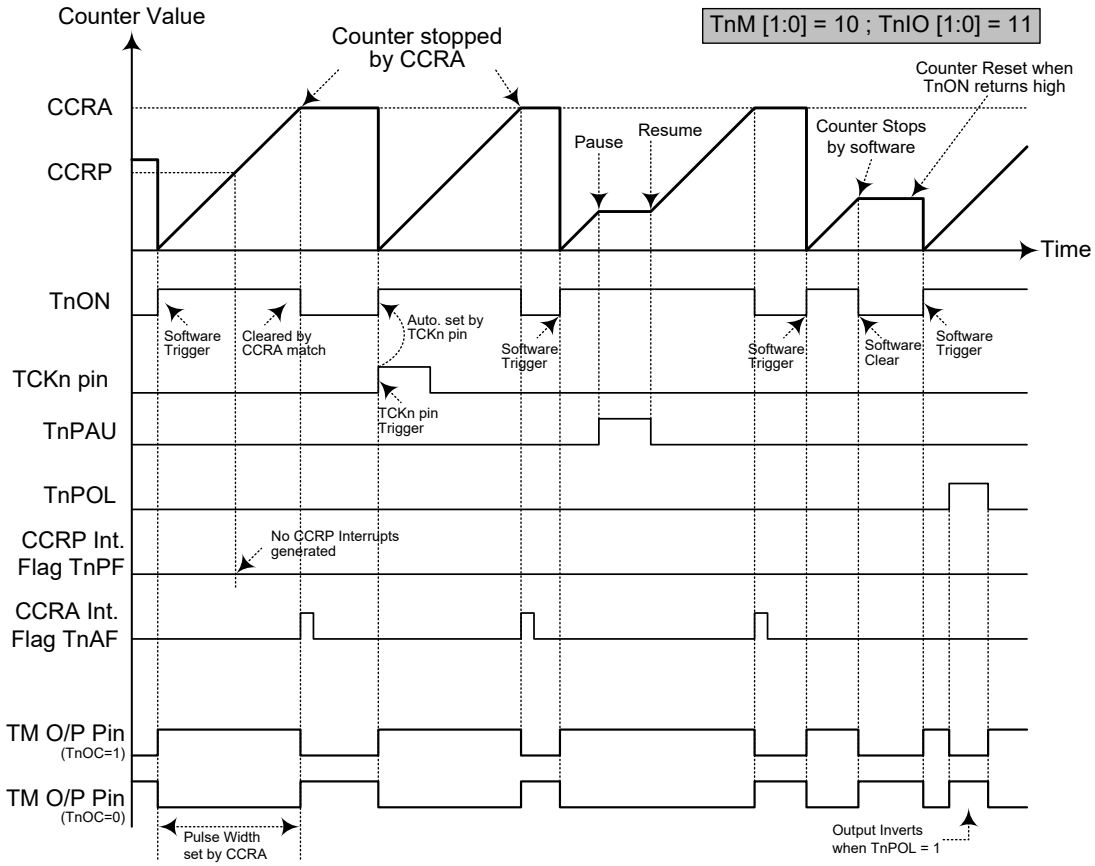
To select this mode, bits TnM1 and TnM0 in the STMnC1 register should be set to 10 respectively and also the TnIO1 and TnIO0 bits should be set to 11 respectively. The Single Pulse Output Mode, as the name suggests, will generate a single shot pulse on the TM output pin.

The trigger for the pulse output leading edge is a low to high transition of the TnON bit, which can be implemented using the application program. However in the Single Pulse Mode, the TnON bit can also be made to automatically change from low to high using the external TCKn pin, which will in turn initiate the Single Pulse output. When the TnON bit transitions to a high level, the counter will start running and the pulse leading edge will be generated. The TnON bit should remain high when the pulse is in its active state. The generated pulse trailing edge will be generated when the TnON bit is cleared to zero, which can be implemented using the application program or when a compare match occurs from Comparator A.

However a compare match from Comparator A will also automatically clear the TnON bit and thus generate the Single Pulse output trailing edge. In this way the CCRA value can be used to control the pulse width. A compare match from Comparator A will also generate a TM interrupt. The counter can only be reset back to zero when the TnON bit changes from low to high when the counter restarts. In the Single Pulse Mode CCRP is not used. The TnCCLR and TnDPX bits are not used in this Mode.



Single Pulse Generation (n=3)



Single Pulse Mode (n=3)

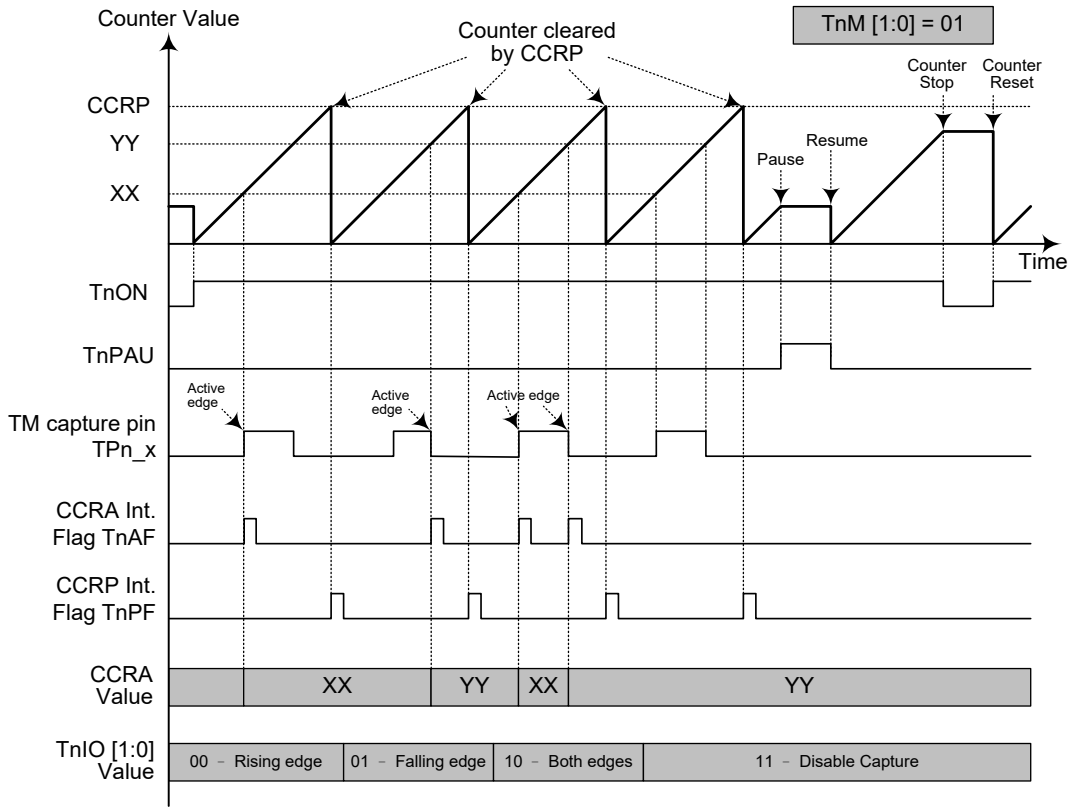
Note: 1. Counter stopped by CCRA
2. CCRP is not used
3. The pulse is triggered by the TCKn pin or by setting the TnON bit high
4. A TCKn pin active edge will automatically set the TnON bit high
5. In the Single Pulse Mode, TnIO [1:0] must be set to "11" and cannot be changed.

Capture Input Mode

To select this mode bits TnM1 and TnM0 in the STMnC1 register should be set to 01 respectively. This mode enables external signals to capture and store the present value of the internal counter and can therefore be used for applications such as pulse width measurements. The external signal is supplied on the TPn_0 or TPn_1 pin, whose active edge can be a rising edge, a falling edge or both rising and falling edges; the active edge transition type is selected using the TnIO1 and TnIO0 bits in the STMnC1 register. The counter is started when the TnON bit changes from low to high which is initiated using the application program.

When the required edge transition appears on the TPn_0 or TPn_1 pin the present value in the counter will be latched into the CCRA registers and a TM interrupt generated. Irrespective of what events occur on the TPn_0 or TPn_1 pin the counter will continue to free run until the TnON bit changes from high to low. When a CCRP compare match occurs the counter will reset back to zero; in this way the CCRP value can be used to control the maximum counter value. When a CCRP compare match occurs from Comparator P, a TM interrupt will also be generated. Counting the number of overflow interrupt signals from the CCRP can be a useful method in measuring long pulse widths. The TnIO1 and TnIO0 bits can select the active trigger edge on the TPn_0 or TPn_1 pin to be a rising edge, falling edge or both edge types. If the TnIO1 and TnIO0 bits are both set high, then no capture operation will take place irrespective of what happens on the TPn_0 or TPn_1 pin, however it must be noted that the counter will continue to run.

As the TPn_0 or TPn_1 pin is pin shared with other functions, care must be taken if the TM is in the Input Capture Mode. This is because if the pin is setup as an output, then any transitions on this pin may cause an input capture operation to be executed. The TnCCLR and TnDPX bits are not used in this Mode.



Capture Input Mode (n=3)

Note: 1. TnM [1:0] = 01 and active edge set by the TnIO [1:0] bits

2. A TM Capture input pin active edge transfers the counter value to CCRA

3. TnCCLR bit not used

4. No output function – TnOC and TnPOL bits are not used

5. CCRP determines the counter value and the counter has a maximum count value when CCRP is equal to zero.

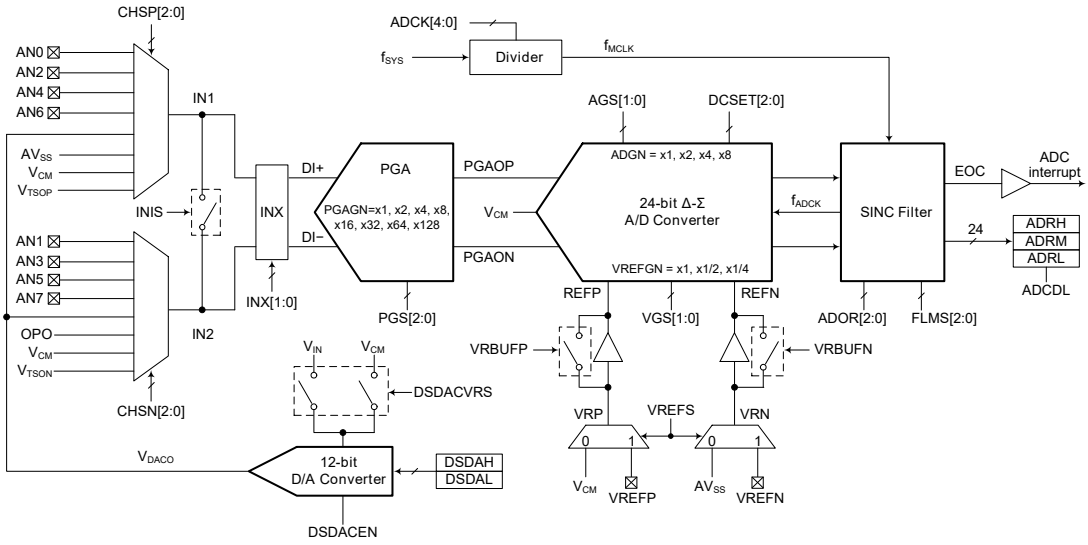
Analog to Digital Converter – ADC

The need to interface to real world analog signals is a common requirement for many electronic systems. However, to properly process these signals by a microcontroller, they must first be converted into digital signals by A/D converters. By integrating the A/D conversion electronic circuitry into the microcontroller, the need for external components is reduced significantly with the corresponding follow-on benefits of lower costs and reduced component space requirements.

A/D Overview

This device contains a high accuracy multi-channel 24-bit Delta Sigma analog-to-digital (Δ-ΣA/D) converter which can directly interface to external analog signals, such as that from sensors or other control signals and convert these signals directly into a 24-bit digital value.

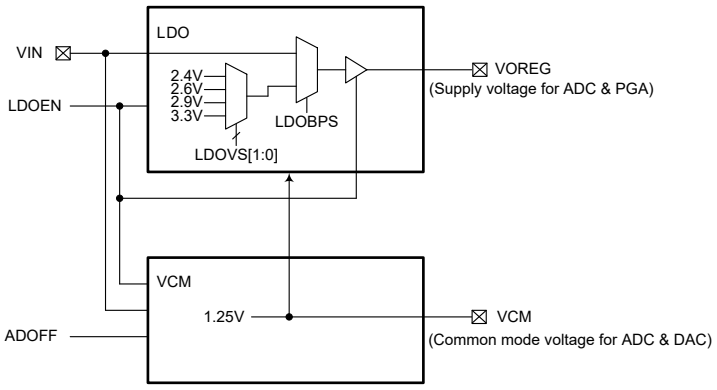
In addition, the PGA gain control, ADC gain control and ADC reference gain control determine the amplification gain for ADC input signal. The designer can select the best gain combination for the desired amplification applied to the input signal. The following block diagram illustrates the ADC basic operational function. The ADC input channel can be arranged as four single-ended A/D input channels and two differential input channels. The input signal can be amplified by PGA before entering the 24-bit Delta Sigma ADC. The Δ-ΣADC modulator will output one bit converted data to SINC filter which can transform the converted one-bit data to 24 bits and store them into the specific data registers. Additionally, this device also provides a temperature sensor to compensate the A/D converter deviation caused by the temperature. With high accuracy and performance, this device is very suitable for the Weight Scale and similarly related products.



A/D Converter Structure

Internal Power Supply

This device contains the LDO and VCM for the regulated power supply. The accompanying block diagram illustrates the basic functional operation. The internal LDO can provide the fixed voltage for PGA, ADC or the external components; as well the VCM can be used as the reference voltage for ADC or DAC module. There are four LDO voltage levels, 2.4V, 2.6V, 2.9V or 3.3V, decided by LDOVS1~LDOVS0 bits in the PWRC register, as well the VCM only has an output voltage level, 1.25V. The LDO and VCM functions can be controlled by the LDOEN and ADOFF bits respectively and can be powered off to reduce the power consumption. If the VCM is disabled, the VCM output pin is floating.



Internal Power Supply Block Diagram

Register Bits		Output Voltage		
ADOFF	LDOEN	Bandgap	VOREG	VCM
1	0	Off	Disable	Disable
1	1	On	Enable	Enable
0	0	On	Disable	Enable
0	1	On	Enable	Enable

Power Control Table

- **PWRC Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	LDOEN	—	—	—	—	LDOBPS	LDOVS1	LDOVS0
R/W	R/W	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	—	—	—	—	0	0	0

Bit 7 **LDOEN**: LDO function control bit
0: Disable
1: Enable
If the LDO is disabled, there will be no power consumption and LDO output will be in a low level by a weakly pull-low resistor.

Bit 6~3 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 2 **LDOBPS**: LDO Bypass function control bit
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 1~0 **LDOVS1~LDOVS0**: LDO output voltage selection
00: 2.4V
01: 2.6V
10: 2.9V
11: 3.3V

A/D Data Rate Definition

The Delta Sigma A/D converter data rate can be calculated using the following equation:

$$\text{Data Rate} = \frac{f_{ADCK}}{CHOP \times OSR} = \frac{f_{MCLK}/N}{CHOP \times OSR} = \frac{f_{MCLK}}{N \times CHOP \times OSR}$$

f_{ADCK}: A/D clock input, derived from f_{MCLK}/N

f_{MCLK}: A/D clock source, derived from f_{SYS} or $f_{SYS}/2/(ADCK+1)$ using the ADCK bit field.

N: a constant divided factor that can be equal to 30 or 12 determined by the FLMS bit field.

CHOP: Sampling data amount doubling function control and can be equal to 2 or 1 determined by the FLMS bit field.

OSR: Oversampling rate determined by the ADOR field.

For example, if a data rate of 10Hz is desired, an f_{MCLK} clock source with a frequency of 4.9152MHz A/D converter can be selected. Then set the FLMS field to "000" to obtain an "N" equal to 30 and "CHOP" equal to 2. Finally, set the ADOR field to "001" to select an oversampling rate equal to 8192. Therefore, the Data Rate = 4.9152MHz / (30 × 2 × 8192) = 10Hz.

Note that the A/D converter has a notch rejection function for an A/C power supply with a frequency of 50Hz or 60Hz when the data rate is equal to 10Hz.

A/D Converter Register Description

Overall operation of the A/D converter is controlled by using a series of registers. Three read only registers exist to store the A/D converter data 24-bit value. A control register named as PWRC is used to control the required bias and supply voltages for PGA and A/D converter and is described in the "Internal Power Supply" section. Three registers are used for overall control of the D/A converter. There are two registers for overall OPA operation. The remaining 6 registers are control registers which set up the gain selections and control functions of the A/D converter.

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
PWRC	LDOEN	—	—	—	—	LDOBPS	LDOVS1	LDOVS0
PGAC0	—	VGS1	VGS0	AGS1	AGS0	PGS2	PGS1	PGS0
PGAC1	—	INIS	INX1	INX0	DCSET2	DCSET1	DCSET0	—
PGACS	—	—	CHSN2	CHSN1	CHSN0	CHSP2	CHSP1	CHSP0
ADRL	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
ADRM	D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8
ADRH	D23	D22	D21	D20	D19	D18	D17	D16
ADCR0	ADRST	ADSLP	ADOFF	ADOR2	ADOR1	ADOR0	—	VREFS
ADCR1	FLMS2	FLMS1	FLMS0	VRBUFN	VRBUFP	ADCDL	EOC	—
ADCS	—	—	—	ADCK4	ADCK3	ADCK2	ADCK1	ADCK0
DSDAH	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4
DSDAL	—	—	—	—	D3	D2	D1	D0
DSDACC	DSDACEN	DSDACVRS	—	—	—	—	—	—
DSOPC	DSOPEN	—	—	—	OPN1	OPN0	OPP1	OPP0

A/D Converter Register List

Programmable Gain Amplifier – PGA

There are three registers related to the programmable gain control, PGAC0, PGAC1 and PGACS. The PGAC0 resister is used to select the PGA gain, ADC gain and the ADC reference gain. As well, the PGAC1 register is used to define the input connection and differential input offset voltage adjustment control. In addition, The PGACS register is used to select the input ends for the PGA. Therefore, the input channels have to be determined by the CHSP2~CHSP0 and CHSN2~CHSN0 bits to determine which analog channel input pins, temperature detector inputs or internal power supply are actually connected to the internal differential A/D converter.

• **PGAC0 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	VGS1	VGS0	AGS1	AGS0	PGS2	PGS1	PGS0
R/W	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 6~5 **VGS1~VGS0**: REFP/REFN differential reference voltage gain selection
00: VREFGN = 1
01: VREFGN = 1/2
10: VREFGN = 1/4
11: Reserved

Bit 4~3 **AGS1~AGS0**: A/D converter PGAOP/PGAON differential input signal gain selection
00: ADGN = 1
01: ADGN = 2
10: ADGN = 4
11: ADGN = 8

Bit 2~0 **PGS2~PGS0**: DI+/DI- differential channel input gain selection
000: PGAGN = 1
001: PGAGN = 2
010: PGAGN = 4
011: PGAGN = 8
100: PGAGN = 16
101: PGAGN = 32
110: PGAGN = 64
111: PGAGN = 128

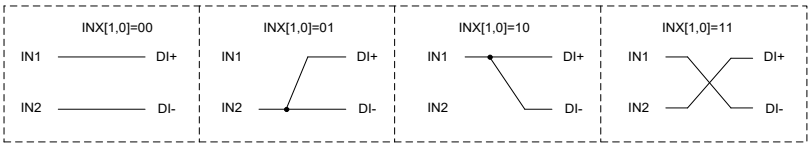
• **PGAC1 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	INIS	INX1	INX0	DCSET2	DCSET1	DCSET0	—
R/W	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	—
POR	—	0	0	0	0	0	0	—

Bit 7 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 6 **INIS**: Selected input ends, IN1 and IN2 internal connection control bit
0: Not connected
1: Connected

Bit 5~4 **INX1~INX0**: Selected input ends, IN1/IN2 and the PGA differential input ends, DI+/DI- connection control bits



Bit 3~1 **DCSET2~DCSET0**: Differential input signal PGAOP/PGAON offset selection
000: DCSET = +0V
001: DCSET = +0.25×ΔVR_I
010: DCSET = +0.5×ΔVR_I
011: DCSET = +0.75×ΔVR_I
100: DCSET = +0V
101: DCSET = -0.25×ΔVR_I
110: DCSET = -0.5×ΔVR_I
111: DCSET = -0.75×ΔVR_I

The voltage, ΔVR_I, is the differential reference voltage which is amplified by specific gain selection based on the selected inputs.

Bit 0 Unimplemented, read as "0"

• **PGACS Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	CHSN2	CHSN1	CHSN0	CHSP2	CHSP1	CHSP0
R/W	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~6 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 5~3 **CHSN2~CHSN0**: Negative input end IN2 selection
000: AN1
001: AN3
010: AN5
011: AN7
100: DACO
101: OPO
110: V_{CM}
111: Temperature sensor output – V_{TSON}

These bits are used to select the negative input, IN2. If the IN2 input is selected as a single end input, the V_{CM} voltage must be selected as the positive input on IN1 for single end input applications. It is recommended that when the V_{TSON} signal is selected as the negative input, the V_{TSOP} signal should be selected as the positive input for proper operations.

Bit 2~0 **CHSP2~CHSP0**: Positive input end IN1 selection
000: AN0
001: AN2
010: AN4
011: AN6
100: DACO
101: Unused, connected to AVSS
110: V_{CM}
111: Temperature sensor output – V_{TSOP}

These bits are used to select the positive input, IN1. If the IN1 input is selected as a single end input, the V_{CM} voltage must be selected as the negative input on IN2 for single end input applications. It is recommended that when the V_{TSOP} signal is selected as the positive input, the V_{TSON} signal should be selected as the negative input for proper operations.

D/A Converter Registers – DSDAH, DSDAL, DSDACC

There are three registers related to the D/A converter control.

• **DSDAH Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6	D5	D4
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~0 **D11~D4**: D/A Converter Output Control Code, Only for 12 bits D/A Converter

• **DSDAL Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~4 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 3~0 **D3~D0**: D/A Converter Output Control Code

Note: writing this register only writes to shadow buffer, and until write DSDAH register will also copy the shadow buffer data to DSDAL register.

• **DSDACC Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	DSDACEN	DSDACVRS	—	—	—	—	—	—
R/W	R/W	R/W	—	—	—	—	—	—
POR	0	0	—	—	—	—	—	—

Bit 7 **DSDACEN**: D/A Converter Enable or Disable Control Bit
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 6 **DSDACVRS**: D/A Converter Reference Voltage Selection
0: D/A converter reference voltage comes from V_{IN}
1: D/A converter reference voltage comes from V_{CM}

Bit 5~0 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Operational Amplifier Registers – DSOPC

There is one register related to the OPA control.

• **DSOPC Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	DSOPEN	—	—	—	OPN1	OPN0	OPP1	OPP0
R/W	R/W	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	—	—	—	0	0	0	0

Bit 7 **DSOPEN**: OPA enable or disable control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 6~4 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 3~2 **OPN1~OPN0**: Negative input end OPI- selection
00: OPO
01: AN3
10: AN5
11: AN7

Bit 1~0 **OPP1~OPP0**: Positive input end OPI+ selection
00: AN0
01: AN2
10: AN4
11: AN6

A/D Converter Data Registers – ADRL, ADRM, ADRH

This device contains an internal 24-bit Δ-ΣA/D converter, it requires three data registers to store the converted value. These are a high byte register, known as ADRH, a middle byte register, known as ADRM, and a low byte register, known as ADRL. After the conversion process takes place, these registers can be directly read by the microcontroller to obtain the digitised conversion value. D0~D23 are the A/D conversion result data bits.

• **ADRL Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
POR	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

"x" unknown

Bit 7~0 A/D conversion data Register bit 7~bit 0

• **ADRM Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D15	D14	D13	D12	D11	D10	D9	D8
R/W	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
POR	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

"x" unknown

Bit 7~0 A/D conversion data Register bit 15~bit 8

• **ADRH Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D23	D22	D21	D20	D19	D18	D17	D16
R/W	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
POR	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

"x" unknown

Bit 7~0 A/D conversion data Register bit 23~bit 16

A/D Converter Control Registers – ADCR0, ADCR1, ADCS

To control the function and operation of the A/D converter, three control registers known as ADCR0, ADCR1 and ADCS are provided. These 8-bit registers define functions such as the selection of which reference source is used to the internal ADC, the ADC clock source , the ADC output data rate as well as controlling the power-up function and monitoring the ADC end of conversion status.

• **ADCR0 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	ADRST	ADSLP	ADOFF	ADOR2	ADOR1	ADOR0	—	VREFS
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	—	R/W
POR	0	0	1	0	0	0	—	0

Bit 7 **ADRST**: A/D converter software reset control bit
0: Disable
1: Enable
This bit is used to reset the A/D converter internal digital SINC filter. This bit is set low for A/D normal operations. However, if set high, the internal digital SINC filter will be reset and the current A/D converted data will be aborted. A new A/D data conversion process will not be initiated until this bit is set low again.

Bit 6 **ADSLP**: A/D converter sleep mode control bit
0: Normal mode
1: Sleep mode
This bit is used to determine whether the A/D converter enters the sleep mode or not when the A/D converter is powered on by setting the ADOFF bit low. When the A/D converter is powered on and the ADSLP bit is low, the A/D converter will operate normally. However, the A/D converter will enter the sleep mode if the ADSLP bit is set high as the A/D converter has been powered on. The whole A/D converter circuit will be switched off except the PGA and internal Bandgap circuit to reduce the power consumption and V_{CM} start-up stable time.

Bit 5 **ADOFF**: A/D converter module power on/off control bit
0: Power on
1: Power off
This bit controls the power of the A/D converter module. This bit should be cleared to zero to enable the A/D converter. If the bit is set high then the A/D converter will be switched off reducing the device power consumption. As the A/D converter will consume a limited amount of power, even when not executing a conversion, this may be an important consideration in power sensitive battery powered applications.
It is recommended to set the ADOFF bit high before the device enters the IDLE/SLEEP mode for saving power. Setting the ADOFF bit high will power down the A/D converter module regardless of the ADSLP and ADRST bit settings.

Bit 4 ~ 2 **ADOR2~ADOR0**: A/D conversion oversampling rate selection
000: Oversampling rate OSR = 16384
001: Oversampling rate OSR = 8192
010: Oversampling rate OSR = 4096
011: Oversampling rate OSR = 2048
100: Oversampling rate OSR = 1024
101: Oversampling rate OSR = 512
110: Oversampling rate OSR = 256
111: Oversampling rate OSR = 128

Bit 1 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 0 **VREFS**: A/D converter reference voltage pair selection
0: Internal reference voltage pair – V_{CM} & AV_{SS}
1: External reference voltage pair – VREFP & VREFN

• ADCR1 Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	FLMS2	FLMS1	FLMS0	VRBUFN	VRBUFP	ADCDL	EOC	—
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	—
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	—

Bit 7 ~ 5 **FLMS2~FLMS0**: A/D converter clock divided ratio selection and sampled data doubling function (CHOP) enable control
000: CHOP = 2, $f_{ADCK} = f_{MCLK} / 30$
010: CHOP = 2, $f_{ADCK} = f_{MCLK} / 12$
100: CHOP = 1, $f_{ADCK} = f_{MCLK} / 30$
110: CHOP = 1, $f_{ADCK} = f_{MCLK} / 12$
Others: Reserved
When the CHOP bit is equal to 2, it means that the sampled data amount will be doubled for the normal conversion mode. However, it can be regarded as the low latency conversion mode if the CHOP bit is equal to 1, which means that the sampled data doubling function is disabled.

Bit 4 **VRBUFN**: A/D converter negative reference voltage input (VRN) buffer control
0: Disable input buffer and enable bypass function
1: Enable input buffer and disable bypass function

Bit 3 **VRBUFP**: A/D converter positive reference voltage input (VRP) buffer control
0: Disable input buffer and enable bypass function
1: Enable input buffer and disable bypass function

Bit 2 **ADCDL**: A/D converted data latch function enable control
0: Disable data latch function
1: Enable data latch function
If the A/D converted data latch function is enabled, the latest converted data value will be latched and not be updated by any subsequent converted results until this function is disabled. Although the converted data is latched into the data registers, the A/D converter circuits remain operational, but will not generate interrupt and EOC will not change. It is recommended that this bit should be set high before reading the converted

data in the ADRL, ADRM and ADRH registers. After the converted data has been read out, the bit can then be cleared to low to disable the A/D converter data latch function and allow further conversion values to be stored. In this way, the possibility of obtaining undesired data during A/D converter conversions can be prevented.

Bit 1 **EOC**: End of A/D conversion flag
0: A/D conversion in progress
1: A/D conversion ended
This bit must be cleared by software.

Bit 0 Unimplemented, read as "0"

• **ADCS Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	ADCK4	ADCK3	ADCK2	ADCK1	ADCK0
R/W	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	—	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~5 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 4~0 **ADCK4~ADCK0**: A/D converter clock source f_{MCLK} divided ratio selection
00000~11110: $f_{MCLK} = f_{SYS}/2$ / (ADCK[4:0]+1)
11111: $f_{MCLK} = f_{SYS}$

A/D Operation

The A/D Converter provides four operating modes, which are the Normal mode, Power down mode, Sleep mode and Reset mode, controlled respectively by the ADOFF, ADSLP and ADRST bits in the ADCR0 register. The following table illustrates the operating mode selection.

LDOEN	ADOFF	ADSLP	ADRST	Operating mode	Description
0	1	x	x	Power down mode	Bandgap off, LDO off, V_{CM} off, PGA off, ADC off, Temperature sensor off, VRN/VRP buffer off, SINC filter off
1	1	x	x	Power down mode	Bandgap on, LDO on, V_{CM} on, PGA off, ADC off, Temperature sensor off, VRN/VRP buffer off, SINC filter off
0	0	1	x	Sleep mode (External voltage must be supplied on LDO output pin)	Bandgap on, LDO off, V_{CM} on, PGA on, ADC off, Temperature sensor off, VRN/VRP buffer off, SINC filter on
0	0	0	0	Normal mode (External voltage must be supplied on LDO output pin)	Bandgap on, LDO off, V_{CM} on, PGA on, ADC on, Temperature sensor on/off(2), VRN/VRP buffer on/off(3), SINC filter on
0	0	0	1	Reset mode (External voltage must be supplied on LDO output pin)	Bandgap on, LDO off, V_{CM} on, PGA on, ADC on, Temperature sensor on/off(2), VRN/VRP buffer on/off(3), SINC filter Reset
1	0	1	x	Sleep mode	Bandgap on, LDO on, V_{CM} on, PGA on, ADC off, Temperature sensor off, VRN/VRP buffer off, SINC filter on

LDOEN	ADOFF	ADSLP	ADRST	Operating mode	Description
1	0	0	0	Normal mode	Bandgap on, LDO on, V_{CM} on, PGA on, ADC on, Temperature sensor on/off(2), VRN/VRP buffer on/off(3), SINC filter on
1	0	0	1	Reset mode	Bandgap on, LDO on, V_{CM} on, PGA on, ADC on, Temperature sensor on/off(2), VRN/VRP buffer on/off(3), SINC filter Reset

"x" unknown

Note: 1. The V_{CM} can be switched on or off by the bandgap being on or off.
2. The Temperature sensor can be switched on or off by configuring the CHSN[2:0] or CHSP[2:0] bits.
3. The VRN buffer can be switched on or off by configuring the VRBUFN bit while the VRP buffer can be switched on or off by configuring the VRBUFP bit

A/D Operation Mode Selection

To enable the ADC, the first step is to disable the ADC power down and sleep mode, to make sure the ADC is powered up. The ADRST bit in the ADCR0 register is used to start and reset the A/D converter after power on. When the microcontroller sets this bit from low to high and then low again, an analog to digital converted data in SINC filter will be initiated. After this setup is complete, the ADC is ready for operation. These three bits are used to control the overall start operation of the internal analog to digital converter.

The EOC bit in the ADCR1 register is used to indicate when the analog to digital conversion process is complete. This bit will be automatically set high by the microcontroller after a conversion cycle has ended. In addition, the corresponding A/D interrupt request flag will be set in the interrupt control register, and if the interrupts are enabled, an appropriate internal interrupt signal will be generated. This A/D internal interrupt signal will direct the program flow to the associated A/D internal interrupt address for processing. If the A/D internal interrupt is disabled, the microcontroller can be used to poll the EOC bit in the ADCR1 register to check whether it has been set "1" as an alternative method of detecting the end of an A/D conversion cycle. The ADC converted data will be updated continuously by the new converted data. If the ADC converted data latch function is enabled, the latest converted data will be latched and the following new converted data will be discarded until this data latch function is disabled.

The clock source for the A/D converter should be typically fixed at a value of 4.9152MHz, which originates from the system clock f_{SYS}, and can be chosen to be either f_{SYS} or a subdivided version of f_{SYS}. The division ratio value is determined by the ADCK4~ADCK0 bits in the ADCS register to obtain a 4.9152MHz clock source for the ADC.

The differential reference voltage supply to the A/D Converter can be supplied from either the internal power supply pins, VCM and AVSS, or from an external reference source supplied on pins, VREFP and VREFN. The desired selection is made using the VREFS bit in the ADCR0 register.

Summary of A/D Conversion Steps

The following summarises the individual steps that should be executed in order to implement an A/D conversion process.

- Step 1

  Enable the power LDO, VCM for PGA and ADC.

- Step 2

  Select the PGA, ADC, reference voltage gains by PGAC0 register

- Step 3

  Select the PGA settings for input connection and buffer option by PGAC1 register

- Step 4

  Select the required A/D conversion clock source by correctly programming bits ADCK4~ADCK0 in the ADCS register.

- Step 5

  Select output data rate by configuring the ADOR[2:0] bits in the ADCR0 register and FLMS[2:0] bits in the ADCR1 register.

- Step 6

  Select which channel is to be connected to the internal PGA by correctly programming the CHSP2~CHSP0 and CHSN2~CHSN0 bits which are also contained in the PGACS register.

- Step 7

  Release the power down mode and sleep mode by clearing the ADOFF and ADSLP bits in ADCR0 register.

- Step 8

  Reset the A/D by setting the ADRST to high in the ADCR0 register and clearing this bit to zero to release reset status.

- Step 9

  If the interrupts are to be used, the interrupt control registers must be correctly configured to ensure the A/D converter interrupt function is active. The master interrupt control bit, EMI, and the A/D converter interrupt bit, ADE, must both be set high to do this.

- Step 10

  To check when the analog to digital conversion process is complete, the EOC bit in the ADCR1 register can be polled. The conversion process is complete when this bit goes high. When this occurs the A/D data registers ADRL, ADRM and ADRH can be read to obtain the conversion value. As an alternative method, if the interrupts are enabled and the stack is not full, the program can wait for an A/D interrupt to occur.

Note: When checking for the end of the conversion process, if the method of polling the EOC bit in the ADCR1 register is used, the interrupt enable step above can be omitted.

Programming Considerations

During microcontroller operations where the A/D converter is not being used, the A/D internal circuitry can be switched off to reduce power consumption, by setting bit ADOFF high in the ADCR0 register. When this happens, the internal A/D converter circuits will not consume power irrespective of what analog voltage is applied to their input lines.

A/D Transfer Function

This device contains a 24-bit Δ-Σ A/D converter and its full-scale converted digitized value is from 8388607 to -8388608 in decimal value. The converted data format is formed by a two's complement binary value. The MSB of the converted data is the signed bit. Since the full-scale analog input value is equal to the amplified value of the V_{CM} or differential reference input voltage, ΔVR_I, selected by the VREFS bit in ADCR0 register, this gives a single bit analog input value of ΔVR_I divided by 8388608.

$$1\ LSB = \Delta VR_I / 8388608$$

The A/D Converter input voltage value can be calculated using the following equation:

$$\Delta SI_I = (PGAGN \times ADGN \times \Delta DI\pm) + DCSET$$
$$\Delta VR_I = VREGN \times \Delta VR\pm$$
$$ADC_Conversion_Data = (\Delta SI_I / \Delta VR_I) \times K$$

Where K is equal to 2^{23}

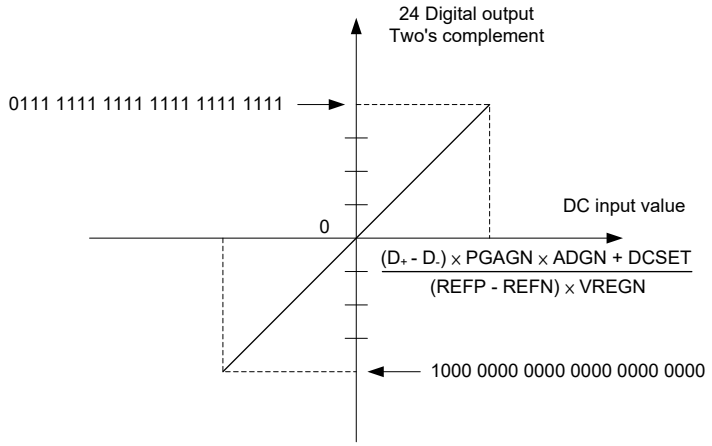
Note: 1. The PGAGN, ADGN, VREGN values are decided by the PGS, AGS, VGS control bits.
2. ΔSI_I: Differential Input Signal after amplification and offset adjustment.
3. PGAGN: Programmable Gain Amplifier gain
4. ADGN: A/D Converter gain
5. VREGN: Reference voltage gain
6. ΔDI±: Differential input signal derived from external channels or internal signals
7. DCSET: Offset voltage
8. ΔVR±: Differential Reference voltage
9. ΔVR_I: Differential Reference input voltage after amplification

Due to the digital system design of the Δ-Σ A/D Converter, the maximum number of the A/D converted value is 8388607 and the minimum value is -8388608, therefore, we can have the middle number 0. The ADC_Conversion_Data equation illustrates this range of converted data variation.

A/D Conversion Data (2's compliment, Hexadecimal)	Decimal Value
0x7FFFFF	8388607
0x800000	-8388608

The above ADC conversion data table illustrates the range of ADC conversion data.

The following diagram shows the relationship between the DC input value and the ADC converted data which is presented by the Two's Complement.



A/D Converted Data

The A/D converted data is related to the input voltage and the PGA selections. The format of the ADC output is a two's complement binary code. The length of this output code is 24 bits and the MSB is a signed bit. When the MSB is "0", which represents the input is "positive" , on the other hand, as the MSB is "1", it represents the input is "negative". The maximum value is 8388607 and the minimum value is -8388608. If the input signal is over the maximum value, the converted data is limited by the 8388607, and if the input signal is less than the minimum value, the converted data is limited by -8388608.

A/D Converted Data to Voltage

The designer can recover the converted data by the following equations:

If MSB = 0 (Positive Converted data):

$$\text{Input Voltage} = \frac{(\text{Converted_data}) \times \text{LSB} - \text{DCSET}}{\text{PGA} \times \text{ADGN}}$$

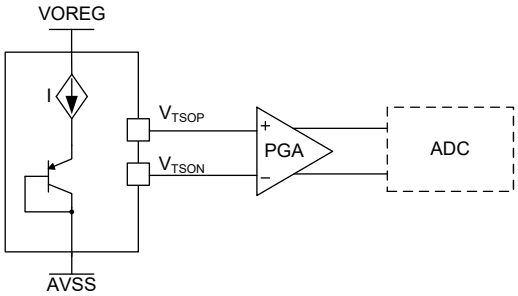
If the MSB = 1 (Negative Converted data):

$$\text{Input voltage} = \frac{(\text{Two's_complement_of_Converted_data}) \times \text{LSB} - \text{DCSET}}{\text{PGA} \times \text{ADGN}}$$

Note: Two's complement = One's complement +1

Temperature Sensor

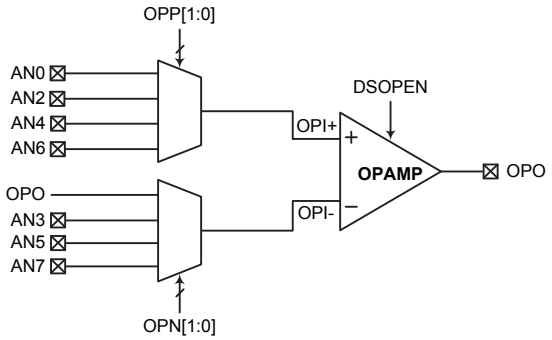
This device provides an internal temperature sensor to compensate the device performance. By selecting the PGA input channels to V_{TSOP} and V_{TSON} signals, the A/D Converter can get the temperature information and the designer can do some compensation to the A/D converted data. The following block diagram illustrates the functional operation for the temperature sensor.



Temperature Sensor Structure

Operational Amplifier

There is one fully integrated Operational Amplifier in the device. This OPA can be used for signal amplification according to specific user requirements. The OPA can be disabled or enabled entirely under software control using internal registers. With specific control registers, some OPA related applications can be more flexible and easier to be implemented, such as Unit Gain Buffer, Non-Inverting Amplifier, Inverting Amplifier and various kinds of filters, etc.



Operational Amplifier Structure

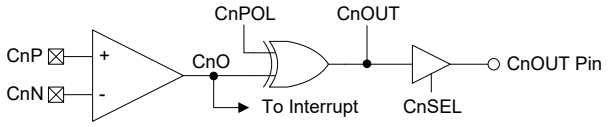
A/D Programming Example

Example: Using an EOC polling method to detect the end of conversion

```
#include ht67f5652.inc
data .section   'data'
     adc_result_data_l db ?
     adc_result_data_m db ?
     adc_result_data_h db ?
code .section   'code'
start:
     clr ADE                  ; disable ADC interrupt
     mov a, 083H              ; Power control for PGA, ADC
     mov PWRC, a              ; PWRC=10000011, LDO enable, VCM enable, LDO Bypass disable,
                              ; LDO output voltage: 3.3V
     mov a, 000H
     mov PGAC0, a             ; PGA gain=1, ADC gain=1, VREF gain=1
     mov a, 000H
     mov PGAC1, a             ; INIS, INX, DCSET in default value
     clr VRBUFP               ; disable buffer for VREF+
     clr VRBUFN               ; disable buffer for VREF-
     set VREFS                ; for using external reference
     clr ADOR2                ; for 10Hz output data rate, ADOR[2:0]=001, FLMS[2:0]=000
     clr ADOR1
     set ADOR0
     clr FLMS2
     clr FLMS1
     clr FLMS0
     clr ADOFF                ; ADC exit power down mode.
     set ADRST                ; ADC in reset mode
     clr ADRST                ; ADC in convertsion (continuous mode)
     clr EOC                  ; Clear "EOC" flag
loop:
     snz EOC                  ; Polling "EOC" flag
     jmp loop                 ; Wait for read data
     clr adc_result_data_h
     clr adc_result_data_m
     clr adc_result_data_l
     set ADCDL                ; enable data latch
     mov a, ADRL
     mov adc_result_data_l, a ; Get Low byte ADC value
     mov a, ADRM
     mov adc_result_data_m, a ; Get Middle byte ADC value
     mov a, ADRH
     mov adc_result_data_h, a ; Get High byte ADC value
get_adc_value_ok:
     clr ADCDL                ; disable data latch
     clr EOC                  ; Clearing read flag
     jmp    loop              ; for next data read
end
```

Comparators

Two independent analog comparators are contained within the device. These functions offer flexibility via its register controlled features such as power-down, polarity select, hysteresis etc. In sharing its pins with normal I/O pins the comparator does not waste precious I/O pins if there functions are otherwise unused.



Comparator (n=0 or 1)

Comparator Operation

The device contains two comparator functions which are used to compare two analog voltages and provide an output based on their difference. Full control over the internal comparators is provided via two control registers, CP0C and CP1C, one assigned to each comparator. The comparator output is recorded via a bit in their respective control register, but can also be transferred out onto a shared I/O pin. Additional comparator functions include, output polarity, hysteresis functions and power down control.

Any pull-high resistors connected to the shared comparator input pins will be automatically disconnected when the comparator is enabled. As the comparator inputs approach their switching level, some spurious output signals may be generated on the comparator output due to the slow rising or falling nature of the input signals. This can be minimised by selecting the hysteresis function will apply a small amount of positive feedback to the comparator. Ideally the comparator should switch at the point where the positive and negative inputs signals are at the same voltage level; however, unavoidable input offsets introduce some uncertainties here. The hysteresis function, if enabled, also increases the switching offset value.

Comparator Register

There are two registers for overall comparator operation, one for each comparator. As corresponding bits in the two registers have identical functions, they following register table applies to both registers.

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
CP0C	C0SEL	C0EN	C0POL	C0OUT	C0OS	—	—	C0HYEN
CP1C	C1SEL	C1EN	C1POL	C1OUT	C1OS	—	—	C1HYEN

Comparator Register List

- **CP0C Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	C0SEL	C0EN	C0POL	C0OUT	C0OS	—	—	C0HYEN
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R	R/W	—	—	R/W
POR	1	0	0	0	0	—	—	1

Bit 7 **C0SEL**: Select Comparator pins or I/O pins
0: I/O pin select
1: Comparator pin select
This is the Comparator pin or I/O pin select bit. If the bit is high the comparator will be selected and the two comparator input pins will be enabled. As a result, these two pins will lose their I/O pin functions. Any pull-high configuration options associated with the comparator shared pins will also be automatically disconnected.

Bit 6 **C0EN**: Comparator On/Off control
0: Off
1: On
This is the Comparator on/off control bit. If the bit is zero the comparator will be switched off and no power consumed even if analog voltages are applied to its inputs. For power sensitive applications this bit should be cleared to zero if the comparator is not used or before the device enters the SLEEP or IDLE mode.

Bit 5 **C0POL**: Comparator output polarity
0: Output not inverted
1: Output inverted
This is the comparator polarity bit. If the bit is zero then the C0OUT bit will reflect the non-inverted output condition of the comparator. If the bit is high the comparator C0OUT bit will be inverted.

Bit 4 **C0OUT**: Comparator output bit
C0POL=0
0: C0P < C0N
1: C0P > C0N
C0POL=1
0: C0P > C0N
1: C0P < C0N
This bit stores the comparator output bit. The polarity of the bit is determined by the voltages on the comparator inputs and by the condition of the C0POL bit.

Bit 3 **C0OS**: Output path select
0: C0OUT pin
1: Internal use
This is the comparator output path select control bit. If the bit is cleared to zero and the C0SEL bit is 1 the comparator output is connected to an external C0OUT pin. If the bit is set high or the C0SEL bit is 0 the comparator output signal is only used internally by the device allowing the shared comparator output pin to retain its normal I/O operation.

Bit 2~1 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 0 **C0HYEN**: Hysteresis Control
0: Off
1: On
This is the hysteresis control bit and if set high will apply a limited amount of hysteresis to the comparator, as specified in the Comparator Electrical Characteristics table. The positive feedback induced by hysteresis reduces the effect of spurious switching near the comparator threshold.

- **CP1C Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	C1SEL	C1EN	C1POL	C1OUT	C1OS	—	—	C1HYEN
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R	R/W	—	—	R/W
POR	1	0	0	0	0	—	—	1

Bit 7 **C1SEL**: Select Comparator pins or I/O pins
0: I/O pin select
1: Comparator pin select
This is the Comparator pin or I/O pin select bit. If the bit is high the comparator will be selected and the two comparator input pins will be enabled. As a result, these two pins will lose their I/O pin functions. Any pull-high configuration options associated with the comparator shared pins will also be automatically disconnected.

Bit 6 **C1EN**: Comparator On/Off control
0: Off
1: On
This is the Comparator on/off control bit. If the bit is zero the comparator will be switched off and no power consumed even if analog voltages are applied to its inputs. For power sensitive applications this bit should be cleared to zero if the comparator is not used or before the device enters the SLEEP or IDLE mode.

Bit 5 **C1POL**: Comparator output polarity
0: output not inverted
1: output inverted
This is the comparator polarity bit. If the bit is zero then the C1OUT bit will reflect the non-inverted output condition of the comparator. If the bit is high the comparator C1OUT bit will be inverted.

Bit 4 **C1OUT**: Comparator output bit
C1POL=0
0: C1P < C1N
1: C1P > C1N
C1POL=1
0: C1P > C1N
1: C1P < C1N
This bit stores the comparator output bit. The polarity of the bit is determined by the voltages on the comparator inputs and by the condition of the C1POL bit.

Bit 3 **C1OS**: Output path select
0: C1OUT pin
1: Internal use
This is the comparator output path select control bit. If the bit is cleared to zero and the C1SEL bit is 1 the comparator output is connected to an external C1OUT pin. If the bit is set high or the C1SEL bit is 0 the comparator output signal is only used internally by the device allowing the shared comparator output pin to retain its normal I/O operation.

Bit 2~1 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 0 **C1HYEN**: Hysteresis Control
0: Off
1: On
This is the hysteresis control bit and if set high will apply a limited amount of hysteresis to the comparator, as specified in the Comparator Electrical Characteristics table. The positive feedback induced by hysteresis reduces the effect of spurious switching near the comparator threshold.

Comparator Interrupt

Each also possesses its own interrupt function. When any one of the changes state, its relevant interrupt flag will be set, and if the corresponding interrupt enable bit is set, then a jump to its relevant interrupt vector will be executed. Note that it is the changing state of the CnOUT bit and generates an interrupt. If the microcontroller is in the SLEEP or IDLE Mode and the Comparator is enabled, then if the external input lines cause the Comparator output to change state, the resulting generated interrupt flag will also generate a wake-up. If it is required to disable a wake-up from occurring, then the interrupt flag should be first set high before entering the SLEEP or IDLE Mode.

Programming Considerations

If the comparator is enabled, it will remain active when the microcontroller enters the SLEEP or IDLE Mode, however as it will consume a certain amount of power, the user may wish to consider disabling it before the SLEEP or IDLE Mode is entered.

As comparator pins are shared with normal I/O pins, the I/O registers for these pins will be read as zero (port control register is "1") or read as port data register value (port control register is "0") if the comparator function is enabled.

Serial Interface Module – SIM

This device contains a Serial Interface Module, which includes both the four line SPI interface and the two line I²C interface types, to allow an easy method of communication with external peripheral hardware. Having relatively simple communication protocols, these serial interface types allow the microcontroller to interface to external SPI or I²C based hardware such as sensors, Flash memory, etc. As both interface types share the same pins and registers, the choice of whether the SPI or I²C type is used is made using the SIM operating mode control bits, named SIM2~SIM0, in the SIMC0 register. These pull-high resistors of the SIM pin-shared I/O pins are selected using pull-high control registers when the SIM function is enabled and the corresponding pins are used as SIM input pins.

SPI Interface

The SPI interface is often used to communicate with external peripheral devices such as sensors, Flash memory devices etc. Originally developed by Motorola, the four line SPI interface is a synchronous serial data interface that has a relatively simple communication protocol simplifying the programming requirements when communicating with external hardware devices.

The communication is full duplex and operates as a slave/master type, where the device can be either master or slave. Although the SPI interface specification can control multiple slave devices from a single master, but this device is provided only one $\overline{SCS}$ pin. If the master needs to control multiple slave devices from a single master, the master can use I/O pin to select the slave devices.

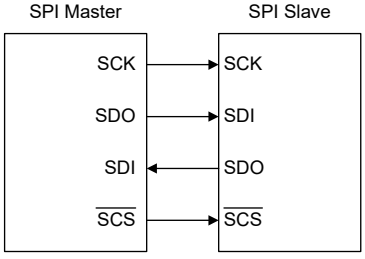
SPI Interface Operation

The SPI interface is a full duplex synchronous serial data link. It is a four line interface with pin names SDI, SDO, SCK and $\overline{SCS}$. Pins SDI and SDO are the Serial Data Input and Serial Data Output lines; SCK is the Serial Clock line and $\overline{SCS}$ is the Slave Select line. As the SPI interface pins are pin-shared with normal I/O pins and with the I²C function pins, the SPI interface must first be enabled by setting the correct bits in the SIMC0 and SIMC2 registers. The SPI can be disabled or enabled using the SIMEN bit in the SIMC0 register. Communication between devices connected to the SPI interface is carried out in a slave/master mode with all data transfer initiations being implemented by the master. The Master also controls the clock signal. As the device only contains a single $\overline{SCS}$ pin only one slave device can be utilized. The $\overline{SCS}$ pin is controlled by software, set CSEN bit to "1" to enable $\overline{SCS}$ pin function, set CSEN bit to "0" the $\overline{SCS}$ pin will be floating state.

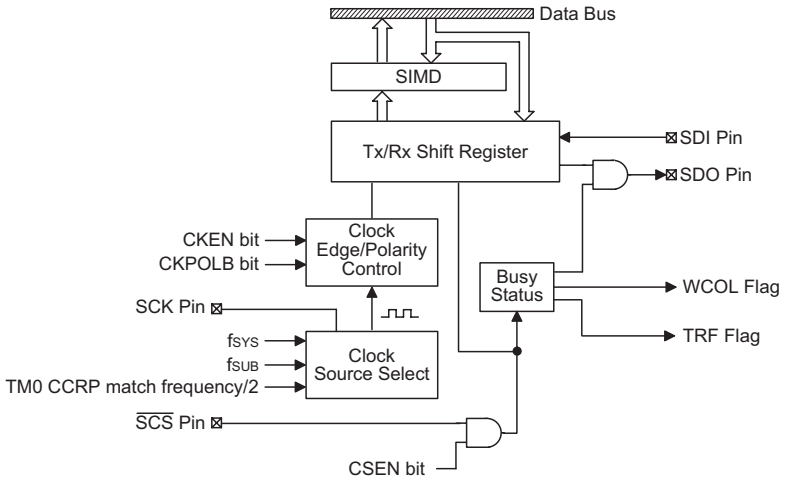
The SPI function in this device offers the following features:

- Full duplex synchronous data transfer
- Both Master and Slave modes
- LSB first or MSB first data transmission modes
- Transmission complete flag
- Rising or falling active clock edge

The status of the SPI interface pins is determined by a number of factors such as whether the device is in the master or slave mode and upon the condition of certain control bits such as CSEN and SIMEN.



SPI Master/Slave Connection



SPI Block Diagram

SPI Registers

There are three internal registers which control the overall operation of the SPI interface. These are the SIMD data register and two registers SIMC0 and SIMC2. Note that the SIMC1 register is only used by the I²C interface.

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
SIMC0	SIM2	SIM1	SIM0	—	SIMDBNC1	SIMDBNC0	SIMEN	SIMICF
SIMD	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
SIMC2	D7	D6	CKPOLB	CKEG	MLS	CSEN	WCOL	TRF

SIM Register List

The SIMD register is used to store the data being transmitted and received. The same register is used by both the SPI and I²C functions. Before the device writes data to the SPI bus, the actual data to be transmitted must be placed in the SIMD register. After the data is received from the SPI bus, the device can read it from the SIMD register. Any transmission or reception of data from the SPI bus must be made via the SIMD register.

• SIMD Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

"x" unknown

There are also two control registers for the SPI interface, SIMC0 and SIMC2. Note that the SIMC2 register also has the name SIMA which is used by the I²C function. The SIMC1 register is not used by the SPI function, only by the I²C function. Register SIMC0 is used to control the enable/disable function and to set the data transmission clock frequency. Although not connected with the SPI function, the SIMC0 register is also used to control the Peripheral Clock Prescaler. Register SIMC2 is used for other control functions such as LSB/MSB selection, write collision flag etc.

• **SIMC0 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	SIM2	SIM1	SIM0	—	SIMDBNC1	SIMDBNC0	SIMEN	SIMICF
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	1	1	1	—	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~5 **SIM2~SIM0**: SIM Operating Mode Control
000: SPI master mode; SPI clock is $f_{SYS}/4$
001: SPI master mode; SPI clock is $f_{SYS}/16$
010: SPI master mode; SPI clock is $f_{SYS}/64$
011: SPI master mode; SPI clock is f_{SUB}
100: SPI master mode; SPI clock is TM0 CCRP match frequency/2
101: SPI slave mode
110: I^2C slave mode
111: Unused mode
These bits setup the overall operating mode of the SIM function. As well as selecting if the I^2C or SPI function, they are used to control the SPI Master/Slave selection and the SPI Master clock frequency. The SPI clock is a function of the system clock but can also be chosen to be sourced from f_{SUB} or the TM0. If the SPI Slave Mode is selected then the clock will be supplied by an external Master device.

Bit 4 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 3~2 **SIMDBNC1~SIMDBNC0**: I^2C Debounce Time Selection
00: No debounce
01: 2 system clock debounce
1x: 4 system clock debounce

Bit 1 **SIMEN**: SIM Control
0: Disable
1: Enable
The bit is the overall on/off control for the SIM interface. When the SIMEN bit is cleared to zero to disable the SIM interface, the SDI, SDO, SCK and $\overline{SCS}$, or SDA and SCL lines will be in a floating condition and the SIM operating current will be reduced to a minimum value. When the bit is high the SIM interface is enabled. The SIM configuration option must have first enabled the SIM interface for this bit to be effective. If the SIM is configured to operate as an SPI interface via the SIM2~SIM0 bits, the contents of the SPI control registers will remain at the previous settings when the SIMEN bit changes from low to high and should therefore be first initialised by the application program. If the SIM is configured to operate as an I^2C interface via the SIM2~SIM0 bits and the SIMEN bit changes from low to high, the contents of the I^2C control bits such as HTX and TXAK will remain at the previous settings and should therefore be first initialised by the application program while the relevant I^2C flags such as HCF, HAAS, HBB, SRW and RXAK will be set to their default states.

Bit 0 **SIMICF**: SIM Incompleted Flag
0: SIM incompleted is not occurred
1: SIM incompleted is occurred
The SIMICF bit is determined by $\overline{SCS}$ pin. When $\overline{SCS}$ pin is set high, it will clear the SPI counter. Meanwhile, the interrupt is occurred and the incompleted flag, SIMICF, is set high.

• **SIMC2 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	CKPOLB	CKEG	MLS	CSEN	WCOL	TRF
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~6 **D7~D6**: Undefined bit

This bit can be read or written by user software program.

Bit 5 **CKPOLB**: Determines the base condition of the clock line

0: The SCK line will be high when the clock is inactive

1: The SCK line will be low when the clock is inactive

The CKPOLB bit determines the base condition of the clock line, if the bit is high, then the SCK line will be low when the clock is inactive. When the CKPOLB bit is low, then the SCK line will be high when the clock is inactive.

Bit 4 **CKEG**: Determines SPI SCK active clock edge type

CKPOLB=0

0: SCK is high base level and data capture at SCK rising edge

1: SCK is high base level and data capture at SCK falling edge

CKPOLB=1

0: SCK is low base level and data capture at SCK falling edge

1: SCK is low base level and data capture at SCK rising edge

The CKEG and CKPOLB bits are used to setup the way that the clock signal outputs and inputs data on the SPI bus. These two bits must be configured before data transfer is executed otherwise an erroneous clock edge may be generated. The CKPOLB bit determines the base condition of the clock line, if the bit is high, then the SCK line will be low when the clock is inactive. When the CKPOLB bit is low, then the SCK line will be high when the clock is inactive. The CKEG bit determines active clock edge type which depends upon the condition of CKPOLB bit.

Bit 3 **MLS**: SPI Data shift order

0: LSB

1: MSB

This is the data shift select bit and is used to select how the data is transferred, either MSB or LSB first. Setting the bit high will select MSB first and low for LSB first.

Bit 2 **CSEN**: SPI $\overline{\text{SCS}}$ pin Control

0: Disable

1: Enable

The CSEN bit is used as an enable/disable for the $\overline{\text{SCS}}$ pin. If this bit is low, then the $\overline{\text{SCS}}$ pin will be disabled and placed into a floating condition. If the bit is high the $\overline{\text{SCS}}$ pin will be enabled and used as a select pin.

Note that using the CSEN bit can be disabled or enabled via configuration option.

Bit 1 **WCOL**: SPI Write Collision flag

0: No collision

1: Collision

The WCOL flag is used to detect if a data collision has occurred. If this bit is high it means that data has been attempted to be written to the SIMD register during a data transfer operation. This writing operation will be ignored if data is being transferred. The bit can be cleared by the application program. Note that using the WCOL bit can be disabled or enabled via configuration option.

Bit 0 **TRF**: SPI Transmit/Receive Complete flag

0: Data is being transferred

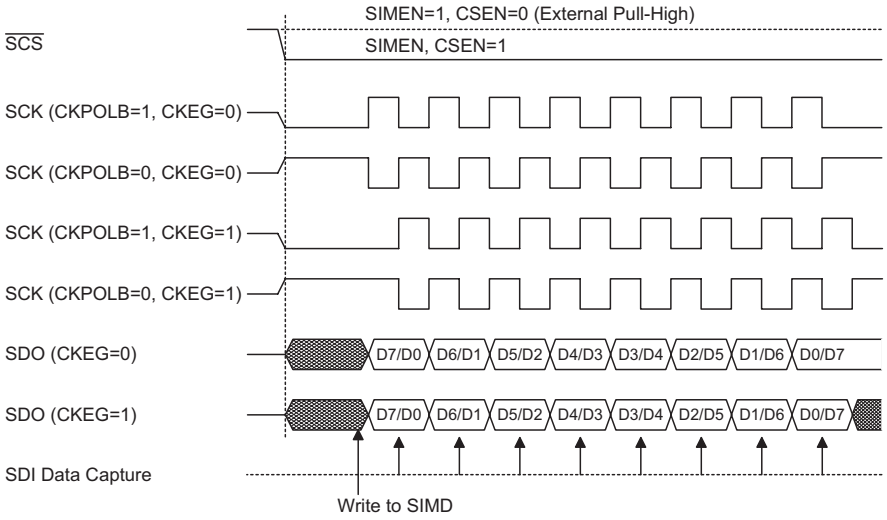
1: SPI data transmission is completed

The TRF bit is the Transmit/Receive Complete flag and is set high automatically when an SPI data transmission is completed, but must cleared to zero by the application program. It can be used to generate an interrupt.

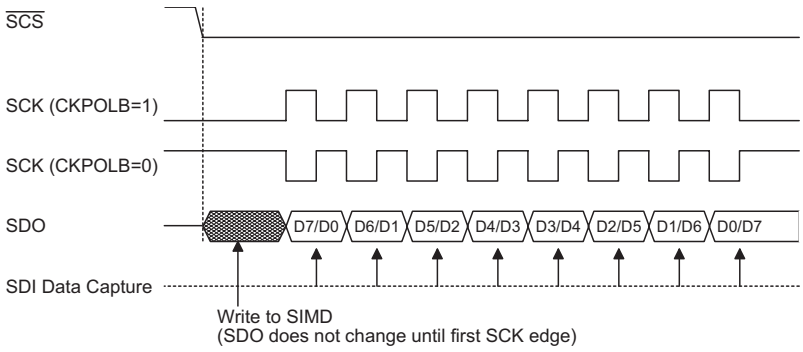
SPI Communication

After the SPI interface is enabled by setting the SIMEN bit high, then in the Master Mode, when data is written to the SIMD register, transmission/reception will begin simultaneously. When the data transfer is complete, the TRF flag will be set automatically, but must be cleared using the application program. In the Slave Mode, when the clock signal from the master has been received, any data in the SIMD register will be transmitted and any data on the SDI pin will be shifted into the SIMD register. The master should output an $\overline{SCS}$ signal to enable the slave device before a clock signal is provided. The slave data to be transferred should be well prepared at the appropriate moment relative to the $\overline{SCS}$ signal depending upon the configurations of the CKPOLB bit and CKEG bit. The accompanying timing diagram shows the relationship between the slave data and $\overline{SCS}$ signal for various configurations of the CKPOLB and CKEG bits.

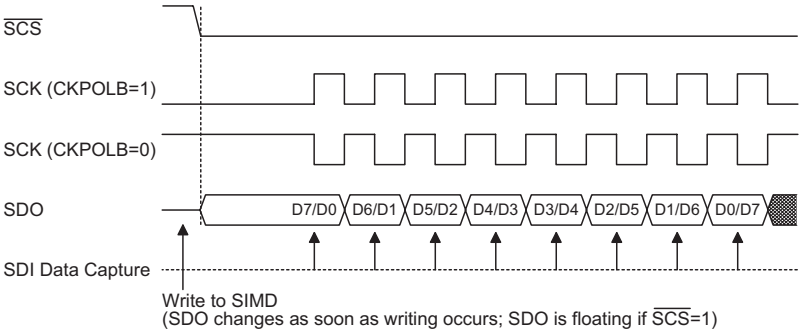
The SPI will continue to function even in the IDLE Mode.



SPI Master Mode Timing

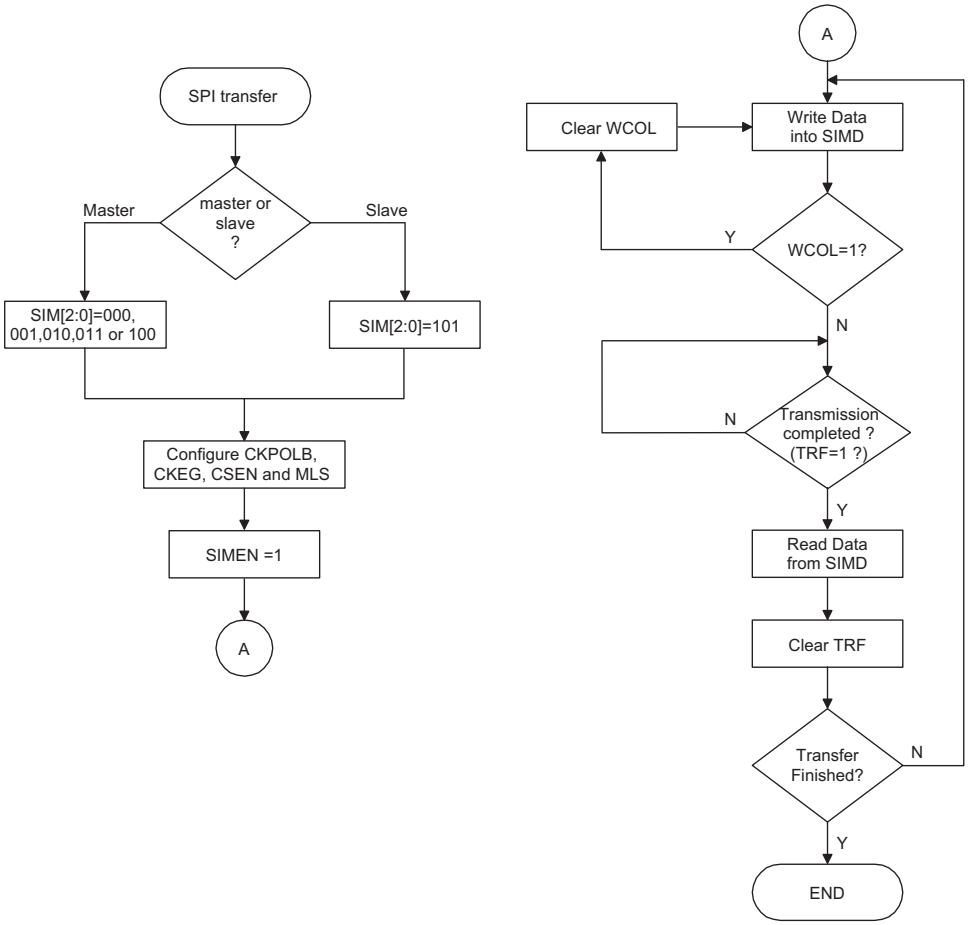


SPI Slave Mode Timing – CKEG=0



Note: For SPI slave mode, if SIMEN=1 and CSEN=0, SPI is always enabled and ignores the $\overline{SCS}$ level.

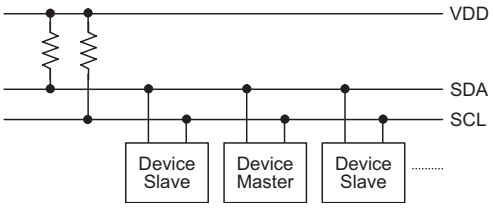
SPI Slave Mode Timing – CKEG=1



SPI Transfer Control Flowchart

I²C Interface

The I²C interface is used to communicate with external peripheral devices such as sensors etc. Originally developed by Philips, it is a two line low speed serial interface for synchronous serial data transfer. The advantage of only two lines for communication, relatively simple communication protocol and the ability to accommodate multiple devices on the same bus has made it an extremely popular interface type for many applications.

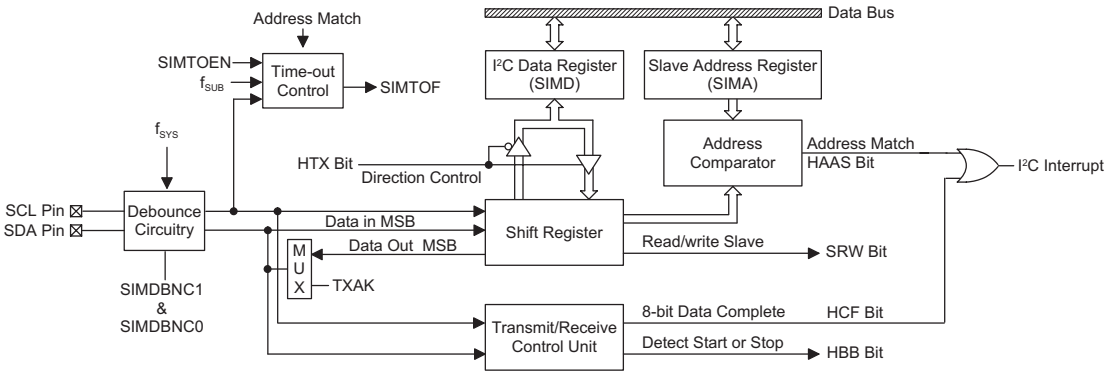


I²C Master/Slave Bus Connection

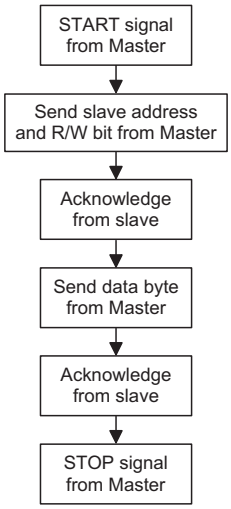
I²C Interface Operation

The I²C serial interface is a two line interface, a serial data line, SDA, and serial clock line, SCL. As many devices may be connected together on the same bus, their outputs are both open drain types. For this reason it is necessary that external pull-high resistors are connected to these outputs. Note that no chip select line exists, as each device on the I²C bus is identified by a unique address which will be transmitted and received on the I²C bus.

When two devices communicate with each other on the bidirectional I²C bus, one is known as the master device and one as the slave device. Both master and slave can transmit and receive data, however, it is the master device that has overall control of the bus. For this device, which only operates in slave mode, there are two methods of transferring data on the I²C bus, the slave transmit mode and the slave receive mode. The pull-up control function pin-shared with SCL/SDA pin is still applicable even if I²C device is activated and the related internal pull-up register could be controlled by its corresponding pull-up control register.



I²C Block Diagram



I²C Registers

There are three control registers associated with the I²C bus, SIMC0, SIMC1 and SIMTOC, one address register, SIMA and one data register, SIMD. The SIMD register, which is shown in the above SPI section, is used to store the data being transmitted and received on the I²C bus. Before the microcontroller writes data to the I²C bus, the actual data to be transmitted must be placed in the SIMD register. After the data is received from the I²C bus, the microcontroller can read it from the SIMD register. Any transmission or reception of data from the I²C bus must be made via the SIMD register. Note that the SIMA register also has the name SIMC2 which is used by the SPI function. Bit SIMEN and bits SIM2~SIM0 in register SIMC0 are used by the I²C interface. The SIMTOC register is used for I²C time-out control.

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
SIMC0	SIM2	SIM1	SIM0	—	SIMDBNC1	SIMDBNC0	SIMEN	SIMICF
SIMC1	HCF	HAAS	HBB	HTX	TXAK	SRW	RNIC	RXAK
SIMD	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
SIMA	IICA6	IICA5	IICA4	IICA3	IICA2	IICA1	IICA0	D0
SIMTOC	SIMTOEN	SIMTOF	SIMTOS5	SIMTOS4	SIMTOS3	SIMTOS2	SIMTOS1	SIMTOS0

I²C Register List

• SIMC0 Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	SIM2	SIM1	SIM0	—	SIMDBNC1	SIMDBNC0	SIMEN	SIMICF
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	1	1	1	—	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~5 **SIM2~SIM0**: SIM Operating Mode Control
000: SPI master mode; SPI clock is $f_{SYS}/4$
001: SPI master mode; SPI clock is $f_{SYS}/16$
010: SPI master mode; SPI clock is $f_{SYS}/64$
011: SPI master mode; SPI clock is f_{SUB}
100: SPI master mode; SPI clock is TM0 CCRP match frequency/2
101: SPI slave mode
110: I²C slave mode
111: Unused mode

These bits setup the overall operating mode of the SIM function. As well as selecting if the I²C or SPI function, they are used to control the SPI Master/Slave selection and the SPI Master clock frequency. The SPI clock is a function of the system clock but can also be chosen to be sourced from f_{SUB} or the TM0. If the SPI Slave Mode is selected then the clock will be supplied by an external Master device.

Bit 4 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 3~2 **SIMDBNC1~SIMDBNC0**: I²C Debounce Time Selection
00: No debounce
01: 2 system clock debounce
1x: 4 system clock debounce

Bit 1 **SIMEN**: SIM Control
0: Disable
1: Enable

The bit is the overall on/off control for the SIM interface. When the SIMEN bit is cleared to zero to disable the SIM interface, the SDI, SDO, SCK and $\overline{SCS}$, or SDA and SCL lines will be in a floating condition and the SIM operating current will be reduced to a minimum value. When the bit is high the SIM interface is enabled. The SIM configuration option must have first enabled the SIM interface for this bit to be effective. If the SIM is configured to operate as an SPI interface via the SIM2~SIM0 bits, the contents of the SPI control registers will remain at the previous settings when the SIMEN bit changes from low to high and should therefore be first initialised by the application program. If the SIM is configured to operate as an I²C interface via the SIM2~SIM0 bits and the SIMEN bit changes from low to high, the contents of the I²C control bits such as HTX and TXAK will remain at the previous settings and should therefore be first initialised by the application program while the relevant I²C flags such as HCF, HAAS, HBB, SRW and RXAK will be set to their default states.

Bit 0 **SIMICF**: SIM Incompleted Flag

SIMICF is of no used in I²C mode of SIM, please ignore this flag when operate in I²C mode.

• SIMC1 Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	HCF	HAAS	HBB	HTX	TXAK	SRW	RNIC	RXAK
R/W	R	R	R	R/W	R/W	R	R/W	R
POR	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1

Bit 7 **HCF**: I²C Bus data transfer completion flag
0: Data is being transferred
1: Completion of an 8-bit data transfer

The HCF flag is the data transfer flag. This flag will be zero when data is being transferred. Upon completion of an 8-bit data transfer the flag will go high and an interrupt will be generated.

Bit 6 **HAAS**: I²C Bus address match flag
0: Not address match
1: Address match

The HAAS flag is the address match flag. This flag is used to determine if the slave device address is the same as the master transmit address. If the addresses match then this bit will be high, if there is no match then the flag will be low.

Bit 5 **HBB**: I²C Bus busy flag
0: I²C Bus is not busy
1: I²C Bus is busy

The HBB flag is the I²C busy flag. This flag will be "1" when the I²C bus is busy which will occur when a START signal is detected. The flag will be cleared to zero when the bus is free which will occur when a STOP signal is detected.

Bit 4 **HTX**: Select I²C slave device is transmitter or receiver
0: Slave device is the receiver
1: Slave device is the transmitter

Bit 3 **TXAK**: I²C Bus transmit acknowledge flag
0: Slave send acknowledge flag
1: Slave do not send acknowledge flag
The TXAK bit is the transmit acknowledge flag. After the slave device receipt of 8-bits of data, this bit will be transmitted to the bus on the 9th clock from the slave device. The slave device must always set TXAK bit to "0" before further data is received.

Bit 2 **SRW**: I²C Slave Read/Write flag
0: Slave device should be in receive mode
1: Slave device should be in transmit mode
The SRW flag is the I²C Slave Read/Write flag. This flag determines whether the master device wishes to transmit or receive data from the I²C bus. When the transmitted address and slave address is match, that is when the HAAS flag is set high, the slave device will check the SRW flag to determine whether it should be in transmit mode or receive mode. If the SRW flag is high, the master is requesting to read data from the bus, so the slave device should be in transmit mode. When the SRW flag is zero, the master will write data to the bus, therefore the slave device should be in receive mode to read this data.

Bit 1 **RNIC**: I²C Running Not using Internal Clock.
0: I²C running using internal clock.
1: I²C running NOT using internal clock.
The I²C module can run without using internal clock, and generate an interrupt if the SIM interrupt is enabled, which can be used in sleep mode, idle (slow) mode and normal (slow) mode.
Note: If RNIC=1 and MCU is in the power down mode, slave-receiver can work well but slave-transmitter doesn't work since it needs system clock.

Bit 0 **RXAK**: I²C Bus Receive acknowledge flag
0: Slave receives acknowledge flag
1: Slave does not receive acknowledge flag

The SIMD register is used to store the data being transmitted and received. The same register is used by both the SPI and I²C functions. Before the device writes data to the I²C bus, the actual data to be transmitted must be placed in the SIMD register. After the data is received from the I²C bus, the device can read it from the SIMD register. Any transmission or reception of data from the I²C bus must be made via the SIMD register.

• SIMD Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	D7	D6	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

"x" unknown

• SIMA Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	IICA6	IICA5	IICA4	IICA3	IICA2	IICA1	IICA0	D0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~1 **IICA6~IICA0**: I²C slave address
IICA6~ IICA0 is the I²C slave address bit 6 ~ bit 0.

The SIMA register is also used by the SPI interface but has the name SIMC2. The SIMA register is the location where the 7-bit slave address of the slave device is stored. Bits 7~ 1 of the SIMA register define the device slave address. Bit 0 is not defined.

When a master device, which is connected to the I²C bus, sends out an address, which matches the slave address in the SIMA register, the slave device will be selected. Note that the SIMA register is the same register address as SIMC2 which is used by the SPI interface.

Bit 0 Undefined bit

This bit can be read or written by user software program.

• SIMTOC Register

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	SIMTOEN	SIMTOF	SIMTOS5	SIMTOS4	SIMTOS3	SIMTOS2	SIMTOS1	SIMTOS0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7 **SIMTOEN**: I²C interface Time-out control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 6 **SIMTOF**: I²C interface Time-out flag
0: No occurred
1: Occurred

The SIMTOF flag is set by the time-out circuitry when the time-out event occurs and cleared by software program.

Bit 5~0 **SIMTOS5~SIMTOS0**: I²C interface Time-out period selection

The I²C Time-Out clock source is $f_{SUB}/32$.

The I²C Time-Out time is ([SIMTOS5:SIMTOS0] + 1) × $(32/f_{SUB})$

I²C Bus Communication

Communication on the I²C bus requires four separate steps, a START signal, a slave device address transmission, a data transmission and finally a STOP signal. When a START signal is placed on the I²C bus, all devices on the bus will receive this signal and be notified of the imminent arrival of data on the bus. The first seven bits of the data will be the slave address with the first bit being the MSB. If the address of the slave device matches that of the transmitted address, the HAAS bit in the SIMC1 register will be set and an I²C interrupt will be generated. After entering the interrupt service routine, the slave device must first check the condition of the HAAS bit to determine whether the interrupt source originates from an address match or from the completion of an 8-bit data transfer. During a data transfer, note that after the 7-bit slave address has been transmitted, the following bit, which is the 8th bit, is the read/write bit whose value will be placed in the SRW bit. This bit will be checked by the slave device to determine whether to go into transmit or receive mode. Before any transfer of data to or from the I²C bus, the microcontroller must initialise the bus, the following are steps to achieve this:

- Step 1

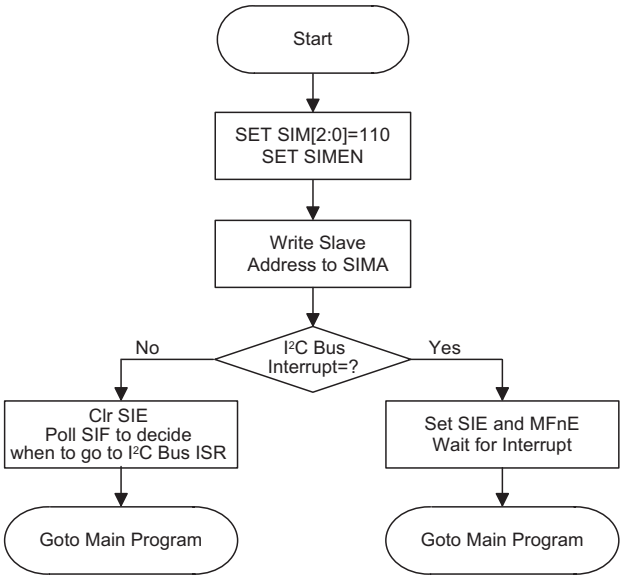
  Set the SIM2~SIM0 bits to "110" and the SIMEN bits to "1" in the SIMC0 register to enable the I²C bus.

- Step 2

  Write the slave address of the device to the I²C bus address register SIMA.

- Step 3

  Set the SIE and SIM Muti-Function interrupt enable bit of the interrupt control register to enable the SIM interrupt and Multi-function interrupt.



I²C Bus Initialisation Flow Chart

I²C Bus Start Signal

The START signal can only be generated by the master device connected to the I²C bus and not by the slave device. This START signal will be detected by all devices connected to the I²C bus. When detected, this indicates that the I²C bus is busy and therefore the HBB bit will be set. A START condition occurs when a high to low transition on the SDA line takes place when the SCL line remains high.

Slave Address

The transmission of a START signal by the master will be detected by all devices on the I²C bus. To determine which slave device the master wishes to communicate with, the address of the slave device will be sent out immediately following the START signal. All slave devices, after receiving this 7-bit address data, will compare it with their own 7-bit slave address. If the address sent out by the master matches the internal address of the microcontroller slave device, then an internal I²C bus interrupt signal will be generated. The next bit following the address, which is the 8th bit, defines the read/write status and will be saved to the SRW bit of the SIMC1 register. The slave device will then transmit an acknowledge bit, which is a low level, as the 9th bit. The slave device will also set the status flag HAAS when the addresses match.

As an I²C bus interrupt can come from two sources, when the program enters the interrupt subroutine, the HAAS bit should be examined to see whether the interrupt source has come from a matching slave address or from the completion of a data byte transfer. When a slave address is matched, the device must be placed in either the transmit mode and then write data to the SIMD register, or in the receive mode where it must implement a dummy read from the SIMD register to release the SCL line.

I²C Bus Read/Write Signal

The SRW bit in the SIMC1 register defines whether the slave device wishes to read data from the I²C bus or write data to the I²C bus. The slave device should examine this bit to determine if it is to be a transmitter or a receiver. If the SRW flag is "1" then this indicates that the master device wishes to read data from the I²C bus, therefore the slave device must be setup to send data to the I²C bus as a transmitter. If the SRW flag is "0" then this indicates that the master wishes to send data to the I²C bus, therefore the slave device must be setup to read data from the I²C bus as a receiver.

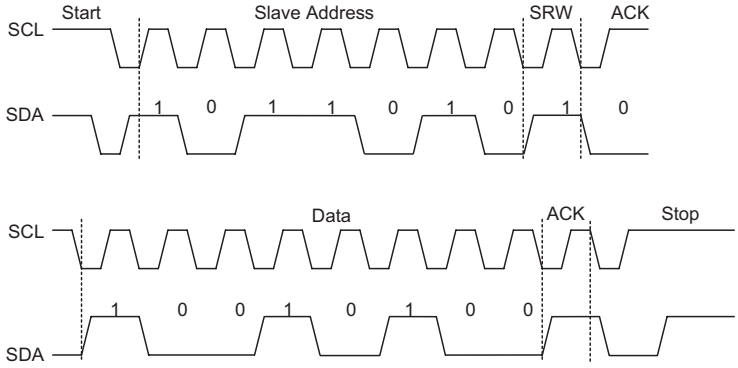
I²C Bus Slave Address Acknowledge Signal

After the master has transmitted a calling address, any slave device on the I²C bus, whose own internal address matches the calling address, must generate an acknowledge signal. The acknowledge signal will inform the master that a slave device has accepted its calling address. If no acknowledge signal is received by the master then a STOP signal must be transmitted by the master to end the communication. When the HAAS flag is high, the addresses have matched and the slave device must check the SRW flag to determine if it is to be a transmitter or a receiver. If the SRW flag is high, the slave device should be setup to be a transmitter so the HTX bit in the SIMC1 register should be set high. If the SRW flag is low, then the microcontroller slave device should be setup as a receiver and the HTX bit in the SIMC1 register should be cleared to zero.

I²C Bus Data and Acknowledge Signal

The transmitted data is 8-bits wide and is transmitted after the slave device has acknowledged receipt of its slave address. The order of serial bit transmission is the MSB first and the LSB last. After receipt of 8-bits of data, the receiver must transmit an acknowledge signal, level "0", before it can receive the next data byte. If the slave transmitter does not receive an acknowledge bit signal from the master receiver, then the slave transmitter will release the SDA line to allow the master to send a STOP signal to release the I²C Bus. The corresponding data will be stored in the SIMD register. If setup as a transmitter, the slave device must first write the data to be transmitted into the SIMD register. If setup as a receiver, the slave device must read the transmitted data from the SIMD register.

When the slave receiver receives the data byte, it must generate an acknowledge bit, known as TXAK, on the 9th clock. The slave device, which is setup as a transmitter will check the RXAK bit in the SIMC1 register to determine if it is to send another data byte, if not then it will release the SDA line and await the receipt of a STOP signal from the master.

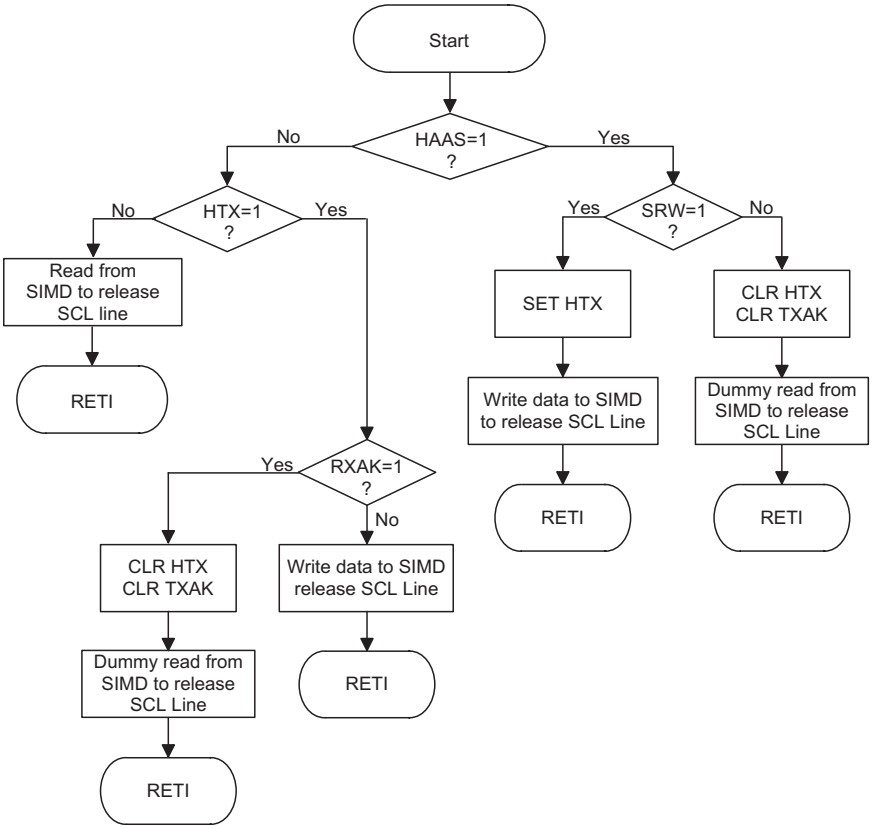


S=Start (1 bit)
SA=Slave Address (7 bits)
SR=SRW bit (1 bit)
M=Slave device send acknowledge bit (1 bit)
D=Data (8 bits)
A=ACK (RXAK bit for transmitter, TXAK bit for receiver 1 bit)
P=Stop (1 bit)

S	SA	SR	M	D	A	D	A	--------	S	SA	SR	M	D	A	D	A	--------	P

Note: When a slave address is matched, the device must be placed in either the transmit mode and then write data to the SIMD register, or in the receive mode where it must implement a dummy read from the SIMD register to release the SCL line.

I²C Communication Timing Diagram



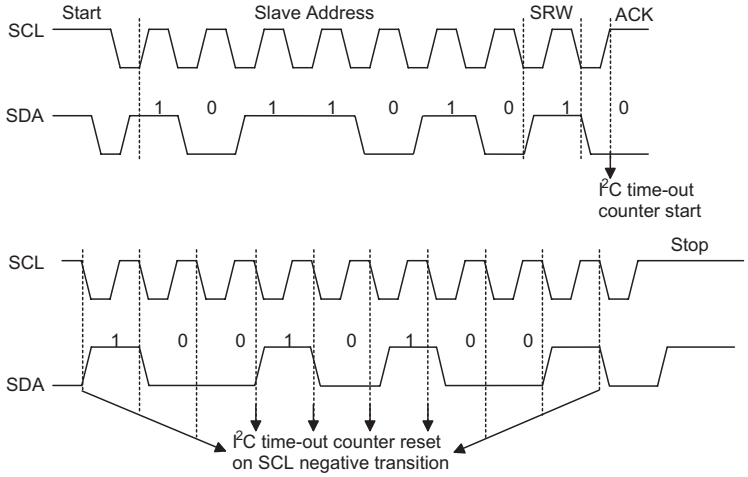
I²C Bus ISR Flow Chart

I²C Time Out function

In order to reduce the I²C lockup problem due to reception of erroneous clock sources, a time-out function is provided. If the clock source connected to the I²C bus is not received for a while, then the I²C circuitry and the SIMC1 register will be reset, the SIMTOF bit in the SIMTOC register will be set high after a certain time-out period. The Time Out function enable/disable and the time-out period are managed by the SIMTOC register.

- **I²C Time Out operation**

The time-out counter starts to count on an I²C bus "START" & "address match" condition, and is cleared by an SCL falling edge. Before the next SCL falling edge arrives, if the time elapsed is greater than the time-out period specified by the SIMTOC register, then a time-out condition will occur. The time-out function will stop when an I²C "STOP" condition occurs. There are 64 time-out period selections which can be selected using the SIMTOS0~SIMTOS5 bits in the SIMTOC register.



I²C Time-out Diagram

When an I²C time-out counter overflow occurs, the counter will stop and the SIMTOEN bit will be cleared to zero and the SIMTOF bit will be set high to indicate that a time-out condition has occurred. When an I²C time-out occurs, the I²C internal circuitry will be reset and the registers will be reset into the following condition:

Register	After I²C Time-out
SIMD, SIMA, SIMC0	No change
SIMC1	Reset to POR condition

I²C Registers after Time-out

UART Module Serial Interface with IR Carrier

UART Module Features

- Full-duplex, Universal Asynchronous Receiver and Transmitter (UART) communication
- 8 or 9 bits character length
- Even, odd or no parity options
- One or two stop bits
- Baud rate generator with 8-bit prescaler
- Parity, framing, noise and overrun error detection
- Support for interrupt on address detect (last character bit=1)
- Transmitter and receiver enabled independently
- 2-byte Deep FIFO Receive Data Buffer
- Transmit and Receive Multiple Interrupt Generation Sources:
  - Transmitter Empty
  - Transmitter Idle
  - Receiver Full
  - Receiver Overrun
  - Address Mode Detect
  - RX pin wake-up function

UART Module Overview

The embedded UART Module is full-duplex asynchronous serial communications UART interface that enables communication with external devices that contain a serial interface. The UART function has many features and can transmit and receive data serially by transferring a frame of data with eight or nine data bits per transmission as well as being able to detect errors when the data is overwritten or incorrectly framed. The UART function possesses its own internal interrupt which can be used to indicate when a reception occurs or when a transmission terminates.

UART External Pin Interfacing

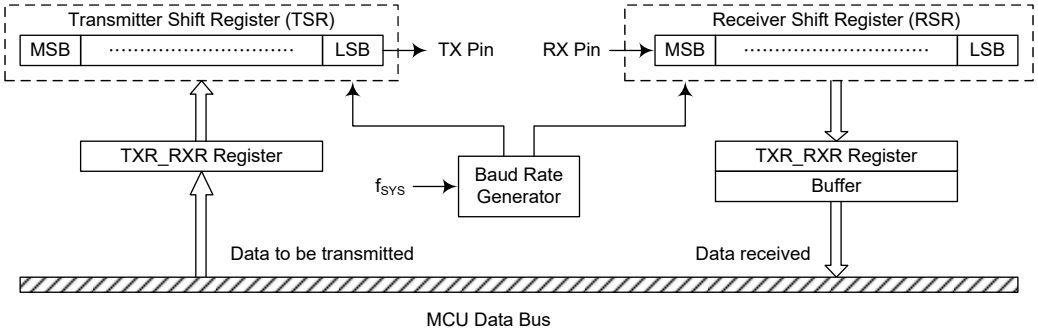
To communicate with an external serial interface, the internal UART has two external pins known as TX and RX. The TX pin is the UART transmitter pin, which can be used as a general purpose I/O or other pin-shared functional pin if the pin is not configured as a UART transmitter, which occurs when the TXEN bit in the UCR2 control register is equal to zero. Similarly, the RX pin is the UART receiver pin, which can also be used as a general purpose I/O or other pin-shared functional pin, if the pin is not configured as a receiver, which occurs if the RXEN bit in the UCR2 register is equal to zero. Along with the UARTEN bit, the TXEN and RXEN bits, if set, will automatically setup these I/O or other pin-shared functional pins to their respective TX output and RX input conditions and disable any pull-high resistor option which may exist on the RX pin.

UART Data Transfer Scheme

The block diagram shows the overall data transfer structure arrangement for the UART. The actual data to be transmitted from the MCU is first transferred to the TXR_RXR register by the application program. The data will then be transferred to the Transmit Shift Register from where it will be shifted out, LSB first, onto the TX pin at a rate controlled by the Baud Rate Generator. Only the TXR_RXR register is mapped onto the MCU Data Memory, the Transmit Shift Register is not mapped and is therefore inaccessible to the application program.

Data to be received by the UART is accepted on the external RX pin, from where it is shifted in, LSB first, to the Receiver Shift Register at a rate controlled by the Baud Rate Generator. When the shift register is full, the data will then be transferred from the shift register to the internal TXR_RXR register, where it is buffered and can be manipulated by the application program. Only the TXR_RXR register is mapped onto the MCU Data Memory, the Receiver Shift Register is not mapped and is therefore inaccessible to the application program.

It should be noted that the actual register for data transmission and reception, although referred to in the text, only exists as a single shared register in the Data Memory. This shared register known as the TXR_RXR register is used for both data transmission and data reception.



UART Data Transfer Scheme

UART Status and Control Registers

There are five control registers associated with the UART function. The USR, UCR1 and UCR2 registers control the overall function of the UART, while the BRG register controls the Baud rate. The actual data to be transmitted and received on the serial interface is managed through the TXR_RXR data register.

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
USR	PERR	NF	FERR	OERR	RIDLE	RXIF	TIDLE	TXIF
UCR1	UARTEN	BNO	PREN	PRT	STOPS	TXBRK	RX8	TX8
UCR2	TXEN	RXEN	BRGH	ADDEN	WAKE	RIE	TIIE	TEIE
TXR_RXR	TXRX7	TXRX6	TXRX5	TXRX4	TXRX3	TXRX2	TXRX1	TXRX0
BRG	BRG7	BRG6	BRG5	BRG4	BRG3	BRG2	BRG1	BRG0

UART Register Summary

• USR Register

The USR register is the status register for the UART, which can be read by the program to determine the present status of the UART. All flags within the USR register are read only. Further explanation on each of the flags is given below:

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	PERR	NF	FERR	OERR	RIDLE	RXIF	TIDLE	TXIF
R/W	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
POR	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	1

Bit 7 **PERR**: Parity error flag
0: No parity error is detected
1: Parity error is detected

The PERR flag is the parity error flag. When this read only flag is "0", it indicates a parity error has not been detected. When the flag is "1", it indicates that the parity of the received word is incorrect. This error flag is applicable only if Parity mode (odd or even) is selected. The flag can also be cleared by a software sequence which involves a read to the status register USR followed by an access to the TXR_RXR data register.

Bit 6 **NF**: Noise flag
0: No noise is detected
1: Noise is detected

The NF flag is the noise flag. When this read only flag is "0", it indicates no noise condition. When the flag is "1", it indicates that the UART has detected noise on the receiver input. The NF flag is set during the same cycle as the RXIF flag but will not be set in the case of as overrun. The NF flag can be cleared by a software sequence which will involve a read to the status register USR followed by an access to the TXR_RXR data register.

Bit 5 **FERR**: Framing error flag
0: No framing error is detected
1: Framing error is detected

The FERR flag is the framing error flag. When this read only flag is "0", it indicates that there is no framing error. When the flag is "1", it indicates that a framing error has been detected for the current character. The flag can also be cleared by a software sequence which will involve a read to the status register USR followed by an access to the TXR_RXR data register.

Bit 4 **OERR**: Overrun error flag
0: No overrun error is detected
1: Overrun error is detected

The OERR flag is the overrun error flag which indicates when the receiver buffer has overflowed. When this read only flag is "0", it indicates that there is no overrun error. When the flag is "1", it indicates that an overrun error occurs which will inhibit further transfers to the TXR_RXR receive data register. The flag is cleared by a software sequence, which is a read to the status register USR followed by an access to the TXR_RXR data register.

Bit 3 **RIDLE**: Receiver status
0: Data reception is in progress (data being received)
1: No data reception is in progress (receiver is idle)

The RIDLE flag is the receiver status flag. When this read only flag is "0", it indicates that the receiver is between the initial detection of the start bit and the completion of the stop bit. When the flag is "1", it indicates that the receiver is idle. Between the completion of the stop bit and the detection of the next start bit, the RIDLE bit is "1" indicating that the UART receiver is idle and the RX pin stays in logic high condition.

Bit 2 **RXIF**: Receive TXR_RXR data register status
0: TXR_RXR data register is empty
1: TXR_RXR data register has available data

The RXIF flag is the receive data register status flag. When this read only flag is "0", it indicates that the TXR_RXR read data register is empty. When the flag is "1", it indicates that the TXR_RXR read data register contains new data. When the contents of the shift register are transferred to the TXR_RXR register, an interrupt is generated if RIE=1 in the UCR2 register. If one or more errors are detected in the received word, the appropriate receive-related flags NF, FERR, and/or PERR are set within the same clock cycle. The RXIF flag is cleared when the USR register is read with RXIF set, followed by a read from the TXR_RXR register, and if the TXR_RXR register has no data available.

Bit 1 **TIDLE**: Transmission idle
0: Data transmission is in progress (data being transmitted)
1: No data transmission is in progress (transmitter is idle)

The TIDLE flag is known as the transmission complete flag. When this read only flag is "0", it indicates that a transmission is in progress. This flag will be set high when the TXIF flag is "1" and when there is no transmit data or break character being transmitted. When TIDLE is equal to "1", the TX pin becomes idle with the pin state in logic high condition. The TIDLE flag is cleared by reading the USR register with TIDLE set and then writing to the TXR_RXR register. The flag is not generated when a data character or a break is queued and ready to be sent.

Bit 0 **TXIF**: Transmit TXR_RXR data register status
0: Character is not transferred to the transmit shift register
1: Character has transferred to the transmit shift register (TXR_RXR data register is empty)

The TXIF flag is the transmit data register empty flag. When this read only flag is "0", it indicates that the character is not transferred to the transmitter shift register. When the flag is "1", it indicates that the transmitter shift register has received a character from the TXR_RXR data register. The TXIF flag is cleared by reading the UART status register (USR) with TXIF set and then writing to the TXR_RXR data register. Note that when the TXEN bit is set, the TXIF flag bit will also be set since the transmit data register is not yet full.

• UCR1 Register

The UCR1 register together with the UCR2 register are the two UART control registers that are used to set the various options for the UART function, such as overall on/off control, parity control, data transfer bit length etc. Further explanation on each of the bits is given below:

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	UARTEN	BNO	PREN	PRT	STOPS	TXBRK	RX8	TX8
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R	W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	x	0

"x" unknown

Bit 7 **UARTEN**: UART function enable control
0: Disable UART. TX and RX pins are used as I/O or other pin-shared functional pins
1: Enable UART. TX and RX pins function as UART pins

The UARTEN bit is the UART enable bit. When this bit is equal to "0", the UART will be disabled and the RX pin as well as the TX pin will be as General Purpose I/O or other pin-shared functional pins. When the bit is equal to "1", the UART will be enabled and the TX and RX pins will function as defined by the TXEN and RXEN enable control bits.

When the UART is disabled, it will empty the buffer so any character remaining in the buffer will be discarded. In addition, the value of the baud rate counter will be reset. If the UART is disabled, all error and status flags will be reset. Also the TXEN, RXEN, TXBRK, RXIF, OERR, FERR, PERR and NF bits will be cleared, while the TIDLE, TXIF and RIDLE bits will be set. Other control bits in UCR1, UCR2 and BRG registers will remain unaffected. If the UART is active and the UARTEN bit is cleared, all pending transmissions and receptions will be terminated and the module will be reset as defined above. When the UART is re-enabled, it will restart in the same configuration.

Bit 6 **BNO**: Number of data transfer bits selection
0: 8-bit data transfer
1: 9-bit data transfer

This bit is used to select the data length format, which can have a choice of either 8-bit or 9-bit format. When this bit is equal to "1", a 9-bit data length format will be selected. If the bit is equal to "0", then an 8-bit data length format will be selected. If 9-bit data length format is selected, then bits RX8 and TX8 will be used to store the 9th bit of the received and transmitted data respectively.

Bit 5 **PREN**: Parity function enable control
0: Parity function is disabled
1: Parity function is enabled
This is the parity enable bit. When this bit is equal to "1", the parity function will be enabled. If the bit is equal to "0", then the parity function will be disabled. Replace the most significant bit position with a parity bit.

Bit 4 **PRT**: Parity type selection bit
0: Even parity for parity generator
1: Odd parity for parity generator
This bit is the parity type selection bit. When this bit is equal to "1", odd parity type will be selected. If the bit is equal to "0", then even parity type will be selected.

Bit 3 **STOPS**: Number of Stop bits selection
0: One stop bit format is used
1: Two stop bits format is used
This bit determines if one or two stop bits are to be used. When this bit is equal to "1", two stop bits are used. If this bit is equal to "0", then only one stop bit is used.

Bit 2 **TXBRK**: Transmit break character
0: No break character is transmitted
1: Break characters transmit
The TXBRK bit is the Transmit Break Character bit. When this bit is "0", there are no break characters and the TX pin operates normally. When the bit is "1", there are transmit break characters and the transmitter will send logic zeros. When this bit is equal to "1", after the buffered data has been transmitted, the transmitter output is held low for a minimum of a 13-bit length and until the TXBRK bit is reset.

Bit 1 **RX8**: Receive data bit 8 for 9-bit data transfer format (read only)
This bit is only used if 9-bit data transfers are used, in which case this bit location will store the 9th bit of the received data known as RX8. The BNO bit is used to determine whether data transfers are in 8-bit or 9-bit format.

Bit 0 **TX8**: Transmit data bit 8 for 9-bit data transfer format (write only)
This bit is only used if 9-bit data transfers are used, in which case this bit location will store the 9th bit of the transmitted data known as TX8. The BNO bit is used to determine whether data transfers are in 8-bit or 9-bit format.

• UCR2 Register

The UCR2 register is the second of the two UART control registers and serves several purposes. One of its main functions is to control the basic enable/disable operation of the UART Transmitter and Receiver as well as enabling the various UART interrupt sources. The register also serves to control the baud rate speed, receiver wake-up enable and the address detect enable. Further explanation on each of the bits is given below:

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	TXEN	RXEN	BRGH	ADDEN	WAKE	RIE	TIIE	TEIE
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7 **TXEN**: UART Transmitter enabled control
0: UART transmitter is disabled
1: UART transmitter is enabled
The bit named TXEN is the Transmitter Enable Bit. When this bit is equal to "0", the transmitter will be disabled with any pending data transmissions being aborted. In addition the buffers will be reset. In this situation the TX pin will be used as an I/O or other pin-shared functional pin.
If the TXEN bit is equal to "1" and the UARTEN bit is also equal to "1", the transmitter will be enabled and the TX pin will be controlled by the UART. Clearing the TXEN bit during a transmission will cause the data transmission to be aborted and will reset

the transmitter. If this situation occurs, the TX pin will be used as an I/O or other pin-shared functional pin.

Bit 6 **RXEN**: UART Receiver enabled control
0: UART receiver is disabled
1: UART receiver is enabled

The bit named RXEN is the Receiver Enable Bit. When this bit is equal to "0", the receiver will be disabled with any pending data receptions being aborted. In addition the receive buffers will be reset. In this situation the RX pin will be used as an I/O or other pin-shared functional pin. If the RXEN bit is equal to "1" and the UARTEN bit is also equal to "1", the receiver will be enabled and the RX pin will be controlled by the UART. Clearing the RXEN bit during a reception will cause the data reception to be aborted and will reset the receiver. If this situation occurs, the RX pin will be used as an I/O or other pin-shared functional pin.

Bit 5 **BRGH**: Baud Rate speed selection
0: Low speed baud rate
1: High speed baud rate

The bit named BRGH selects the high or low speed mode of the Baud Rate Generator. This bit, together with the value placed in the baud rate register BRG, controls the Baud Rate of the UART. If this bit is equal to "1", the high speed mode is selected. If the bit is equal to "0", the low speed mode is selected.

Bit 4 **ADDEN**: Address detect function enable control
0: Address detect function is disabled
1: Address detect function is enabled

The bit named ADDEN is the address detect function enable control bit. When this bit is equal to "1", the address detect function is enabled. When it occurs, if the 8th bit, which corresponds to RX7 if BNO=0 or the 9th bit, which corresponds to RX8 if BNO=1, has a value of "1", then the received word will be identified as an address, rather than data. If the corresponding interrupt is enabled, an interrupt request will be generated each time the received word has the address bit set, which is the 8th or 9th bit depending on the value of BNO. If the address bit known as the 8th or 9th bit of the received word is "0" with the address detect function being enabled, an interrupt will not be generated and the received data will be discarded.

Bit 3 **WAKE**: RX pin falling edge wake-up function enable control
0: RX pin wake-up function is disabled
1: RX pin wake-up function is enabled

The bit enables or disables the receiver wake-up function. If this bit is equal to 1 and the device is in IDLE0 or SLEEP mode, a falling edge on the RX pin will wake up the device. If this bit is equal to 0 and the device is in IDLE or SLEEP mode, any edge transitions on the RX pin will not wake up the device.

Bit 2 **RIE**: Receiver interrupt enable control
0: Receiver related interrupt is disabled
1: Receiver related interrupt is enabled

This bit enables or disables the receiver interrupt. If this bit is equal to "1" and when the receiver overrun flag OERR or receive data available flag RXIF is set, the UART interrupt request flag will be set. If this bit is equal to "0", the UART interrupt request flag will not be influenced by the condition of the OERR or RXIF flags.

Bit 1 **TIIE**: Transmitter Idle interrupt enable control
0: Transmitter idle interrupt is disabled
1: Transmitter idle interrupt is enabled

This bit enables or disables the transmitter idle interrupt. If this bit is equal to "1" and when the transmitter idle flag TIDLE is set, due to a transmitter idle condition, the UART interrupt request flag will be set. If this bit is equal to "0", the UART interrupt request flag will not be influenced by the condition of the TIDLE flag.

Bit 0 **TEIE**: Transmitter Empty interrupt enable control
0: Transmitter empty interrupt is disabled
1: Transmitter empty interrupt is enabled
This bit enables or disables the transmitter empty interrupt. If this bit is equal to "1" and when the transmitter empty flag TXIF is set, due to a transmitter empty condition, the UART interrupt request flag will be set. If this bit is equal to "0", the UART interrupt request flag will not be influenced by the condition of the TXIF flag.

• **TXR_RXR Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	TXRX7	TXRX6	TXRX5	TXRX4	TXRX3	TXRX2	TXRX1	TXRX0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

"x" unknown

Bit 7~0 **TXRX7~TXRX0**: UART Transmit/Receive Data bit 7 ~ bit 0

• **BRG Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	BRG7	BRG6	BRG5	BRG4	BRG3	BRG2	BRG1	BRG0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

"x" unknown

Bit 7~0 **BRG7~BRG0**: Baud Rate values
By programming the BRGH bit in UCR2 Register which allows selection of the related formula described above and programming the required value in the BRG register, the required baud rate can be setup.
Note: Baud rate= f_{SYS} / [64 × (N+1)] if BRGH=0.
Baud rate= f_{SYS} / [16 × (N+1)] if BRGH=1.

Baud Rate Generator

To setup the speed of the serial data communication, the UART function contains its own dedicated baud rate generator. The baud rate is controlled by its own internal free running 8-bit timer, the period of which is determined by two factors. The first of these is the value placed in the baud rate register BRG and the second is the value of the BRGH bit with the control register UCR2. The BRGH bit decides if the baud rate generator is to be used in a high speed mode or low speed mode, which in turn determines the formula that is used to calculate the baud rate. The value N in the BRG register which is used in the following baud rate calculation formula determines the division factor. Note that N is the decimal value placed in the BRG register and has a range of between 0 and 255.

UCR2 BRGH Bit	0	1
Baud Rate (BR)	f_{SYS} / [64 (N+1)]	f_{SYS} / [16 (N+1)]

By programming the BRGH bit which allows selection of the related formula and programming the required value in the BRG register, the required baud rate can be setup. Note that because the actual baud rate is determined using a discrete value, N, placed in the BRG register, there will be an error associated between the actual and requested value. The following example shows how the BRG register value N and the error value can be calculated.

Calculating the Register and Error Values

For a clock frequency of 4MHz, and with BRGH cleared to zero determine the BRG register value N, the actual baud rate and the error value for a desired baud rate of 4800.

From the above table the desired baud rate BR = f_{SYS} / [64 (N+1)]

Re-arranging this equation gives N = [f_{SYS} / (BR×64)] - 1

Giving a value for N = [4000000 / (4800×64)] - 1 = 12.0208

To obtain the closest value, a decimal value of 12 should be placed into the BRG register. This gives an actual or calculated baud rate value of BR = 4000000 / [64× (12+1)] = 4808

Therefore the error is equal to (4808 - 4800) / 4800 = 0.16%

The following tables show actual values of baud rate and error values for the two values of BRGH.

Baud Rate K/BPS	Baud Rates for BRGH=0								
	f_{SYS}=4MHz			f_{SYS}=3.579545MHz			f_{SYS}=7.159MHz		
	BRG	Kbaud	Error (%)	BRG	Kbaud	Error (%)	BRG	Kbaud	Error (%)
0.3	207	0.300	0.16	185	0.300	0.00	—	—	—
1.2	51	1.202	0.16	46	1.190	-0.83	92	1.203	0.23
2.4	25	2.404	0.16	22	2.432	1.32	46	2.380	-0.83
4.8	12	4.808	0.16	11	4.661	-2.90	22	4.863	1.32
9.6	6	8.929	-6.99	5	9.321	-2.90	11	9.332	-2.90
19.2	2	20.833	8.51	2	18.643	-2.90	5	18.643	-2.90
38.4	—	—	—	—	—	—	2	32.286	-2.90
57.6	0	62.500	8.51	0	55.930	-2.90	1	55.930	-2.90
115.2	—	—	—	—	—	—	0	111.859	-2.90

Baud Rates and Error Values for BRGH = 0

Baud Rate K/BPS	Baud Rates for BRGH=1								
	f_{SYS}=4MHz			f_{SYS}=3.579545MHz			f_{SYS}=7.159MHz		
	BRG	Kbaud	Error (%)	BRG	Kbaud	Error (%)	BRG	Kbaud	Error (%)
0.3	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
1.2	207	1.202	0.16	185	1.203	0.23	—	—	—
2.4	103	2.404	0.16	92	2.406	0.23	185	2.406	0.23
4.8	51	4.808	0.16	46	4.76	-0.83	92	4.811	0.23
9.6	25	9.615	0.16	22	9.727	1.32	46	9.520	-0.83
19.2	12	19.231	0.16	11	18.643	-2.90	22	19.454	1.32
38.4	6	35.714	-6.99	5	37.286	-2.90	11	37.286	-2.90
57.6	3	62.5	8.51	3	55.930	-2.90	7	55.930	-2.90
115.2	1	125	8.51	1	111.86	-2.90	3	111.86	-2.90
250	0	250	0	—	—	—	—	—	—

Baud Rates and Error Values for BRGH = 1

UART Setup and Control

For data transfer, the UART function utilizes a non-return-to-zero, more commonly known as NRZ, format. This is composed of one start bit, eight or nine data bits, and one or two stop bits. Parity is supported by the UART hardware, and can be setup to be even, odd or no parity. For the most common data format, 8 data bits along with no parity and one stop bit, denoted as 8, N, 1, is used as the default setting, which is the setting at power-on. The number of data bits and stop bits, along with the parity, are setup by programming the corresponding BNO, PRT, PREN, and STOPS bits in the UCR1 register. The baud rate used to transmit and receive data is setup using the internal

8-bit baud rate generator, while the data is transmitted and received LSB first. Although the UART transmitter and receiver are functionally independent, they both use the same data format and baud rate. In all cases stop bits will be used for data transmission.

Enabling/Disabling the UART

The basic on/off function of the internal UART function is controlled using the UARTEN bit in the UCR1 register. If the UARTEN, TXEN and RXEN bits are set, then these two UART pins will act as normal TX output pin and RX input pin respectively. If no data is being transmitted on the TX pin, then it will default to a logic high value.

Clearing the UARTEN bit will disable the TX and RX pins and allow these two pins to be used as normal I/O or other pin-shared functional pins. When the UART function is disabled the buffer will be reset to an empty condition, at the same time discarding any remaining residual data. Disabling the UART will also reset the error and status flags with bits TXEN, RXEN, TXBRK, RXIF, OERR, FERR, PERR and NF being cleared while bits TIDLE, TXIF and RIDLE will be set. The remaining control bits in the UCR1, UCR2 and BRG registers will remain unaffected. If the UARTEN bit in the UCR1 register is cleared while the UART is active, then all pending transmissions and receptions will be immediately suspended and the UART will be reset to a condition as defined above. If the UART is then subsequently re-enabled, it will restart again in the same configuration.

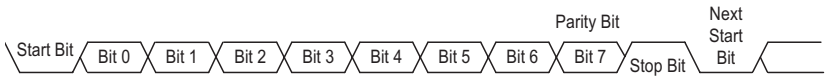
Data, Parity and Stop Bit Selection

The format of the data to be transferred is composed of various factors such as data bit length, parity on/off, parity type, address bits and the number of stop bits. These factors are determined by the setup of various bits within the UCR1 register. The BNO bit controls the number of data bits which can be set to either 8 or 9, the PRT bit controls the choice of odd or even parity, the PREN bit controls the parity on/off function and the STOPS bit decides whether one or two stop bits are to be used. The following table shows various formats for data transmission. The address bit identifies the frame as an address character. The number of stop bits, which can be either one or two, is independent of the data length.

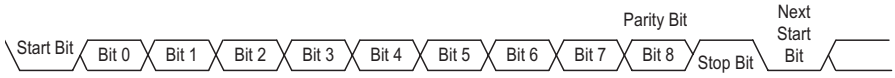
Start Bit	Data Bits	Address Bits	Parity Bits	Stop Bit
Example of 8-bit Data Formats				
1	8	0	0	1
1	7	0	1	1
1	7	1	0	1
Example of 9-bit Data Formats				
1	9	0	0	1
1	8	0	1	1
1	8	1	0	1

Transmitter Receiver Data Format

The following diagram shows the transmit and receive waveforms for both 8-bit and 9-bit data formats.



8-Bit Data Format



9-Bit Data Format

UART Transmitter

Data word lengths of either 8 or 9 bits can be selected by programming the BNO bit in the UCR1 register. When BNO bit is set, the word length will be set to 9 bits. In this case the 9th bit, which is the MSB, needs to be stored in the TX8 bit in the UCR1 register. At the transmitter core lies the Transmitter Shift Register, more commonly known as the TSR, whose data is obtained from the transmit data register, which is known as the TXR_RXR register. The data to be transmitted is loaded into this TXR_RXR register by the application program. The TSR register is not written to with new data until the stop bit from the previous transmission has been sent out. As soon as this stop bit has been transmitted, the TSR can then be loaded with new data from the TXR_RXR register, if it is available. It should be noted that the TSR register, unlike many other registers, is not directly mapped into the Data Memory area and as such is not available to the application program for direct read/write operations. An actual transmission of data will normally be enabled when the TXEN bit is set, but the data will not be transmitted until the TXR_RXR register has been loaded with data and the baud rate generator has defined a shift clock source. However, the transmission can also be initiated by first loading data into the TXR_RXR register, after which the TXEN bit can be set. When a transmission of data begins, the TSR is normally empty, in which case a transfer to the TXR_RXR register will result in an immediate transfer to the TSR. If during a transmission the TXEN bit is cleared, the transmission will immediately cease and the transmitter will be reset. The TX output pin will then return to the I/O or other pin-shared function.

Transmitting Data

When the UART is transmitting data, the data is shifted on the TX pin from the shift register, with the least significant bit first. In the transmit mode, the TXR_RXR register forms a buffer between the internal bus and the transmitter shift register. It should be noted that if 9-bit data format has been selected, then the MSB will be taken from the TX8 bit in the UCR1 register. The steps to initiate a data transfer can be summarized as follows:

- Make the correct selection of the BNO, PRT, PREN and STOPS bits to define the required word length, parity type and number of stop bits.
- Setup the BRG register to select the desired baud rate.
- Set the TXEN bit to ensure that the TX pin is used as a UART transmitter pin.
- Access the USR register and write the data that is to be transmitted into the TXR_RXR register. Note that this step will clear the TXIF bit.
- This sequence of events can now be repeated to send additional data.

It should be noted that when TXIF=0, data will be inhibited from being written to the TXR_RXR register. Clearing the TXIF flag is always achieved using the following software sequence:

1. A USR register access
2. A TXR_RXR register write execution

The read-only TXIF flag is set by the UART hardware and if set indicates that the TXR_RXR register is empty and that other data can now be written into the TXR_RXR register without overwriting the previous data. If the TEIE bit is set then the TXIF flag will generate an interrupt.

During a data transmission, a write instruction to the TXR_RXR register will place the data into the TXR_RXR register, which will be copied to the shift register at the end of the present transmission. When there is no data transmission in progress, a write instruction to the TXR_RXR register will place the data directly into the shift register, resulting in the commencement of data transmission, and the TXIF bit being immediately set. When a frame transmission is complete, which happens

after stop bits are sent or after the break frame, the TIDLE bit will be set. To clear the TIDLE bit the following software sequence is used:

1. A USR register access

2. A TXR_RXR register write execution

Note that both the TXIF and TIDLE bits are cleared by the same software sequence.

Transmit Break

If the TXBRK bit is set then break characters will be sent on the next transmission. Break character transmission consists of a start bit, followed by 13×N '0' bits, where N=1, 2, etc. If a break character is to be transmitted then the TXBRK bit must be first set by the application program, and then cleared to generate the stop bits. Transmitting a break character will not generate a transmit interrupt. Note that a break condition length is at least 13 bits long. If the TXBRK bit is continually kept at a logic high level then the transmitter circuitry will transmit continuous break characters. After the application program has cleared the TXBRK bit, the transmitter will finish transmitting the last break character and subsequently send out one or two stop bits. The automatic logic highs at the end of the last break character will ensure that the start bit of the next frame is recognized.

UART Receiver

The UART is capable of receiving word lengths of either 8 or 9 bits. If the BNO bit is set, the word length will be set to 9 bits with the MSB being stored in the RX8 bit of the UCR1 register. At the receiver core lies the Receive Serial Shift Register, commonly known as the RSR. The data which is received on the RX external input pin is sent to the data recovery block. The data recovery block operating speed is 16 times that of the baud rate, while the main receive serial shifter operates at the baud rate. After the RX pin is sampled for the stop bit, the received data in RSR is transferred to the receive data register, if the register is empty. The data which is received on the external RX input pin is sampled three times by a majority detect circuit to determine the logic level that has been placed onto the RX pin. It should be noted that the RSR register, unlike many other registers, is not directly mapped into the Data Memory area and as such is not available to the application program for direct read/write operations.

Receiving Data

When the UART receiver is receiving data, the data is serially shifted in on the external RX input pin, LSB first. In the read mode, the TXR_RXR register forms a buffer between the internal bus and the receiver shift register. The TXR_RXR register is a two byte deep FIFO data buffer, where two bytes can be held in the FIFO while a third byte can continue to be received. Note that the application program must ensure that the data is read from TXR_RXR before the third byte has been completely shifted in, otherwise this third byte will be discarded and an overrun error OERR will be subsequently indicated. The steps to initiate a data transfer can be summarized as follows:

- Make the correct selection of BNO, PRT, PREN and STOPS bits to define the word length, parity type and number of stop bits.
- Setup the BRG register to select the desired baud rate.
- Set the RXEN bit to ensure that the RX pin is used as a UART receiver pin.

At this point the receiver will be enabled which will begin to look for a start bit.

When a character is received the following sequence of events will occur:

- The RXIF bit in the USR register will be set when TXR_RXR register has data available; at least one more character can be read.

- When the contents of the shift register have been transferred to the TXR_RXR register, then if the RIE bit is set, an interrupt will be generated.
- If during reception, a frame error, noise error, parity error, or an overrun error has been detected, then the error flags can be set.

The RXIF bit can be cleared using the following software sequence:

1. A USR register access
2. A TXR_RXR register read execution

Receive Break

Any break character received by the UART will be managed as a framing error. The receiver will count and expect a certain number of bit times as specified by the values programmed into the BNO and STOPS bits. If the break is much longer than 13 bit times, the reception will be considered as complete after the number of bit times specified by BNO and STOPS. The RXIF bit is set, FERR is set, zeros are loaded into the receive data register, interrupts are generated if appropriate and the RIDLE bit is set. If a long break signal has been detected and the receiver has received a start bit, the data bits and the invalid stop bit, which sets the FERR flag, the receiver must wait for a valid stop bit before looking for the next start bit. The receiver will not make the assumption that the break condition on the line is the next start bit. A break is regarded as a character that contains only zeros with the FERR flag set. The break character will be loaded into the buffer and no further data will be received until stop bits are received. It should be noted that the RIDLE read only flag will go high when the stop bits have not yet been received. The reception of a break character on the UART registers will result in the following:

- The framing error flag, FERR, will be set.
- The receive data register, TXR_RXR, will be cleared.
- The OERR, NF, PERR, RIDLE or RXIF flags will possibly be set.

Idle Status

When the receiver is reading data, which means it will be in between the detection of a start bit and the reading of a stop bit, the receiver status flag in the USR register, otherwise known as the RIDLE flag, will have a zero value. In between the reception of a stop bit and the detection of the next start bit, the RIDLE flag will have a high value, which indicates the receiver is in an idle condition.

Receiver Interrupt

The read only receive interrupt flag RXIF in the USR register is set by an edge generated by the receiver. An interrupt is generated if RIE=1, when a word is transferred from the Receive Shift Register, RSR, to the Receive Data Register, TXR_RXR. An overrun error can also generate an interrupt if RIE=1.

Managing Receiver Errors

Several types of reception errors can occur within the UART module, the following section describes the various types and how they are managed by the UART.

Overrun Error – OERR Flag

The TXR_RXR register is composed of a two byte deep FIFO data buffer, where two bytes can be held in the FIFO register, while a third byte can continue to be received. Before this third byte has been entirely shifted in, the data should be read from the TXR_RXR register. If this is not done, the overrun error flag OERR will be consequently indicated.

In the event of an overrun error occurring, the following will happen:

- The OERR flag in the USR register will be set.
- The TXR_RXR contents will not be lost.
- The shift register will be overwritten.
- An interrupt will be generated if the RIE bit is set.

The OERR flag can be cleared by an access to the USR register followed by a read to the TXR_RXR register.

Noise Error – NF Flag

Over-sampling is used for data recovery to identify valid incoming data and noise. If noise is detected within a frame the following will occur:

- The read only noise flag, NF, in the USR register will be set on the rising edge of the RXIF bit.
- Data will be transferred from the Shift register to the TXR_RXR register.
- No interrupt will be generated. However this bit rises at the same time as the RXIF bit which itself generates an interrupt.

Note that the NF flag is reset by a USR register read operation followed by a TXR_RXR register read operation.

Framing Error – FERR Flag

The read only framing error flag, FERR, in the USR register, is set if a zero is detected instead of stop bits. If two stop bits are selected, both stop bits must be high; otherwise the FERR flag will be set. The FERR flag is buffered along with the received data and is cleared on any reset.

Parity Error – PERR Flag

The read only parity error flag, PERR, in the USR register, is set if the parity of the received word is incorrect. This error flag is only applicable if the parity is enabled, PREN = 1, and if the parity type, odd or even is selected. The read only PERR flag is buffered along with the received data bytes. It is cleared on any reset. It should be noted that the FERR and PERR flags are buffered along with the corresponding word and should be read before reading the data word.

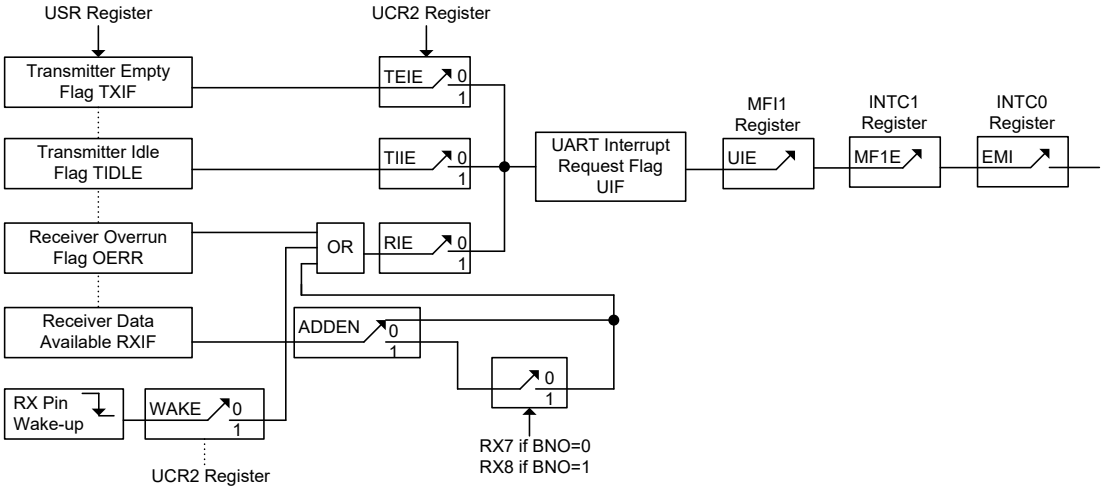
UART Module Interrupt Structure

Several individual UART conditions can generate a UART interrupt. When these conditions exist, a low pulse will be generated to get the attention of the microcontroller. These conditions are a transmitter data register empty, transmitter idle, receiver data available, receiver overrun, address detect and an RX pin wake-up. When any of these conditions are created, if the global interrupt enable bit, multi-function interrupt enable bit and its corresponding interrupt control bit are enabled and the stack is not full, the program will jump to its corresponding interrupt vector where it can be serviced before returning to the main program. Four of these conditions have the corresponding USR register flags which will generate a UART interrupt if its associated interrupt enable control bit in the UCR2 register is set. The two transmitter interrupt conditions have their own corresponding enable control bits, while the two receiver interrupt conditions have a shared enable control bit. These enable bits can be used to mask out individual UART interrupt sources.

The address detect condition, which is also a UART interrupt source, does not have an associated flag, but will generate a UART interrupt when an address detect condition occurs if its function is enabled by setting the ADDEN bit in the UCR2 register. An RX pin wake-up, which is also a UART interrupt source, does not have an associated flag, but will generate a UART interrupt if the microcontroller is woken up from IDLE0 or SLEEP mode by a falling edge on the RX pin, if the

WAKE and RIE bits in the UCR2 register are set. Note that in the event of an RX wake-up interrupt occurring, there will be a certain period of delay, commonly known as the System Start-up Time, for the oscillator to restart and stabilize before the system resumes normal operation.

Note that the USR register flags are read only and cannot be cleared or set by the application program, neither will they be cleared when the program jumps to the corresponding interrupt servicing routine, as is the case for some of the other interrupts. The flags will be cleared automatically when certain actions are taken by the UART, the details of which are given in the UART register section. The overall UART interrupt can be disabled or enabled by the related interrupt enable control bits in the interrupt control registers of the microcontroller to decide whether the interrupt requested by the UART module is masked out or allowed.



UART Interrupt Scheme

Address Detect Mode

Setting the Address Detect Mode bit, ADDEN, in the UCR2 register, enables this special mode. If this bit is enabled then an additional qualifier will be placed on the generation of a Receiver Data Available interrupt, which is requested by the RXIF flag. If the ADDEN bit is enabled, then when data is available, an interrupt will only be generated, if the highest received bit has a high value. Note that the MFnE, UIE and EMI interrupt enable bits must also be enabled for correct interrupt generation. This highest address bit is the 9th bit if BNO=1 or the 8th bit if BNO=0. If this bit is high, then the received word will be defined as an address rather than data. A Data Available interrupt will be generated every time the last bit of the received word is set. If the ADDEN bit is not enabled, then a Receiver Data Available interrupt will be generated each time the RXIF flag is set, irrespective of the data last bit status. The address detect mode and parity enable are mutually exclusive functions. Therefore if the address detect mode is enabled, then to ensure correct operation, the parity function should be disabled by resetting the parity enable bit to zero.

ADDEN	Bit 9 if BNO=1 Bit 8 if BNO=0	UART Interrupt Generated
0	0	√
	1	√
1	0	×
	1	√

ADDEN Bit Function

UART Module Power Down and Wake-up

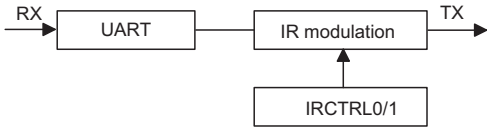
When the MCU system clock is switched off, the UART will cease to function. If the MCU executes the "HALT" instruction and switches off the system clock while a transmission is still in progress, then the transmission will be paused until the UART clock source derived from the microcontroller is activated. In a similar way, if the MCU executes the "HALT" instruction and switches off the system clock while receiving data, then the reception of data will likewise be paused. When the MCU enters the IDLE or SLEEP Mode, note that the USR, UCR1, UCR2, transmit and receive registers, as well as the BRG register will not be affected. It is recommended to make sure first that the UART data transmission or reception has been finished before the microcontroller enters the IDLE or SLEEP mode.

The UART function contains a receiver RX pin wake-up function, which is enabled or disabled by the WAKE bit in the UCR2 register. If this bit, along with the UART enable bit, UARTEN, the receiver enable bit, RXEN and the receiver interrupt bit, RIE, are all set before the MCU enters the IDLE0 or SLEEP Mode, then a falling edge on the RX pin will wake up the MCU from the IDLE0 or SLEEP Mode. Note that as it takes certain system clock cycles after a wake-up, before normal microcontroller operation resumes, any data received during this time on the RX pin will be ignored.

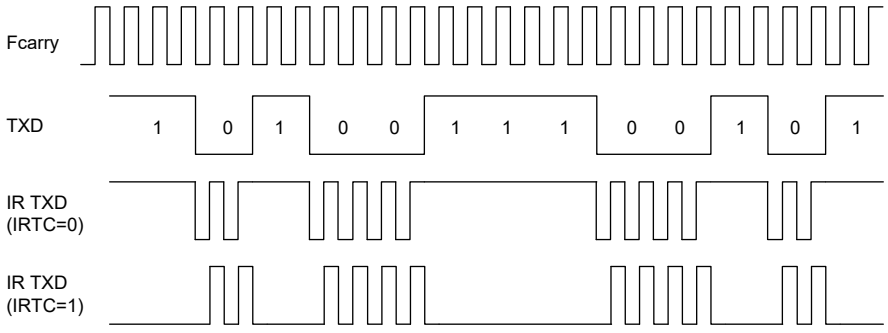
For a UART wake-up interrupt to occur, in addition to the bits for the wake-up being set, the global interrupt enable bit, EMI, and the UART interrupt enable bit, UIE, and the relevant Multi-function Interrupt enable bit, MFnE, must be set. If the EMI and UIE bits are not set then only a wake up event will occur and no interrupt will be generated. Note also that as it takes certain system clock cycles after a wake-up before normal microcontroller resumes, the UART interrupt will not be generated until after this time has elapsed.

IR Modulation Interface

The UART interface has an integrated IR modulation interface. Infrared modulation frequency control by register IRCTRL0, its value is any integer between 0 and 127.



Infrared modulation: When TXD = 0 only, the IR modulation will produce infrared mixing and output data. To meet the needs of both PNP and NPN infrared driver tube, located in the register IRCTRL0 bit7 IRTC, control the polarity of the output of the infrared modulation. IRTC = 0 for positive polarity output, suitable for PNP transistor driver; IRTC = 1 for a negative output, suitable for the NPN driver. See below:



• **IRCTRL0 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	IRTC	IRDC6	IRDC5	IRDC4	IRDC3	IRDC2	IRDC1	IRDC0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7 **IRTC**: IR modulation output polarity select
0: Negative
1: Positive

Bit 6~0 **IRDC6~IRDC0**: IR modulation frequency divider coefficient
Fcarry = (f_{SYS}/ (IRDC+1))/2

• **IRCTRL1 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	IRME0
R/W	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	0

Bit 7~1 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 0 **IRME0**: UART TX IR modulation control
0: UART TX IR modulation disable
1: UART TX IR modulation enable

Interrupts

Interrupts are an important part of any microcontroller system. When an external event or an internal function such as a Timer Module or an A/D converter requires microcontroller attention, their corresponding interrupt will enforce a temporary suspension of the main program allowing the microcontroller to direct attention to their respective needs. The device contains several external interrupt and internal interrupts functions. The external interrupts are generated by the action of the external INT0~INT3 pins, while the internal interrupts are generated by various internal functions such as the TMs, Time Base, LVD, EEPROM and the A/D converter.

Interrupt Registers

Overall interrupt control, which basically means the setting of request flags when certain microcontroller conditions occur and the setting of interrupt enable bits by the application program, is controlled by a series of registers, located in the Special Purpose Data Memory. The first is the INTC0~INTC3 registers which setup the primary interrupts, the second is the MFI0~MFI3 registers which setup the Multi-function interrupts. Finally there is an INTEG register to setup the external interrupt trigger edge type.

Each register contains a number of enable bits to enable or disable individual registers as well as interrupt flags to indicate the presence of an interrupt request. The naming convention of these follows a specific pattern. First is listed an abbreviated interrupt type, then the (optional) number of that interrupt followed by either an "E" for enable/disable bit or "F" for request flag.

Function	Enable Bit	Request Flag	Notes
Global	EMI	—	—
INTn Pin	INTnE	INTnF	n=0~3
Multi-function	MFnE	MFnF	n=0~3
A/D Converter	ADE	ADF	—
Time Base	TBnE	TBnF	n=0~1
LVD	LVE	LVF	—
EEPROM	DEE	DEF	—
SIM	SIE	SIF	—
I^2C time out	I2CTOE	I2CTOF	—
UART	UIE	UIF	—
TM	TnPE	TnPF	n=0~3
	TnAE	TnAF	
Comparator	CPnE	CPnF	n=0~1

Interrupt Register Bit Naming Conventions

Register Name	Bit							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
INTEG	INT3S1	INT3S0	INT2S1	INT2S0	INT1S1	INT1S0	INT0S1	INT0S0
INTC0	—	MF0F	INT1F	INT0F	MF0E	INT1E	INT0E	EMI
INTC1	MF1F	TB1F	TB0F	ADF	MF1E	TB1E	TB0E	ADE
INTC2	CP1F	CP0F	MF3F	MF2F	CP1E	CP0E	MF3E	MF2E
INTC3	—	—	INT3F	INT2F	—	—	INT3E	INT2E
MFI0	—	—	T0AF	T0PF	—	—	T0AE	T0PE
MFI1	UIF	SIF	DEF	LVF	UIE	SIE	DEE	LVE
MFI2	I2CTOF	—	T1AF	T1PF	I2CTOE	—	T1AE	T1PE
MFI3	T3AF	T3PF	T2AF	T2PF	T3AE	T3PE	T2AE	T2PE

Interrupt Register list

- **INTEG Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	INT3S1	INT3S0	INT2S1	INT2S0	INT1S1	INT1S0	INT0S1	INT0S0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7~6 **INT3S1~INT3S0**: interrupt edge control for INT3 pin
00: Disable
01: Rising edge
10: Falling edge
11: Rising and falling edges

Bit 5~4 **INT2S1~INT2S0**: interrupt edge control for INT2 pin
00: Disable
01: Rising edge
10: Falling edge
11: Rising and falling edges

Bit 3~2 **INT1S1~INT1S0**: interrupt edge control for INT1 pin
00: Disable
01: Rising edge
10: Falling edge
11: Rising and falling edges

Bit 1~0 **INT0S1~INT0S0**: interrupt edge control for INT0 pin
00: Disable
01: Rising edge
10: Falling edge
11: Rising and falling edges

• **INTC0 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	MF0F	INT1F	INT0F	MF0E	INT1E	INT0E	EMI
R/W	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7 Unimplemented, read as "0"
Bit 6 **MF0F**: Multi-function Interrupt 0 Request Flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request
Bit 5 **INT1F**: INT1 interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request
Bit 4 **INT0F**: INT0 interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request
Bit 3 **MF0E**: Multi-function Interrupt 0 Control
0: Disable
1: Enable
Bit 2 **INT1E**: INT1 interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable
Bit 1 **INT0E**: INT0 interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable
Bit 0 **EMI**: Global interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable

• **INTC1 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	MF1F	TB1F	TB0F	ADF	MF1E	TB1E	TB0E	ADE
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7 **MF1F**: Multi-function Interrupt 1 Request Flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request
Bit 6 **TB1F**: Time Base 1 Interrupt Request Flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request
Bit 5 **TB0F**: Time Base 0 Interrupt Request Flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request
Bit 4 **ADF**: A/D Converter Interrupt Request Flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request

Bit 3 **MF1E**: Multi-function Interrupt 1 Control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 2 **TB1E**: Time Base 1 Interrupt Control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 1 **TB0E**: Time Base 0 Interrupt Control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 0 **ADE**: A/D Converter Interrupt Control
0: Disable
1: Enable

• **INTC2 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	CP1F	CP0F	MF3F	MF2F	CP1E	CP0E	MF3E	MF2E
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7 **CP1F**: Comparator 1 Interrupt Request Flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request

Bit 6 **CP0F**: Comparator 0 Interrupt Request Flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request

Bit 5 **MF3F**: Multi-function Interrupt 3 Request Flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request

Bit 4 **MF2F**: Multi-function Interrupt 2 Request Flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request

Bit 3 **CP1E**: Comparator 1 Interrupt Control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 2 **CP0E**: Comparator 0 Interrupt Control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 1 **MF3E**: Multi-function Interrupt 3 Control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 0 **MF2E**: Multi-function Interrupt 2 Control
0: Disable
1: Enable

• **INTC3 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	INT3F	INT2F	—	—	INT3E	INT2E
R/W	—	—	R/W	R/W	—	—	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	0	0	—	—	0	0

Bit 7~6 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 5 **INT3F**: INT3 interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request

Bit 4 **INT2F**: INT2 interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request

Bit 3~2 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 1 **INT3E**: INT3 interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 0 **INT2E**: INT2 interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable

• **MFI0 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	T0AF	T0PF	—	—	T0AE	T0PE
R/W	—	—	R/W	R/W	—	—	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	0	0	—	—	0	0

Bit 7~6 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 5 **T0AF**: TM0 Comparator A match interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request

Bit 4 **T0PF**: TM0 Comparator P match interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request

Bit 3~2 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 1 **T0AE**: TM0 Comparator A match interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 0 **T0PE**: TM0 Comparator P match interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable

• **MFI1 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	UIF	SIF	DEF	LVF	UIE	SIE	DEE	LVE
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7 **UIF**: UART interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request

Bit 6 **SIF**: SIM interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request

Bit 5 **DEF**: Data EEPROM interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request

Bit 4 **LVF**: LVD interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request

Bit 3 **UIE**: UART interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 2 **SIE**: SIM Interrupt Control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 1 **DEE**: Data EEPROM interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 0 **LVE**: LVD Interrupt Control
0: Disable
1: Enable

• **MFI2 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	I2CTOF	—	T1AF	T1PF	I2CTOE	—	T1AE	T1PE
R/W	R/W	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	—	R/W	R/W
POR	0	—	0	0	0	—	0	0

Bit 7 **I2CTOF**: I^2C Time Out interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request

Bit 6 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 5 **T1AF**: TM1 Comparator A match interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request

Bit 4 **T1PF**: TM1 Comparator P match interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request

Bit 3 **I2CTOE**: I^2C Time Out interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 2 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 1 **T1AE**: TM1 Comparator A match interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 0 **T1PE**: TM1 Comparator P match interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable

• **MFI3 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	T3AF	T3PF	T2AF	T2PF	T3AE	T3PE	T2AE	T2PE
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7 **T3AF**: TM3 Comparator A match interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request

Bit 6 **T3PF**: TM3 Comparator P match interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request

Bit 5 **T2AF**: TM2 Comparator A match interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request

Bit 4 **T2PF**: TM2 Comparator P match interrupt request flag
0: No request
1: Interrupt request

Bit 3 **T3AE**: TM3 Comparator A match interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 2 **T3PE**: TM3 Comparator P match interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 1 **T2AE**: TM2 Comparator A match interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 0 **T2PE**: TM2 Comparator P match interrupt control
0: Disable
1: Enable

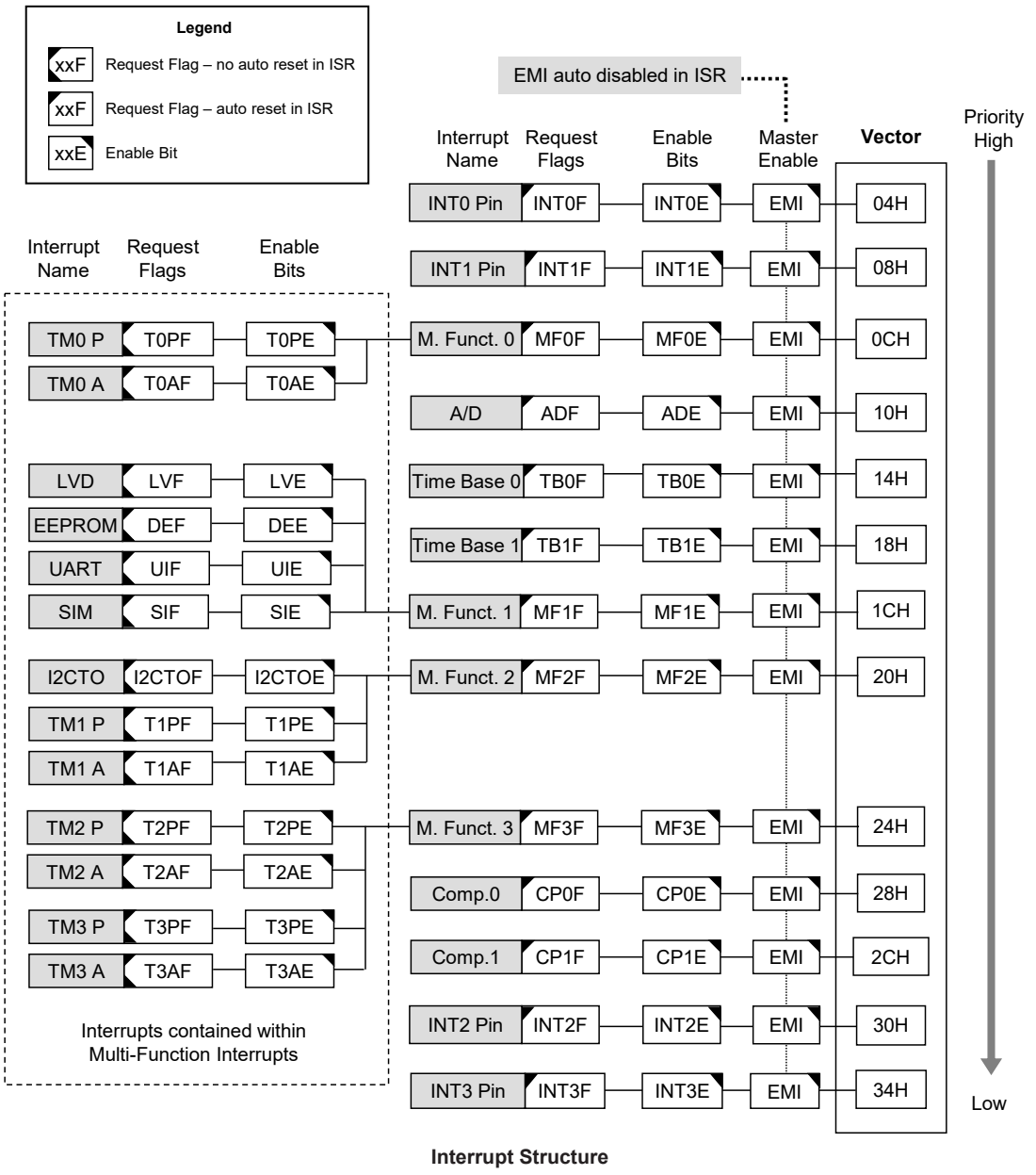
Interrupt Operation

When the conditions for an interrupt event occur, such as a TM Comparator P, Comparator A match or A/D conversion completion etc., the relevant interrupt request flag will be set. Whether the request flag actually generates a program jump to the relevant interrupt vector is determined by the condition of the interrupt enable bit. If the enable bit is set high then the program will jump to its relevant vector; if the enable bit is zero then although the interrupt request flag is set an actual interrupt will not be generated and the program will not jump to the relevant interrupt vector. The global interrupt enable bit, if cleared to zero, will disable all interrupts.

When an interrupt is generated, the Program Counter, which stores the address of the next instruction to be executed, will be transferred onto the stack. The Program Counter will then be loaded with a new address which will be the value of the corresponding interrupt vector. The microcontroller will then fetch its next instruction from this interrupt vector. The instruction at this vector will usually be a "JMP" which will jump to another section of program which is known as the interrupt service routine. Here is located the code to control the appropriate interrupt. The interrupt service routine must be terminated with a "RETI", which retrieves the original Program Counter address from the stack and allows the microcontroller to continue with normal execution at the point where the interrupt occurred.

The various interrupt enable bits, together with their associated request flags, are shown in the accompanying diagrams with their order of priority. Some interrupt sources have their own individual vector while others share the same multi-function interrupt vector. Once an interrupt subroutine is serviced, all the other interrupts will be blocked, as the global interrupt enable bit, EMI bit will be cleared automatically. This will prevent any further interrupt nesting from occurring. However, if other interrupt requests occur during this interval, although the interrupt will not be immediately serviced, the request flag will still be recorded.

If an interrupt requires immediate servicing while the program is already in another interrupt service routine, the EMI bit should be set after entering the routine, to allow interrupt nesting. If the stack is full, the interrupt request will not be acknowledged, even if the related interrupt is enabled, until the Stack Pointer is decremented. If immediate service is desired, the stack must be prevented from becoming full. In case of simultaneous requests, the accompanying diagram shows the priority that is applied. All of the interrupt request flags when set will wake-up the device if it is in SLEEP or IDLE Mode, however to prevent a wake-up from occurring the corresponding flag should be set before the device is in SLEEP or IDLE Mode.



Interrupt Structure

External Interrupt

The external interrupts are controlled by signal transitions on the pins INT0~INT3. An external interrupt request will take place when the external interrupt request flags, INT0F~INT3F, are set, which will occur when a transition, whose type is chosen by the edge select bits, appears on the external interrupt pins. To allow the program to branch to its respective interrupt vector address, the global interrupt enable bit, EMI, and respective external interrupt enable bit, INT0E~INT3E, must first be set. Additionally the correct interrupt edge type must be selected using the INTEG register to enable the external interrupt function and to choose the trigger edge type. As the external interrupt pins are pin-shared with I/O pins, they can only be configured as external interrupt pins if their external interrupt enable bit in the corresponding interrupt register has been set. The pin must also be setup as an input by setting the corresponding bit in the port control register. When the interrupt

is enabled, the stack is not full and the correct transition type appears on the external interrupt pin, a subroutine call to the external interrupt vector, will take place. When the interrupt is serviced, the external interrupt request flags, INT0F~INT3F, will be automatically reset and the EMI bit will be automatically cleared to disable other interrupts. Note that any pull-high resistor selections on the external interrupt pins will remain valid even if the pin is used as an external interrupt input. The INTEG register is used to select the type of active edge that will trigger the external interrupt. A choice of either rising or falling or both edge types can be chosen to trigger an external interrupt. Note that the INTEG register can also be used to disable the external interrupt function.

Comparator Interrupt

The comparator interrupts are controlled by the two internal comparators. A comparator interrupt request will take place when the comparator interrupt request flags, CP0F or CP1F, are set, a situation that will occur when the comparator output CnOUT bit changes state. To allow the program to branch to its respective interrupt vector address, the global interrupt enable bit, EMI, and comparator interrupt enable bits, CP0E and CP1E, must first be set. When the interrupt is enabled, the stack is not full and the comparator inputs generate a comparator output transition, a subroutine call to the comparator interrupt vector, will take place. When the interrupt is serviced, the comparator interrupt request flags will be automatically reset and the EMI bit will be automatically cleared to disable other interrupts.

A/D Converter Interrupt

The A/D Converter Interrupt is controlled by the termination of an A/D conversion process. An A/D Converter Interrupt request will take place when the A/D Converter Interrupt request flag, ADF, is set, which occurs when the A/D conversion process finishes. To allow the program to branch to its respective interrupt vector address, the global interrupt enable bit, EMI, and A/D Interrupt enable bit, ADE, must first be set. When the interrupt is enabled, the stack is not full and the A/D conversion process has ended, a subroutine call to the A/D Converter Interrupt vector, will take place. When the interrupt is serviced, the A/D Converter Interrupt flag, ADF, will be automatically cleared. The EMI bit will also be automatically cleared to disable other interrupts.

Multi-function Interrupt

Within this device there are up to four Multi-function interrupts. Unlike the other independent interrupts, these interrupts have no independent source, but rather are formed from other existing interrupt sources, namely the TM Interrupts, LVD interrupt, UART interrupt, SIM Interrupt, I^2C time out Interrupt and EEPROM Interrupt.

A Multi-function interrupt request will take place when any of the Multi-function interrupt request flags, MFnF are set. The Multi-function interrupt flags will be set when any of their included functions generate an interrupt request flag. To allow the program to branch to its respective interrupt vector address, when the Multi-function interrupt is enabled and the stack is not full, and either one of the interrupts contained within each of Multi-function interrupt occurs, a subroutine call to one of the Multi-function interrupt vectors will take place. When the interrupt is serviced, the related Multi-Function request flag will be automatically reset and the EMI bit will be automatically cleared to disable other interrupts.

However, it must be noted that, although the Multi-function Interrupt flags will be automatically reset when the interrupt is serviced, the request flags from the original source of the Multi-function interrupts, namely the TM Interrupts, LVD interrupt, UART interrupt, SIM Interrupt, I^2C time out Interrupt and EEPROM Interrupt will not be automatically reset and must be manually reset by the application program.

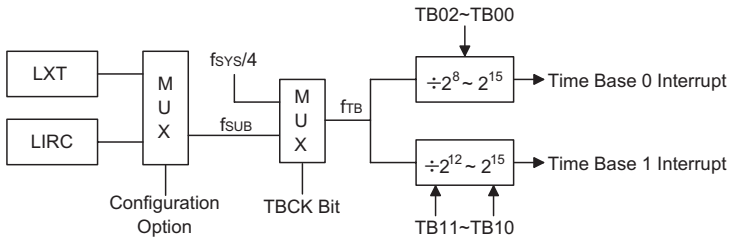
Serial Interface Module Interrupt

The Serial Interface Module Interrupt, also known as the SIM interrupt, is contained within the Multi-function Interrupt. An SIM Interrupt request will take place when the SIM Interrupt request flag, SIF, is set, which occurs when a byte of data has been received or transmitted by the SIM interface or I^2C address match. To allow the program to branch to its respective interrupt vector address, the global interrupt enable bit, EMI, and the Serial Interface Interrupt enable bit, SIE, and Muti-function interrupt enable bits, must first be set. When the interrupt is enabled, the stack is not full and a byte of data has been transmitted or received by the SIM interface or I^2C address match, a subroutine call to the respective Multi-function Interrupt vector, will take place. When the Serial Interface Interrupt is serviced, the EMI bit will be automatically cleared to disable other interrupts, however only the Multi-function interrupt request flag will be also automatically cleared. As the SIF flag will not be automatically cleared, it has to be cleared by the application program.

Time Base Interrupts

The function of the Time Base Interrupts is to provide regular time signal in the form of an internal interrupt. They are controlled by the overflow signals from their respective timer functions. When these happens their respective interrupt request flags, TB0F or TB1F will be set. To allow the program to branch to their respective interrupt vector addresses, the global interrupt enable bit, EMI and Time Base enable bits, TB0E or TB1E, must first be set. When the interrupt is enabled, the stack is not full and the Time Base overflows, a subroutine call to their respective vector locations will take place. When the interrupt is serviced, the respective interrupt request flag, TB0F or TB1F, will be automatically reset and the EMI bit will be cleared to disable other interrupts.

The purpose of the Time Base Interrupt is to provide an interrupt signal at fixed time periods. Their clock sources originate from the internal clock source f_{TB}. This f_{TB} input clock passes through a divider, the division ratio of which is selected by programming the appropriate bits in the TBC register to obtain longer interrupt periods whose value ranges. The clock source that generates f_{TB}, which in turn controls the Time Base interrupt period, can originate from several different sources, as shown in the System Operating Mode section.



Time Base Interrupt

- **TBC Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	TBON	TBCK	TB11	TB10	LXTLP	TB02	TB01	TB00
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	1	1	0	1	1	1

Bit 7 **TBON**: TB0 and TB1 Control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 6 **TBCK**: Select f_{TB} Clock
0: f_{SUB}
1: $f_{SYS}/4$

Bit 5~4 **TB11~TB10**: Select Time Base 1 Time-out Period
00: $2^{12}/f_{TB}$
01: $2^{13}/f_{TB}$
10: $2^{14}/f_{TB}$
11: $2^{15}/f_{TB}$

Bit 3 **LXTLP**: LXT Low Power Control
0: Disable (LXT quick start-up)
1: Enable (LXT slow start-up)

Bit 2~0 **TB02~TB00**: Select Time Base 0 Time-out Period
000: $2^{8}/f_{TB}$
001: $2^{9}/f_{TB}$
010: $2^{10}/f_{TB}$
011: $2^{11}/f_{TB}$
100: $2^{12}/f_{TB}$
101: $2^{13}/f_{TB}$
110: $2^{14}/f_{TB}$
111: $2^{15}/f_{TB}$

I²C Time Out Interrupt

The I²C Time Out Interrupt operates is contained within the Multi-function Interrupt. An I²C Time Out Interrupt request will take place when the I²C Time Out Interrupt request flag, I2CTOF, is set, which occurs when an I²C time-out counter overflows. To allow the program to branch to its respective interrupt vector address, the global interrupt enable bit, EMI, I²C time out interrupt enable bit, I2CTOE, and associated Multi-function interrupt enable bit, must first be set. When the interrupt is enabled, the stack is not full and an I²C time-out counter overflow occurs, a subroutine call to the respective Multi-function Interrupt, will take place. When the I²C time out interrupt is serviced, the EMI bit will be automatically cleared to disable other interrupts, however only the Multi-function interrupt request flag will be also automatically cleared. As the I2CTOF flag will not be automatically cleared, it has to be cleared by the application program.

UART Interrupt

The UART interrupt is contained within the Multi-function Interrupt. Several individual UART conditions can generate a UART interrupt. When these conditions exist, a low pulse will be generated to get the attention of the microcontroller. These conditions are a transmitter data register empty, transmitter idle, receiver data available, receiver overrun, address detect and an RX pin wake-up. To allow the program to branch to the respective interrupt vector addresses, the global interrupt enable bit, EMI, multi-function enable bit, MFnE and UART interrupt enable bit, UIE, must first be set. When the interrupt is enabled, the stack is not full and any of these conditions are created, a subroutine call to the respective Multi-function Interrupt vector, will take place. When the interrupt is serviced, the EMI bit will be automatically cleared to disable other interrupts, the Multi-function interrupt request flag will be also automatically cleared. However, the USR register flags will be cleared automatically when certain actions are taken by the UART, the details of which are given in the UART section.

EEPROM Interrupt

The EEPROM interrupt is contained within the Multi-function Interrupt. An EEPROM Interrupt request will take place when the EEPROM Interrupt request flag, DEF, is set, which occurs when an EEPROM Write cycle ends. To allow the program to branch to its respective interrupt vector address, the global interrupt enable bit, EMI, and EEPROM Interrupt enable bit, DEE, and associated Multi-function interrupt enable bit, must first be set. When the interrupt is enabled, the stack is not full and an EEPROM Write cycle ends, a subroutine call to the respective EEPROM

Interrupt vector will take place. When the EEPROM Interrupt is serviced, the EMI bit will be automatically cleared to disable other interrupts, however only the Multi-function interrupt request flag will be also automatically cleared. As the DEF flag will not be automatically cleared, it has to be cleared by the application program.

LVD Interrupt

The Low Voltage Detector Interrupt is contained within the Multi-function Interrupt. An LVD Interrupt request will take place when the LVD Interrupt request flag, LVF, is set, which occurs when the Low Voltage Detector function detects a low power supply voltage. To allow the program to branch to its respective interrupt vector address, the global interrupt enable bit, EMI, Low Voltage Interrupt enable bit, LVE, and associated Multi-function interrupt enable bit, must first be set. When the interrupt is enabled, the stack is not full and a low voltage condition occurs, a subroutine call to the Multi-function Interrupt vector, will take place. When the Low Voltage Interrupt is serviced, the EMI bit will be automatically cleared to disable other interrupts, however only the Multi-function interrupt request flag will be also automatically cleared. As the LVF flag will not be automatically cleared, it has to be cleared by the application program.

TM Interrupts

The Compact, Periodic and Standard Type TMs have two interrupts each. All of the TM interrupts are contained within the Multi-function Interrupts. For each of the Compact, Periodic and Standard Type TMs there are two interrupt request flags TnPF and TnAF and two enable bits TnPE and TnAE. A TM interrupt request will take place when any of the TM request flags are set, a situation which occurs when a TM comparator P or A match situation happens.

To allow the program to branch to its respective interrupt vector address, the global interrupt enable bit, EMI, respective TM Interrupt enable bit, and relevant Multi-function Interrupt enable bit, MFnE, must first be set. When the interrupt is enabled, the stack is not full and a TM comparator match situation occurs, a subroutine call to the relevant Multi-function Interrupt vector locations, will take place. When the TM interrupt is serviced, the EMI bit will be automatically cleared to disable other interrupts, however only the related MFnF flag will be automatically cleared. As the TM interrupt request flags will not be automatically cleared, they have to be cleared by the application program.

Interrupt Wake-up Function

Each of the interrupt functions has the capability of waking up the microcontroller when in the SLEEP or IDLE Mode. A wake-up is generated when an interrupt request flag changes from low to high and is independent of whether the interrupt is enabled or not. Therefore, even though the device is in the SLEEP or IDLE Mode and its system oscillator stopped, situations such as external edge transitions on the external interrupt pins, a low power supply voltage or comparator input change may cause their respective interrupt flag to be set high and consequently generate an interrupt. Care must therefore be taken if spurious wake-up situations are to be avoided. If an interrupt wake-up function is to be disabled then the corresponding interrupt request flag should be set high before the device enters the SLEEP or IDLE Mode. The interrupt enable bits have no effect on the interrupt wake-up function.

Programming Considerations

By disabling the relevant interrupt enable bits, a requested interrupt can be prevented from being serviced, however, once an interrupt request flag is set, it will remain in this condition in the interrupt register until the corresponding interrupt is serviced or until the request flag is cleared by the application program.

Where a certain interrupt is contained within a Multi-function interrupt, then when the interrupt service routine is executed, as only the Multi-function interrupt request flags, MFnF, will be automatically cleared, the individual request flag for the function needs to be cleared by the application program.

It is recommended that programs do not use the "CALL" instruction within the interrupt service subroutine. Interrupts often occur in an unpredictable manner or need to be serviced immediately. If only one stack is left and the interrupt is not well controlled, the original control sequence will be damaged once a CALL subroutine is executed in the interrupt subroutine.

Every interrupt has the capability of waking up the microcontroller when it is in SLEEP or IDLE Mode, the wake up being generated when the interrupt request flag changes from low to high. If it is required to prevent a certain interrupt from waking up the microcontroller then its respective request flag should be first set high before enter SLEEP or IDLE Mode.

As only the Program Counter is pushed onto the stack, then when the interrupt is serviced, if the contents of the accumulator, status register or other registers are altered by the interrupt service program, their contents should be saved to the memory at the beginning of the interrupt service routine. To return from an interrupt subroutine, either a RET or RETI instruction may be executed. The RETI instruction in addition to executing a return to the main program also automatically sets the EMI bit high to allow further interrupts. The RET instruction however only executes a return to the main program leaving the EMI bit in its present zero state and therefore disabling the execution of further interrupts.

Low Voltage Detector – LVD

Each device has a Low Voltage Detector function, also known as LVD. This enabled the device to monitor the power supply voltage, V_{DD}, and provide a warning signal should it fall below a certain level. This function may be especially useful in battery applications where the supply voltage will gradually reduce as the battery ages, as it allows an early warning battery low signal to be generated. The Low Voltage Detector also has the capability of generating an interrupt signal.

LVD Register

The Low Voltage Detector function is controlled using a single register with the name LVDC. Three bits in this register, VLVD2~VLVD0, are used to select one of eight fixed voltages below which a low voltage condition will be determined. A low voltage condition is indicated when the LVDO bit is set. If the LVDO bit is low, this indicates that the V_{DD} voltage is above the preset low voltage value. The LVDEN bit is used to control the overall on/off function of the low voltage detector. Setting the bit high will enable the low voltage detector. Clearing the bit to zero will switch off the internal low voltage detector circuits. As the low voltage detector will consume a certain amount of power, it may be desirable to switch off the circuit when not in use, an important consideration in power sensitive battery powered applications.

• **LVDC Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	LVDO	LVDEN	—	VLVD2	VLVD1	VLVD0
R/W	—	—	R	R/W	—	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	0	0	—	0	0	0

Bit 7~6 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 5 **LVDO**: LVD Output Flag
0: No Low Voltage Detect
1: Low Voltage Detect

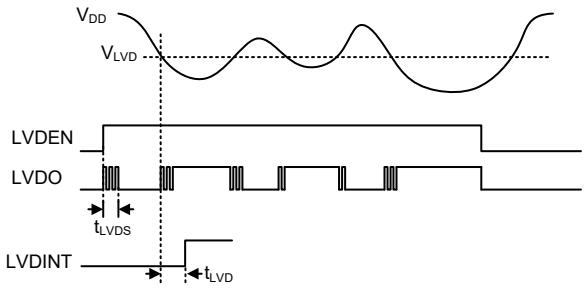
Bit 4 **LVDEN**: Low Voltage Detector Control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 3 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 2~0 **VLVD2~VLVD0**: Select LVD Voltage
000: 2.0V
001: 2.2V
010: 2.4V
011: 2.7V
100: 3.0V
101: 3.3V
110: 3.6V
111: 4.0V

LVD Operation

The Low Voltage Detector function operates by comparing the power supply voltage, V_{DD}, with a pre-specified voltage level stored in the LVDC register. This has a range of between 2.0V and 4.0V. When the power supply voltage, V_{DD}, falls below this pre-determined value, the LVDO bit will be set high indicating a low power supply voltage condition. The Low Voltage Detector function is supplied by a reference voltage which will be automatically enabled. When the device is powered down the low voltage detector will remain active if the LVDEN bit is high. After enabling the Low Voltage Detector, a time delay t_{LVDS} should be allowed for the circuitry to stabilise before reading the LVDO bit. Note also that as the V_{DD} voltage may rise and fall rather slowly, at the voltage nears that of V_{LVD}, there may be multiple bit LVDO transitions.



LVD Operation

The Low Voltage Detector also has its own interrupt which is contained within one of the Multi-function interrupts, providing an alternative means of low voltage detection, in addition to polling the LVDO bit. The interrupt will only be generated after a delay of t_{LVD} after the LVDO bit has been set high by a low voltage condition. When the device is powered down the Low Voltage Detector will remain active if the LVDEN bit is high. In this case, the LVF interrupt request flag will be set, causing an interrupt to be generated if V_{DD} falls below the preset LVD voltage. This will cause the device to wake-up from the SLEEP or IDLE Mode, however if the Low Voltage Detector wake up

function is not required then the LVF flag should be first set high before the device enters the SLEEP or IDLE Mode.

When LVD function is enabled, it is recommenced to clear LVD flag first, and then enables interrupt function to avoid mistake action.

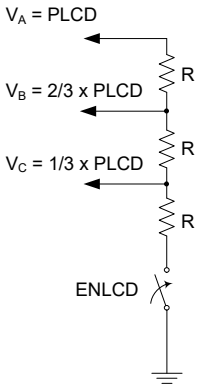
LCD Driver

For large volume applications, which incorporate an LCD in their design, the use of a custom display rather than a more expensive character based display reduces costs significantly. However, the corresponding COM and SEG signals required, which vary in both amplitude and time, to drive such a custom display require many special considerations for proper LCD operation to occur. The device contains an LCD Driver function, which with their internal LCD signal generating circuitry and various options will automatically generate these time and amplitude varying signals to provide a means of direct driving and easy interfacing to a range of custom LCDs.

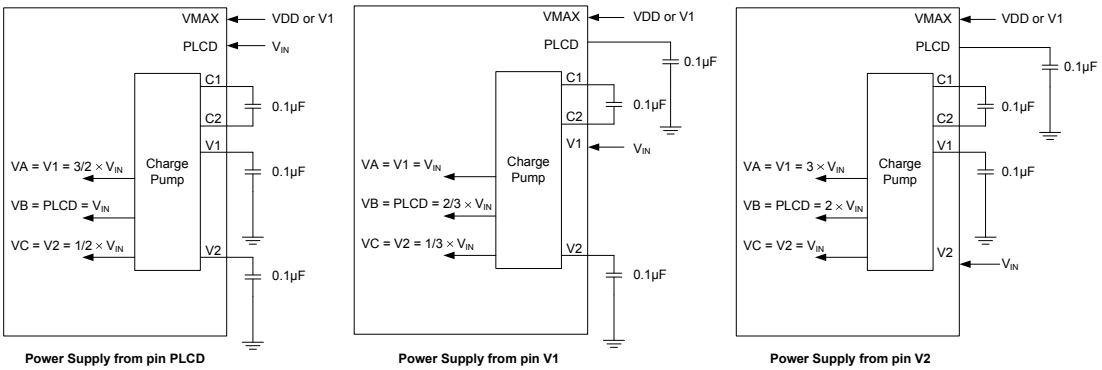
This device includes a wide range of options to enable LCD displays of various types to be driven. The table shows the range of options available across the device range.

Driver No.	Bias	Duty	Bias Type	Wave Type
40×4	1/3	1/4	R or C	A or B

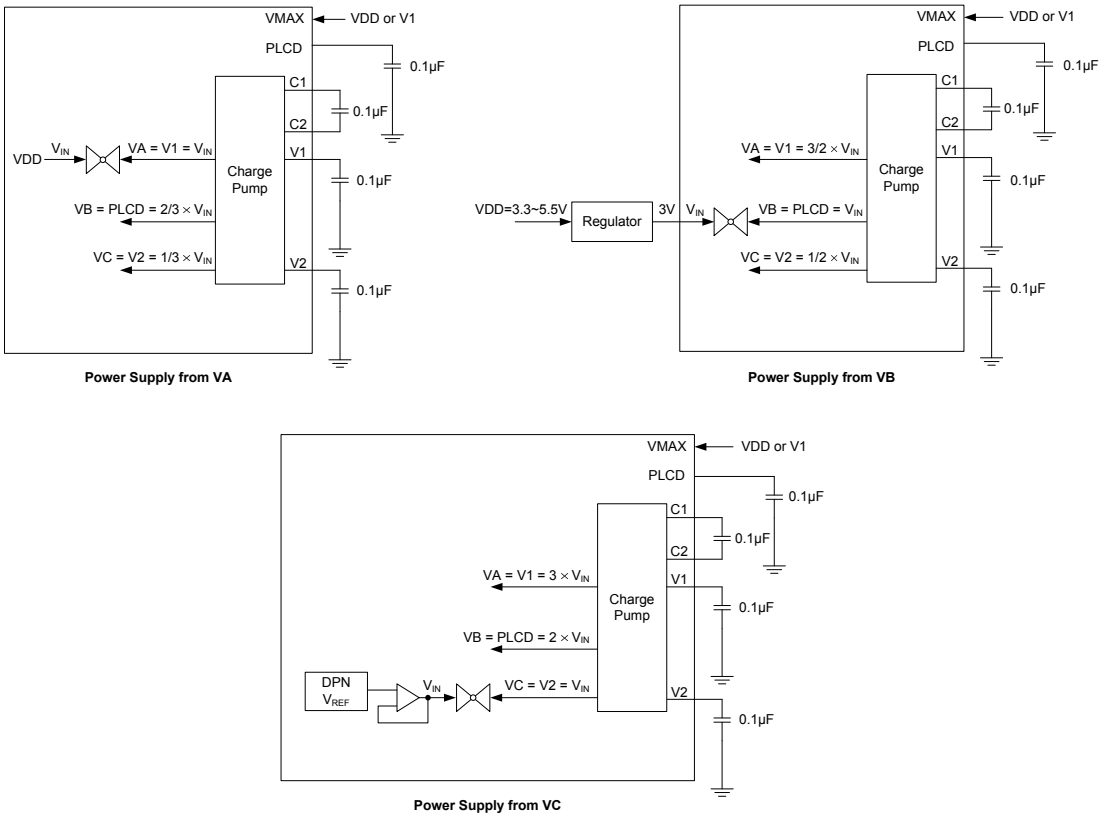
LCD Selections



R Type 1/3 Bias Voltage Levels



C Type LCD Power Source from External Pin



C Type LCD Power Source from Internal Power

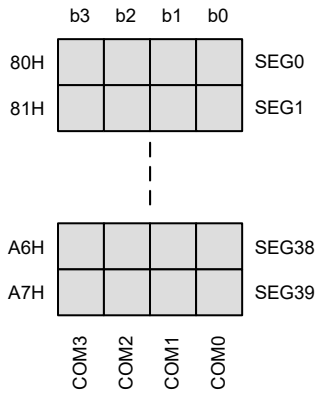
Note: The pin VMAX must connect to maximum voltage to prevent pad leakage.

LCD Display Memory

An area of Data Memory is especially reserved for use for the LCD display data. This data area is known as the LCD Memory. Any data written here will be automatically read by the internal display driver circuits, which will in turn automatically generate the necessary LCD driving signals. Therefore any data written into this Memory will be immediately reflected into the actual display connected to the microcontroller.

The device provides an area of embedded data memory for the LCD display. This area is located at 80H to A7H in Sector 1 of the Data Memory. To access the Display Memory therefore requires first that Sector 1 is selected by writing a value of 01H to MP1H or MP2H. After this, the memory can then be accessed by using indirect addressing through the use of MP1L or MP2L. With Sector 1 selected, then using MP1L/MP2L to read or write to the memory area, from 80H to A7H, will result in operations to the LCD memory. Directly addressing the Display Memory is not applicable and will result in a data access to the Sector 0 General Purpose Data Memory.

The LCD display memory can be read and written to only by indirect addressing mode using MP1L/MP1H and MP2L/MP2H. When data is written into the display data area, it is automatically read by the LCD driver which then generates the corresponding LCD driving signals. To turn the display on or off, a "1" or a "0" is written to the corresponding bit of the display memory, respectively. The figure illustrates the mapping between the display memory and LCD pattern for the device.



LCD Memory Map

LCD Clock Source

The LCD clock source is the internal clock signal, f_{SUB}, divided by 8, using an internal divider circuit. The f_{SUB} internal clock is supplied by either the LIRC or LXT oscillator, the choice of which is determined by a configuration option. For proper LCD operation, this arrangement is provided to generate an ideal LCD clock source frequency of 4kHz.

f_{SUB} Clock Source	LCD Clock Frequency
LIRC	4kHz
LXT	4kHz

LCD Clock Source

LCD Registers

Control Registers in the Data Memory, are used to control the various setup features of the LCD Driver. There are several control registers for the LCD function, LCDCP, LCDC, LCD1, LCD2 and LCD3.

The LCDPR bit in the LCDCP register is used to select the PLCD pin or the internal charge pump regulator to supply the power for the R type LCD COMs and SEGs pins. Bits CPVS1 and CPVS0 in the same register are used to select an appropriate charge pump output voltage level.

Various bits in the LCDC register control functions such as waveform type, power source selection and overall LCD enable/disable. The TYPE bit in the LCDC register is used to select whether Type A or Type B LCD control signals are used. The RCT bit in the LCDC register is used to select whether R type or C type LCD drive bias. Bits LCDP1 and LCDP0 in the LCDC register are used to select the power source to supply the LCD panel with the correct bias voltages. Bits LCDIS0 and LCDIS1 in the LCDC register are used to select the internal bias current to supply the LCD panel with the correct bias voltages. A choice to best match the LCD panel used in the application can be selected also to minimise bias current. The ENLCD bit in the LCDC register, which provides the overall LCD enable/disable function, will only be effective when the device is in the Normal, Slow or Idle Mode. If the device is in the Sleep Mode then the display will always be disabled.

Registers LCD1~LCD3, are used to determine if the output function of display pins SEG0~SEG15, SEG38~SEG39 are used as segment drivers or I/O functions.

• **LCDCP Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	LCDPR	—	CPVS1	CPVS0
R/W	—	—	—	—	R/W	—	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	0	—	0	0

Bit 7~4 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 3 **LCDPR**: LCD Power selection for R type
0: PLCD pin
1: Internal charge pump

Bit 2 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 1~0 **CPVS1~CPVS0**: Charge pump output voltage selection
00: 3.3V
01: 3.0V
10: 2.7V
11: 4.5V

• **LCDC Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	TYPE	RCT	LCDP1	LCDP0	—	LCDIS1	LCDIS0	ENLCD
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	—	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	—	0	0	0

Bit 7 **TYPE**: LCD Waveform Type Control
0: Type A
1: Type B

Bit 6 **RCT**: R/C LCD Type Control
0: R type
1: C type

Bit 5~4 **LCDP1~LCDP0**: LCD power source select for C type
00: The power source is from PLCD/V1/V2
01: The power source is from V_C = DPN V_{REF} (~1.08V)
10: The power source is from V_B = 3V
11: The power source is from V_A = V_{DD}

Bit 3 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 2~1 **LCDIS1~LCDIS0**: LCD Bias Current Select
00: 25μA
01: 50μA
10: 100μA
11: 200μA

Bit 0 **ENLCD**: LCD Enable Control
0: Disable
1: Enable

• **LCD1 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	LCDS7	LCDS6	LCDS5	LCDS4	LCDS3	LCDS2	LCDS1	LCDS0
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7 **LCDS7**: SEG7 Output Control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 6 **LCDS6**: SEG6 Output Control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 5 **LCDS5**: SEG5 Output Control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 4 **LCDS4**: SEG4 Output Control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 3 **LCDS3**: SEG3 Output Control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 2 **LCDS2**: SEG2 Output Control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 1 **LCDS1**: SEG1 Output Control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 0 **LCDS0**: SEG0 Output Control
0: Disable
1: Enable

• **LCD2 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	LCDS15	LCDS14	LCDS13	LCDS12	LCDS11	LCDS10	LCDS9	LCDS8
R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W
POR	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 7 **LCDS15**: SEG15 Output Control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 6 **LCDS14**: SEG14 Output Control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 5 **LCDS13**: SEG13 Output Control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 4 **LCDS12**: SEG12 Output Control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 3 **LCDS11**: SEG11 Output Control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 2 **LCDS10**: SEG10 Output Control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 1 **LCDS9**: SEG9 Output Control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 0 **LCDS8**: SEG8 Output Control
0: Disable
1: Enable

• **LCD3 Register**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Name	—	—	—	—	—	—	LCDS39	LCDS38
R/W	—	—	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W
POR	—	—	—	—	—	—	0	0

Bit 7~2 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 1 **LCDS39**: SEG39 Output Control
0: Disable
1: Enable

Bit 0 **LCDS38**: SEG38 Output Control
0: Disable
1: Enable

LCD Voltage Source and Biasing

The time and amplitude varying signals generated by the LCD Driver function require the generation of several voltage levels for their operation. The device can have either R type or C type biasing selected via a software control bit named RCT. Selecting the C type biasing will enable an internal charge pump circuitry.

R Type Biasing

For R type biasing the LCD voltage source, the PLCD voltage can be supplied by the PLCD pin or internal charge pump regulator, selected by the LCDPR bit in the LCDCP register, to generate the internal biasing voltages. The source on the PLCD pin could be the microcontroller power supply or some other voltage source. Note that the PLCD voltage should be equal or less than V_{DD}. There are four kinds of the internal charge pump voltage output, managed by the CPVS[1:0] bits in the LCDCP register.

For the R type 1/3 bias scheme, four voltage levels V_{SS}, V_A, V_B and V_C are utilised. The voltage V_A is equal to PLCD. The voltage V_B is equal to PLCD×2/3 while the voltage V_C is equal to PLCD×1/3.

Different values of internal bias current can be selected using the LCDIS1~LCDIS0 bits in the LCDC register. The connection to the VMAX pin depends upon the voltage that is applied to the PLCD pin. If the VDD voltage is greater than or equal to the voltage applied to the PLCD pin then the VMAX pin should be connected to VDD. Note that for R type biasing the voltage on the PLCD pin should not be greater than the VDD pin voltage. Note that no external capacitors or resistors are required to be connected if R type biasing is used.

Condition	VMAX Connection
$V_{DD} \geq$ PLCD	Connect VMAX to VDD
$V_{DD} <$ PLCD	Forbidden condition

R Type Bias VMAX Pin Connection

C Type Biasing

For C type biasing the device can have either external pin or internal power source selected via by register bits LCDP1~LCDP0, LCD voltage source is supplied on external pin PLCD, V1, V2 (LCDP[1:0]=00) or internal power (LCDP[1:0]=01, 10 or 11) to generate the internal biasing voltages.

When power source is from pin PLCD, The C type biasing scheme uses an internal charge pump circuit, which can generate voltages higher than what is supplied on PLCD. This feature is useful in applications where the microcontroller supply voltage is less than the supply voltage required by the LCD. An additional charge pump capacitor must also be connected between pins C1 and C2 to generate the necessary voltage levels.

Four voltage levels V_{SS}, V_A, V_B and V_C are utilized.

The device has an integrated depletion circuit for LCD voltage source. This could be the DPN V_{REF} (~1.08V), a fixed 3V voltage generated by an additional regulator or internal power V_{DD} to generate biasing voltage when bits LCDP1~LCDP0 are configured 01, 10 or 11.

When power source is from pin V1 or V_A (V_A=V_{DD}), which is maximum bias. The pin PLCD must connect a 0.1μF to ground. The voltage V_A will have a value equal to V1 or V_{DD}. V_B will have a value equal to V_A × 2/3 and V_C will have a value equal to V_A × 1/3.

When power source is from pin PLCD or V_B (V_B=Regulator Output 3V), the voltage V_A is generated internally and has a value of PLCD × 1.5 or 3V × 3/2. V_B will have a value equal to V_A × 2/3 and V_C will have a value equal to V_A × 1/3.

When power source is from pin V2 or V_C (V_C=DPN V_{REF}), the voltage V_A is generated internally and has a value of V2 × 3 or DPN V_{REF} × 3. V_B will have a value equal to V_A × 2/3 and V_C will have a value equal to V_A × 1/3.

The connection to the VMAX pin depends upon the bias and the voltage that is applied to the PLCD pin, the details are shown in the table. It is extremely important to ensure that these charge pump generated internal voltages do not exceed the maximum V_{DD} voltage of 5.5V.

Condition	VMAX Connection
V_{DD} > PLCD × 1.5	Connect VMAX to VDD
Otherwise	Connect VMAX to V1

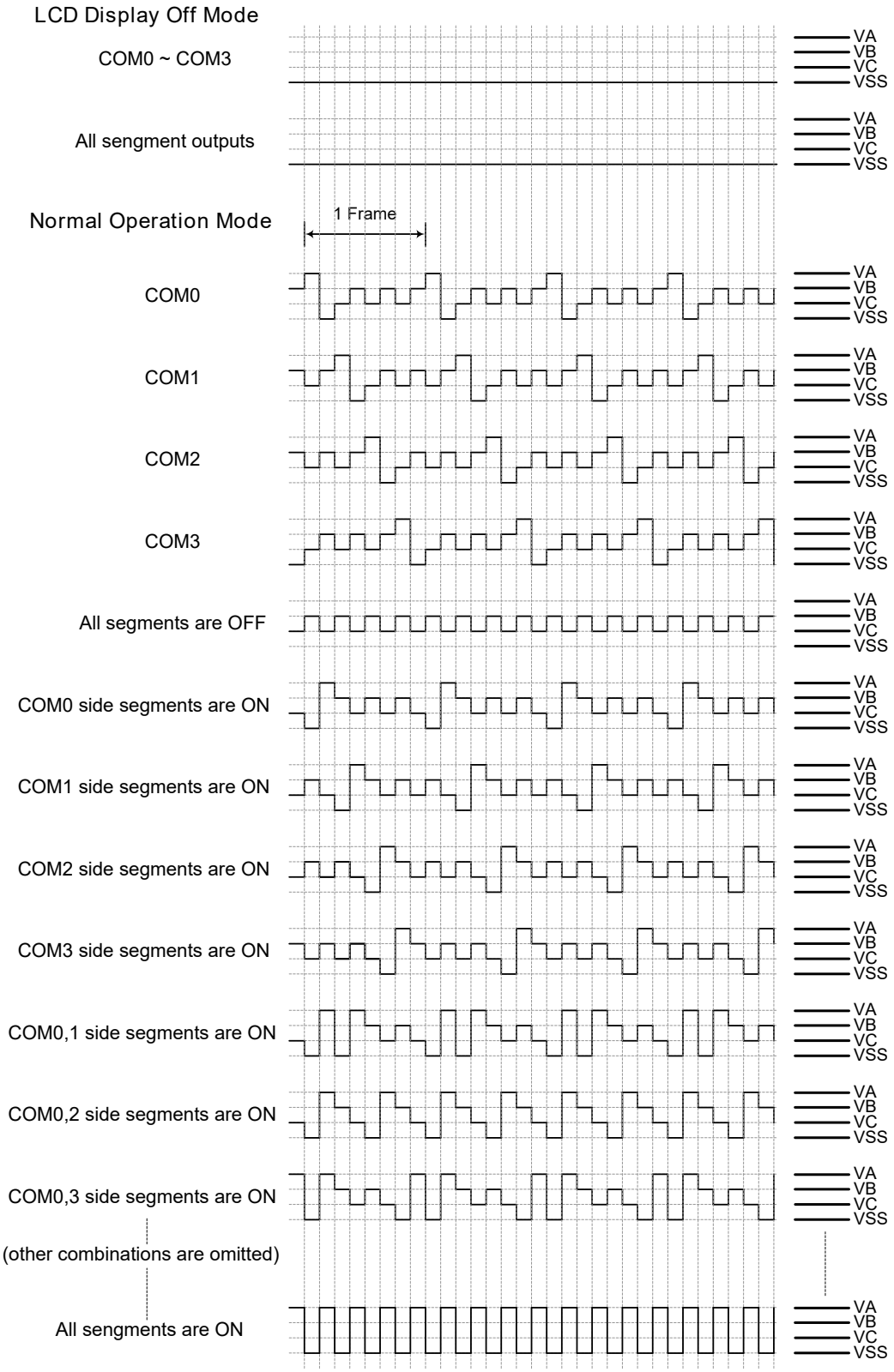
C Type Bias VMAX Pin Connection

LCD Driver Output

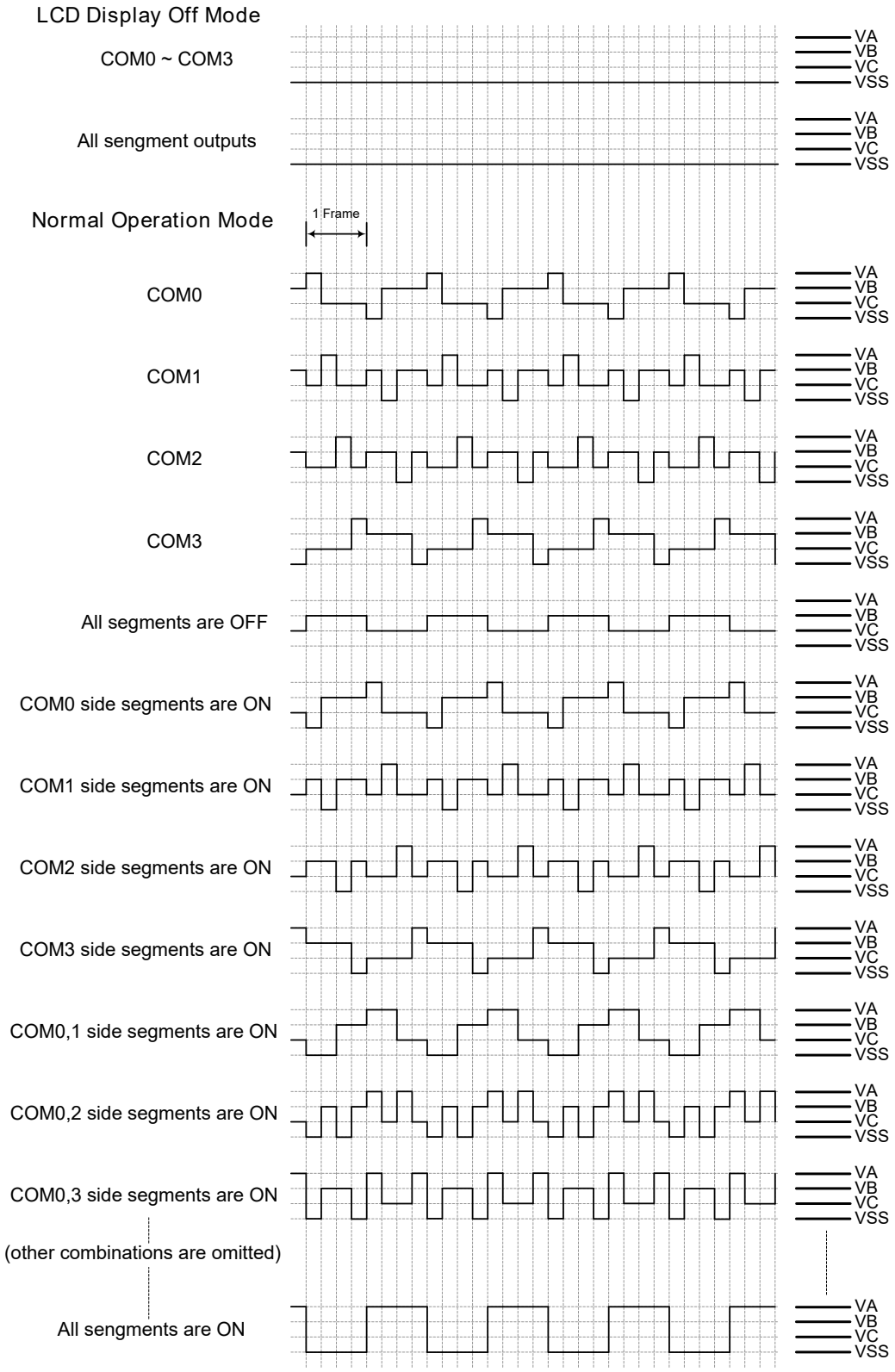
The number of COM and SEG outputs supplied by the LCD driver, as well as its biasing and wave type selections, are dependent upon how the LCD control bits are programmed. The Bias Type, whether C or R type is also selected by a software control bit.

The nature of Liquid Crystal Displays require that only AC voltages can be applied to their pixels as the application of DC voltages to LCD pixels may cause permanent damage. For this reason the relative contrast of an LCD display is controlled by the actual RMS voltage applied to each pixel, which is equal to the RMS value of the voltage on the COM pin minus the voltage applied to the SEG pin. This differential RMS voltage must be greater than the LCD saturation voltage for the pixel to be on and less than the threshold voltage for the pixel to be off.

The requirement to limit the DC voltage to zero and to control as many pixels as possible with a minimum number of connections requires that both a time and amplitude signal is generated and applied to the application LCD. These time and amplitude varying signals are automatically generated by the LCD driver circuits in the microcontroller. What is known as the duty determines the number of common lines used, which are also known as backplanes or COMs. The duty is 1/4 and equates to a COM number of 4, therefore defines the number of time divisions within each LCD signal frame. Two types of signal generation are also provided, known as Type A and Type B, the required type is selected via the TYPE bit in the LCDC register. Type B offers lower frequency signals, however lower frequencies may introduce flickering and influence display clarity.



LCD Driver Output – Type A – 1/4 Duty, 1/3 Bias



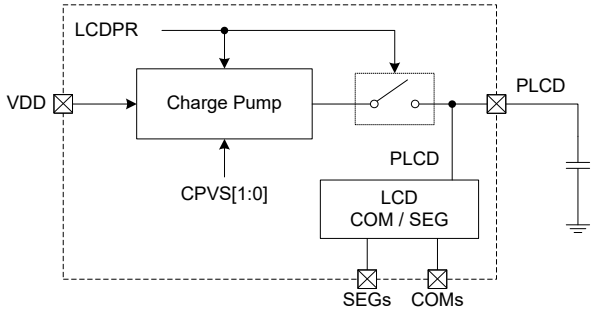
LCD Driver Output – Type B – 1/4 Duty, 1/3 Bias

LCD Charge Pump

The COMs and SEGs pins can be powered up by the external PLCD pin or internal charge pump circuit which is determined by the LCDPR bit in the LCDCP register. When the LCDPR bit is set low, the LCD driver power is supplied by the external PLCD pin. The PLCD pin voltage should be equal to or less than V_{DD} if the PLCD pin is selected to be used. If the LCDPR bit is set high, the LCD driver power is supplied by the internal charge pump circuit. There are four charge pump output voltage levels which are selected by the CPVS1~CPVS0 bits in the LCDCP register. If the internal charge pump circuit is used, an external 4.7μF capacitor should be connected to the external PLCD pin for output voltage stability. Note that there is also a relationship between the selected charge pump output voltage and V_{DD} when the internal charge pump circuit is used. In addition, for C type the LCDPR bit should be fixed at low.

LCDPR	LCD Driver Power Supply	Relationship
0	PLCD pin	PLCD ≤ V_{DD}
1	Charge Pump Circuit	PLCD ≤ V_{DD} + 0.7V

LCD Driver Power Supply Relationship



LCD Driver Charge Pump Circuit

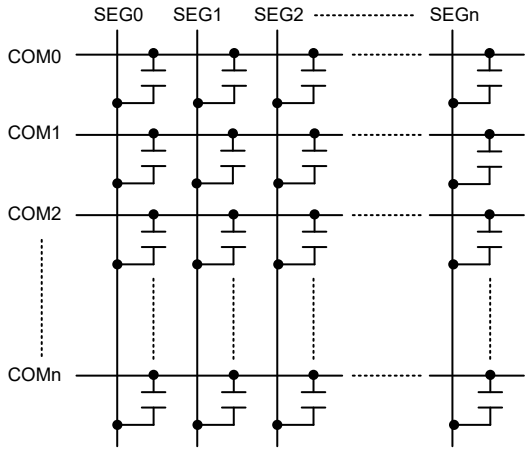
Programming Considerations

Certain precautions must be taken when programming the LCD. One of these is to ensure that the LCD Memory is properly initialised after the microcontroller is powered on. Like the General Purpose Data Memory, the contents of the LCD Memory are in an unknown condition after power-on. As the contents of the LCD Memory will be mapped into the actual display, it is important to initialise this memory area into a known condition soon after applying power to obtain a proper display pattern.

Consideration must also be given to the capacitive load of the actual LCD used in the application. As the load presented to the microcontroller by LCD pixels can be generally modeled as mainly capacitive in nature, it is important that this is not excessive, a point that is particularly true in the case of the COM lines which may be connected to many LCD pixels. The accompanying diagram depicts the equivalent circuit of the LCD.

One additional consideration that must be taken into account is what happens when the microcontroller enters the Idle or Slow Mode. The ENLCD control bit in the LCDC register permits the display to be powered off to reduce power consumption. If this bit is zero, the driving signals to the display will cease, producing a blank display pattern but reducing any power consumption associated with the LCD.

After Power-on, note that as the ENLCD bit will be cleared to zero, the display function will be disabled.



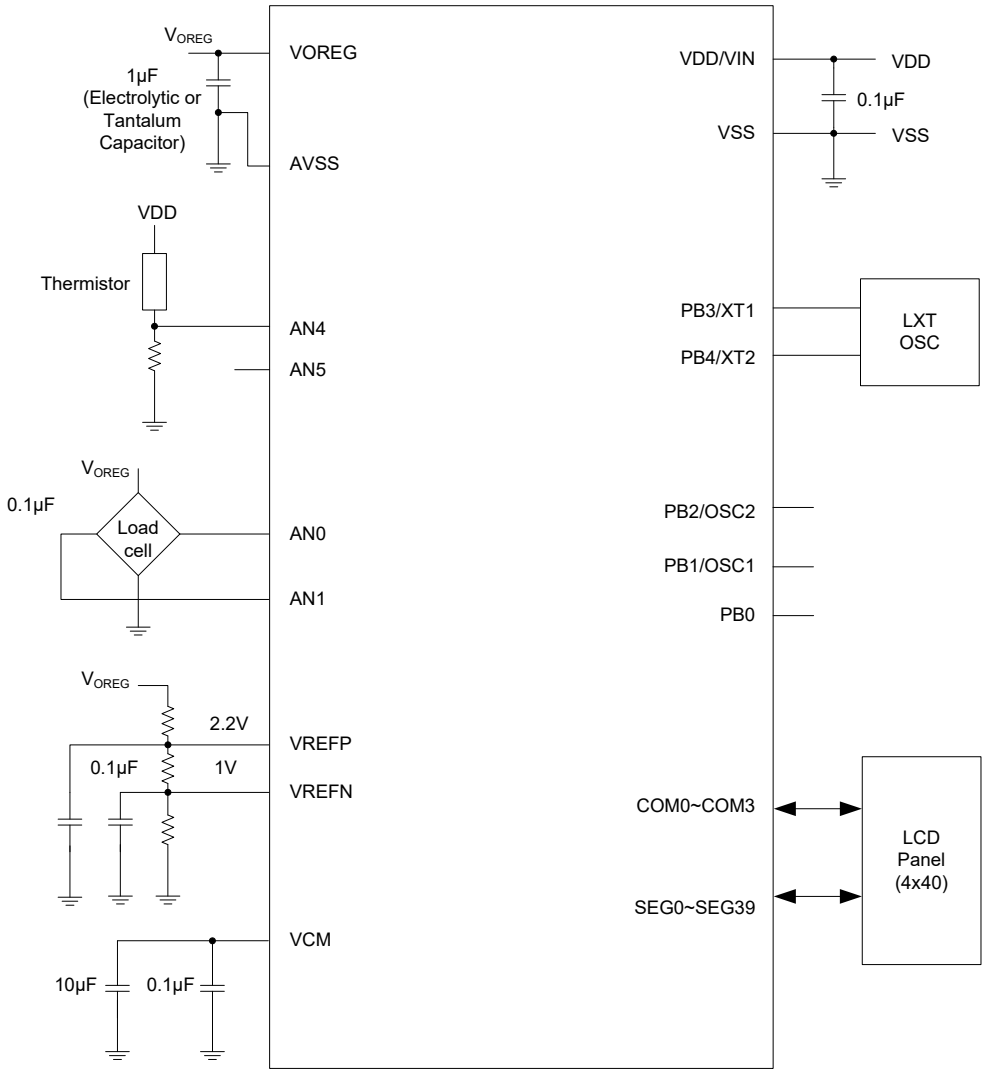
LCD Panel Equivalent Circuit

Configuration Option

Configuration options refer to certain options within the MCU that are programmed into the device during the programming process. During the development process, these options are selected using the HT-IDE software development tools. As these options are programmed into the device using the hardware programming tools, once they are selected they cannot be changed later using the application program. All options must be defined for proper system function, the details of which are shown in the table.

No.	Options
Oscillator Options	
1	High Speed System Oscillator Selection – f_H: 1. HXT 2. HIRC
2	HIRC Frequency Selection: 1. 4.9152MHz 2. 9.8304MHz 3. 14.7456MHz
3	Low Speed System Oscillator Selection – f_{SUB}: 1. LXT 2. LIRC
Watchdog Timer Options	
4	WDT function: 1. Always enable 2. Controlled by WDT Control Register
5	WDT Clock Selection – f_S: 1. f_{SUB} 2. $f_{SYS}/4$

Application Circuits



Instruction Set

Introduction

Central to the successful operation of any microcontroller is its instruction set, which is a set of program instruction codes that directs the microcontroller to perform certain operations. In the case of Holtek microcontroller, a comprehensive and flexible set of over 60 instructions is provided to enable programmers to implement their application with the minimum of programming overheads.

For easier understanding of the various instruction codes, they have been subdivided into several functional groupings.

Instruction Timing

Most instructions are implemented within one instruction cycle. The exceptions to this are branch, call, or table read instructions where two instruction cycles are required. One instruction cycle is equal to 4 system clock cycles, therefore in the case of an 8MHz system oscillator, most instructions would be implemented within 0.5μs and branch or call instructions would be implemented within 1μs. Although instructions which require one more cycle to implement are generally limited to the JMP, CALL, RET, RETI and table read instructions, it is important to realize that any other instructions which involve manipulation of the Program Counter Low register or PCL will also take one more cycle to implement. As instructions which change the contents of the PCL will imply a direct jump to that new address, one more cycle will be required. Examples of such instructions would be “CLR PCL” or “MOV PCL, A”. For the case of skip instructions, it must be noted that if the result of the comparison involves a skip operation then this will also take one more cycle, if no skip is involved then only one cycle is required.

Moving and Transferring Data

The transfer of data within the microcontroller program is one of the most frequently used operations. Making use of several kinds of MOV instructions, data can be transferred from registers to the Accumulator and vice-versa as well as being able to move specific immediate data directly into the Accumulator. One of the most important data transfer applications is to receive data from the input ports and transfer data to the output ports.

Arithmetic Operations

The ability to perform certain arithmetic operations and data manipulation is a necessary feature of most microcontroller applications. Within the Holtek microcontroller instruction set are a range of add and subtract instruction mnemonics to enable the necessary arithmetic to be carried out. Care must be taken to ensure correct handling of carry and borrow data when results exceed 255 for addition and less than 0 for subtraction. The increment and decrement instructions such as INC, INCA, DEC and DECA provide a simple means of increasing or decreasing by a value of one of the values in the destination specified.

Logical and Rotate Operation

The standard logical operations such as AND, OR, XOR and CPL all have their own instruction within the Holtek microcontroller instruction set. As with the case of most instructions involving data manipulation, data must pass through the Accumulator which may involve additional programming steps. In all logical data operations, the zero flag may be set if the result of the operation is zero. Another form of logical data manipulation comes from the rotate instructions such as RR, RL, RRC and RLC which provide a simple means of rotating one bit right or left. Different rotate instructions exist depending on program requirements. Rotate instructions are useful for serial port programming applications where data can be rotated from an internal register into the Carry bit from where it can be examined and the necessary serial bit set high or low. Another application which rotate data operations are used is to implement multiplication and division calculations.

Branches and Control Transfer

Program branching takes the form of either jumps to specified locations using the JMP instruction or to a subroutine using the CALL instruction. They differ in the sense that in the case of a subroutine call, the program must return to the instruction immediately when the subroutine has been carried out. This is done by placing a return instruction "RET" in the subroutine which will cause the program to jump back to the address right after the CALL instruction. In the case of a JMP instruction, the program simply jumps to the desired location. There is no requirement to jump back to the original jumping off point as in the case of the CALL instruction. One special and extremely useful set of branch instructions are the conditional branches. Here a decision is first made regarding the condition of a certain data memory or individual bits. Depending upon the conditions, the program will continue with the next instruction or skip over it and jump to the following instruction. These instructions are the key to decision making and branching within the program perhaps determined by the condition of certain input switches or by the condition of internal data bits.

Bit Operations

The ability to provide single bit operations on Data Memory is an extremely flexible feature of all Holtek microcontrollers. This feature is especially useful for output port bit programming where individual bits or port pins can be directly set high or low using either the "SET [m].i" or "CLR [m].i" instructions respectively. The feature removes the need for programmers to first read the 8-bit output port, manipulate the input data to ensure that other bits are not changed and then output the port with the correct new data. This read-modify-write process is taken care of automatically when these bit operation instructions are used.

Table Read Operations

Data storage is normally implemented by using registers. However, when working with large amounts of fixed data, the volume involved often makes it inconvenient to store the fixed data in the Data Memory. To overcome this problem, Holtek microcontrollers allow an area of Program Memory to be setup as a table where data can be directly stored. A set of easy to use instructions provides the means by which this fixed data can be referenced and retrieved from the Program Memory.

Other Operations

In addition to the above functional instructions, a range of other instructions also exist such as the "HALT" instruction for Power-down operations and instructions to control the operation of the Watchdog Timer for reliable program operations under extreme electric or electromagnetic environments. For their relevant operations, refer to the functional related sections.

Instruction Set Summary

The instructions related to the data memory access in the following table can be used when the desired data memory is located in Data Memory sector 0.

Table Conventions

x: Bits immediate data
m: Data Memory address
A: Accumulator
i: 0~7 number of bits
addr: Program memory address

Mnemonic	Description	Cycles	Flag Affected
Arithmetic			
ADD A,[m]	Add Data Memory to ACC	1	Z, C, AC, OV, SC
ADDM A,[m]	Add ACC to Data Memory	1Note	Z, C, AC, OV, SC
ADD A,x	Add immediate data to ACC	1	Z, C, AC, OV, SC
ADC A,[m]	Add Data Memory to ACC with Carry	1	Z, C, AC, OV, SC
ADCM A,[m]	Add ACC to Data memory with Carry	1Note	Z, C, AC, OV, SC
SUB A,x	Subtract immediate data from the ACC	1	Z, C, AC, OV, SC, CZ
SUB A,[m]	Subtract Data Memory from ACC	1	Z, C, AC, OV, SC, CZ
SUBM A,[m]	Subtract Data Memory from ACC with result in Data Memory	1Note	Z, C, AC, OV, SC, CZ
SBC A,x	Subtract immediate data from ACC with Carry	1	Z, C, AC, OV, SC, CZ
SBC A,[m]	Subtract Data Memory from ACC with Carry	1	Z, C, AC, OV, SC, CZ
SBCM A,[m]	Subtract Data Memory from ACC with Carry, result in Data Memory	1Note	Z, C, AC, OV, SC, CZ
DAA [m]	Decimal adjust ACC for Addition with result in Data Memory	1Note	C
Logic Operation			
AND A,[m]	Logical AND Data Memory to ACC	1	Z
OR A,[m]	Logical OR Data Memory to ACC	1	Z
XOR A,[m]	Logical XOR Data Memory to ACC	1	Z
ANDM A,[m]	Logical AND ACC to Data Memory	1Note	Z
ORM A,[m]	Logical OR ACC to Data Memory	1Note	Z
XORM A,[m]	Logical XOR ACC to Data Memory	1Note	Z
AND A,x	Logical AND immediate Data to ACC	1	Z
OR A,x	Logical OR immediate Data to ACC	1	Z
XOR A,x	Logical XOR immediate Data to ACC	1	Z
CPL [m]	Complement Data Memory	1Note	Z
CPLA [m]	Complement Data Memory with result in ACC	1	Z
Increment & Decrement			
INCA [m]	Increment Data Memory with result in ACC	1	Z
INC [m]	Increment Data Memory	1Note	Z
DECA [m]	Decrement Data Memory with result in ACC	1	Z
DEC [m]	Decrement Data Memory	1Note	Z
Rotate			
RRA [m]	Rotate Data Memory right with result in ACC	1	None
RR [m]	Rotate Data Memory right	1Note	None
RRCA [m]	Rotate Data Memory right through Carry with result in ACC	1	C
RRC [m]	Rotate Data Memory right through Carry	1Note	C
RLA [m]	Rotate Data Memory left with result in ACC	1	None
RL [m]	Rotate Data Memory left	1Note	None
RLCA [m]	Rotate Data Memory left through Carry with result in ACC	1	C
RLC [m]	Rotate Data Memory left through Carry	1Note	C

Mnemonic	Description	Cycles	Flag Affected
Data Move			
MOV A,[m]	Move Data Memory to ACC	1	None
MOV [m],A	Move ACC to Data Memory	1Note	None
MOV A,x	Move immediate data to ACC	1	None
Bit Operation			
CLR [m].i	Clear bit of Data Memory	1Note	None
SET [m].i	Set bit of Data Memory	1Note	None
Branch Operation			
JMP addr	Jump unconditionally	2	None
SZ [m]	Skip if Data Memory is zero	1Note	None
SZA [m]	Skip if Data Memory is zero with data movement to ACC	1Note	None
SZ [m].i	Skip if bit i of Data Memory is zero	1Note	None
SNZ [m]	Skip if Data Memory is not zero	1Note	None
SNZ [m].i	Skip if bit i of Data Memory is not zero	1Note	None
SIZ [m]	Skip if increment Data Memory is zero	1Note	None
SDZ [m]	Skip if decrement Data Memory is zero	1Note	None
SIZA [m]	Skip if increment Data Memory is zero with result in ACC	1Note	None
SDZA [m]	Skip if decrement Data Memory is zero with result in ACC	1Note	None
CALL addr	Subroutine call	2	None
RET	Return from subroutine	2	None
RET A,x	Return from subroutine and load immediate data to ACC	2	None
RETI	Return from interrupt	2	None
Table Read Operation			
TABRD [m]	Read table (specific page) to TBLH and Data Memory	2Note	None
TABRDL [m]	Read table (last page) to TBLH and Data Memory	2Note	None
ITABRD [m]	Increment table pointer TBLP first and Read table (specific page) to TBLH and Data Memory	2Note	None
ITABRDL [m]	Increment table pointer TBLP first and Read table (last page) to TBLH and Data Memory	2Note	None
Miscellaneous			
NOP	No operation	1	None
CLR [m]	Clear Data Memory	1Note	None
SET [m]	Set Data Memory	1Note	None
CLR WDT	Clear Watchdog Timer	1	TO, PDF
SWAP [m]	Swap nibbles of Data Memory	1Note	None
SWAPA [m]	Swap nibbles of Data Memory with result in ACC	1	None
HALT	Enter power down mode	1	TO, PDF

Note: 1. For skip instructions, if the result of the comparison involves a skip then two cycles are required, if no skip takes place only one cycle is required.

2. Any instruction which changes the contents of the PCL will also require 2 cycles for execution.

Extended Instruction Set

The extended instructions are used to support the full range address access for the data memory. When the accessed data memory is located in any data memory sector except sector 0, the extended instruction can be used to directly access the data memory instead of using the indirect addressing access. This can not only reduce the use of Flash memory space but also improve the CPU execution efficiency.

Mnemonic	Description	Cycles	Flag Affected
Arithmetic			
LADD A,[m]	Add Data Memory to ACC	2	Z, C, AC, OV, SC
LADDM A,[m]	Add ACC to Data Memory	2Note	Z, C, AC, OV, SC
LADC A,[m]	Add Data Memory to ACC with Carry	2	Z, C, AC, OV, SC
LADCM A,[m]	Add ACC to Data memory with Carry	2Note	Z, C, AC, OV, SC
LSUB A,[m]	Subtract Data Memory from ACC	2	Z, C, AC, OV, SC, CZ
LSUBM A,[m]	Subtract Data Memory from ACC with result in Data Memory	2Note	Z, C, AC, OV, SC, CZ
LSBC A,[m]	Subtract Data Memory from ACC with Carry	2	Z, C, AC, OV, SC, CZ
LSBCM A,[m]	Subtract Data Memory from ACC with Carry, result in Data Memory	2Note	Z, C, AC, OV, SC, CZ
LDAA [m]	Decimal adjust ACC for Addition with result in Data Memory	2Note	C
Logic Operation			
LAND A,[m]	Logical AND Data Memory to ACC	2	Z
LOR A,[m]	Logical OR Data Memory to ACC	2	Z
LXOR A,[m]	Logical XOR Data Memory to ACC	2	Z
LANDM A,[m]	Logical AND ACC to Data Memory	2Note	Z
LORM A,[m]	Logical OR ACC to Data Memory	2Note	Z
LXORM A,[m]	Logical XOR ACC to Data Memory	2Note	Z
LCPL [m]	Complement Data Memory	2Note	Z
LCPLA [m]	Complement Data Memory with result in ACC	2	Z
Increment & Decrement			
LINCA [m]	Increment Data Memory with result in ACC	2	Z
LINC [m]	Increment Data Memory	2Note	Z
LDECA [m]	Decrement Data Memory with result in ACC	2	Z
LDEC [m]	Decrement Data Memory	2Note	Z
Rotate			
LRRA [m]	Rotate Data Memory right with result in ACC	2	None
LRR [m]	Rotate Data Memory right	2Note	None
LRRCA [m]	Rotate Data Memory right through Carry with result in ACC	2	C
LRRC [m]	Rotate Data Memory right through Carry	2Note	C
LRLA [m]	Rotate Data Memory left with result in ACC	2	None
LRL [m]	Rotate Data Memory left	2Note	None
LRLCA [m]	Rotate Data Memory left through Carry with result in ACC	2	C
LRLC [m]	Rotate Data Memory left through Carry	2Note	C
Data Move			
LMOV A,[m]	Move Data Memory to ACC	2	None
LMOV [m],A	Move ACC to Data Memory	2Note	None
Bit Operation			
LCLR [m].i	Clear bit of Data Memory	2Note	None
LSET [m].i	Set bit of Data Memory	2Note	None

Mnemonic	Description	Cycles	Flag Affected
Branch			
LSZ [m]	Skip if Data Memory is zero	2Note	None
LSZA [m]	Skip if Data Memory is zero with data movement to ACC	2Note	None
LSNZ [m]	Skip if Data Memory is not zero	2Note	None
LSZ [m].i	Skip if bit i of Data Memory is zero	2Note	None
LSNZ [m].i	Skip if bit i of Data Memory is not zero	2Note	None
LSIZ [m]	Skip if increment Data Memory is zero	2Note	None
LSDZ [m]	Skip if decrement Data Memory is zero	2Note	None
LSIZA [m]	Skip if increment Data Memory is zero with result in ACC	2Note	None
LSDZA [m]	Skip if decrement Data Memory is zero with result in ACC	2Note	None
Table Read			
LTABRD [m]	Read table (specific page) to TBLH and Data Memory	3Note	None
LTABRDL [m]	Read table (last page) to TBLH and Data Memory	3Note	None
LITABRD [m]	Increment table pointer TBLP first and Read table (specific page) to TBLH and Data Memory	3Note	None
LITABRDL [m]	Increment table pointer TBLP first and Read table (last page) to TBLH and Data Memory	3Note	None
Miscellaneous			
LCLR [m]	Clear Data Memory	2Note	None
LSET [m]	Set Data Memory	2Note	None
LSWAP [m]	Swap nibbles of Data Memory	2Note	None
LSWAPA [m]	Swap nibbles of Data Memory with result in ACC	2	None

Note: 1. For these extended skip instructions, if the result of the comparison involves a skip then three cycles are required, if no skip takes place two cycles is required.

2. Any extended instruction which changes the contents of the PCL register will also require three cycles for execution.

Instruction Definition

ADC A,[m] Add Data Memory to ACC with Carry

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory, Accumulator and the carry flag are added. The result is stored in the Accumulator.

Operation ACC ← ACC + [m] + C

Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC

ADCM A,[m] Add ACC to Data Memory with Carry

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory, Accumulator and the carry flag are added. The result is stored in the specified Data Memory.

Operation [m] ← ACC + [m] + C

Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC

ADD A,[m] Add Data Memory to ACC

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory and the Accumulator are added. The result is stored in the Accumulator.

Operation ACC ← ACC + [m]

Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC

ADD A,x Add immediate data to ACC

Description The contents of the Accumulator and the specified immediate data are added. The result is stored in the Accumulator.

Operation ACC ← ACC + x

Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC

ADDM A,[m] Add ACC to Data Memory

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory and the Accumulator are added. The result is stored in the specified Data Memory.

Operation [m] ← ACC + [m]

Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC

AND A,[m] Logical AND Data Memory to ACC

Description Data in the Accumulator and the specified Data Memory perform a bitwise logical AND operation. The result is stored in the Accumulator.

Operation ACC ← ACC "AND" [m]

Affected flag(s) Z

AND A,x Logical AND immediate data to ACC

Description Data in the Accumulator and the specified immediate data perform a bit wise logical AND operation. The result is stored in the Accumulator.

Operation ACC ← ACC "AND" x

Affected flag(s) Z

ANDM A,[m] Logical AND ACC to Data Memory

Description Data in the specified Data Memory and the Accumulator perform a bitwise logical AND operation. The result is stored in the Data Memory.

Operation [m] ← ACC "AND" [m]

Affected flag(s) Z

CALL addr Subroutine call

Description Unconditionally calls a subroutine at the specified address. The Program Counter then increments by 1 to obtain the address of the next instruction which is then pushed onto the stack. The specified address is then loaded and the program continues execution from this new address. As this instruction requires an additional operation, it is a two cycle instruction.

Operation Stack ← Program Counter + 1
Program Counter ← addr

Affected flag(s) None

CLR [m] Clear Data Memory

Description Each bit of the specified Data Memory is cleared to 0.

Operation [m] ← 00H

Affected flag(s) None

CLR [m].i Clear bit of Data Memory

Description Bit i of the specified Data Memory is cleared to 0.

Operation [m].i ← 0

Affected flag(s) None

CLR WDT Clear Watchdog Timer

Description The TO, PDF flags and the WDT are all cleared.

Operation WDT cleared
TO ← 0
PDF ← 0

Affected flag(s) TO, PDF

CPL [m] Complement Data Memory

Description Each bit of the specified Data Memory is logically complemented (1′s complement).
Bits which previously contained a 1 are changed to 0 and vice versa.

Operation [m] ← $[\overline{m}]$

Affected flag(s) Z

CPLA [m] Complement Data Memory with result in ACC

Description Each bit of the specified Data Memory is logically complemented (1′s complement).
Bits which previously contained a 1 are changed to 0 and vice versa. The complemented result is stored in the Accumulator and the contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.

Operation ACC ← $[\overline{m}]$

Affected flag(s) Z

DAA [m] Decimal-Adjust ACC for addition with result in Data Memory

Description Convert the contents of the Accumulator value to a BCD (Binary Coded Decimal) value resulting from the previous addition of two BCD variables. If the low nibble is greater than 9 or if AC flag is set, then a value of 6 will be added to the low nibble. Otherwise the low nibble remains unchanged. If the high nibble is greater than 9 or if the C flag is set, then a value of 6 will be added to the high nibble. Essentially, the decimal conversion is performed by adding 00H, 06H, 60H or 66H depending on the Accumulator and flag conditions. Only the C flag may be affected by this instruction which indicates that if the original BCD sum is greater than 100, it allows multiple precision decimal addition.

Operation [m] ← ACC + 00H or
[m] ← ACC + 06H or
[m] ← ACC + 60H or
[m] ← ACC + 66H

Affected flag(s) C

DEC [m] Decrement Data Memory

Description Data in the specified Data Memory is decremented by 1.

Operation [m] ← [m] − 1

Affected flag(s) Z

DECA [m] Decrement Data Memory with result in ACC

Description Data in the specified Data Memory is decremented by 1. The result is stored in the Accumulator. The contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.

Operation ACC ← [m] − 1

Affected flag(s) Z

HALT Enter power down mode

Description This instruction stops the program execution and turns off the system clock. The contents of the Data Memory and registers are retained. The WDT and prescaler are cleared. The power down flag PDF is set and the WDT time-out flag TO is cleared.

Operation TO ← 0
PDF ← 1

Affected flag(s) TO, PDF

INC [m] Increment Data Memory

Description Data in the specified Data Memory is incremented by 1.

Operation [m] ← [m] + 1

Affected flag(s) Z

INCA [m] Increment Data Memory with result in ACC

Description Data in the specified Data Memory is incremented by 1. The result is stored in the Accumulator. The contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.

Operation ACC ← [m] + 1

Affected flag(s) Z

JMP addr Jump unconditionally

Description The contents of the Program Counter are replaced with the specified address. Program execution then continues from this new address. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the new address is loaded, it is a two cycle instruction.

Operation Program Counter ← addr

Affected flag(s) None

MOV A,[m] Move Data Memory to ACC

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are copied to the Accumulator.

Operation ACC ← [m]

Affected flag(s) None

MOV A,x Move immediate data to ACC

Description The immediate data specified is loaded into the Accumulator.

Operation ACC ← x

Affected flag(s) None

MOV [m],A Move ACC to Data Memory

Description The contents of the Accumulator are copied to the specified Data Memory.

Operation [m] ← ACC

Affected flag(s) None

NOP No operation

Description No operation is performed. Execution continues with the next instruction.

Operation No operation

Affected flag(s) None

OR A,[m] Logical OR Data Memory to ACC

Description Data in the Accumulator and the specified Data Memory perform a bitwise logical OR operation. The result is stored in the Accumulator.

Operation ACC ← ACC "OR" [m]

Affected flag(s) Z

OR A,x Logical OR immediate data to ACC

Description Data in the Accumulator and the specified immediate data perform a bitwise logical OR operation. The result is stored in the Accumulator.

Operation ACC ← ACC "OR" x

Affected flag(s) Z

ORM A,[m] Logical OR ACC to Data Memory

Description Data in the specified Data Memory and the Accumulator perform a bitwise logical OR operation. The result is stored in the Data Memory.

Operation [m] ← ACC "OR" [m]

Affected flag(s) Z

RET Return from subroutine

Description The Program Counter is restored from the stack. Program execution continues at the restored address.

Operation Program Counter ← Stack

Affected flag(s) None

RET A,x Return from subroutine and load immediate data to ACC

Description The Program Counter is restored from the stack and the Accumulator loaded with the specified immediate data. Program execution continues at the restored address.

Operation Program Counter ← Stack
ACC ← x

Affected flag(s) None

RETI Return from interrupt

Description The Program Counter is restored from the stack and the interrupts are re-enabled by setting the EMI bit. EMI is the master interrupt global enable bit. If an interrupt was pending when the RETI instruction is executed, the pending Interrupt routine will be processed before returning to the main program.

Operation Program Counter ← Stack
EMI ← 1

Affected flag(s) None

RL [m] Rotate Data Memory left

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are rotated left by 1 bit with bit 7 rotated into bit 0.

Operation [m].(i+1) ← [m].i; (i=0~6)
[m].0 ← [m].7

Affected flag(s) None

RLA [m] Rotate Data Memory left with result in ACC

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are rotated left by 1 bit with bit 7 rotated into bit 0. The rotated result is stored in the Accumulator and the contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.

Operation ACC.(i+1) ← [m].i; (i=0~6)
ACC.0 ← [m].7

Affected flag(s) None

RLC [m] Rotate Data Memory left through Carry

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory and the carry flag are rotated left by 1 bit. Bit 7 replaces the Carry bit and the original carry flag is rotated into bit 0.

Operation [m].(i+1) ← [m].i; (i=0~6)
[m].0 ← C
C ← [m].7

Affected flag(s) C

RLCA [m] Rotate Data Memory left through Carry with result in ACC

Description Data in the specified Data Memory and the carry flag are rotated left by 1 bit. Bit 7 replaces the Carry bit and the original carry flag is rotated into the bit 0. The rotated result is stored in the Accumulator and the contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.

Operation ACC.(i+1) ← [m].i; (i=0~6)
ACC.0 ← C
C ← [m].7

Affected flag(s) C

RR [m] Rotate Data Memory right

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are rotated right by 1 bit with bit 0 rotated into bit 7.

Operation [m].i ← [m].(i+1); (i=0~6)
[m].7 ← [m].0

Affected flag(s) None

RRA [m] Rotate Data Memory right with result in ACC

Description Data in the specified Data Memory is rotated right by 1 bit with bit 0 rotated into bit 7. The rotated result is stored in the Accumulator and the contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.

Operation ACC.i ← [m].(i+1); (i=0~6)
ACC.7 ← [m].0

Affected flag(s) None

RRC [m] Rotate Data Memory right through Carry

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory and the carry flag are rotated right by 1 bit. Bit 0 replaces the Carry bit and the original carry flag is rotated into bit 7.

Operation [m].i ← [m].(i+1); (i=0~6)
[m].7 ← C
C ← [m].0

Affected flag(s) C

RRCA [m] Rotate Data Memory right through Carry with result in ACC

Description Data in the specified Data Memory and the carry flag are rotated right by 1 bit. Bit 0 replaces the Carry bit and the original carry flag is rotated into bit 7. The rotated result is stored in the Accumulator and the contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.

Operation ACC.i ← [m].(i+1); (i=0~6)
ACC.7 ← C
C ← [m].0

Affected flag(s) C

SBC A,[m] Subtract Data Memory from ACC with Carry

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory and the complement of the carry flag are subtracted from the Accumulator. The result is stored in the Accumulator. Note that if the result of subtraction is negative, the C flag will be cleared to 0, otherwise if the result is positive or zero, the C flag will be set to 1.

Operation ACC ← ACC − [m] − C

Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC, CZ

SBC A, x Subtract immediate data from ACC with Carry

Description The immediate data and the complement of the carry flag are subtracted from the Accumulator. The result is stored in the Accumulator. Note that if the result of subtraction is negative, the C flag will be cleared to 0, otherwise if the result is positive or zero, the C flag will be set to 1.

Operation ACC ← ACC – [m] – C

Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC, CZ

SBCM A,[m] Subtract Data Memory from ACC with Carry and result in Data Memory

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory and the complement of the carry flag are subtracted from the Accumulator. The result is stored in the Data Memory. Note that if the result of subtraction is negative, the C flag will be cleared to 0, otherwise if the result is positive or zero, the C flag will be set to 1.

Operation [m] ← ACC − [m] − C

Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC, CZ

SDZ [m] Skip if decrement Data Memory is 0

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are first decremented by 1. If the result is 0 the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle instruction. If the result is not 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation [m] ← [m] − 1
Skip if [m]=0

Affected flag(s) None

SDZA [m] Skip if decrement Data Memory is zero with result in ACC

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are first decremented by 1. If the result is 0, the following instruction is skipped. The result is stored in the Accumulator but the specified Data Memory contents remain unchanged. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle instruction. If the result is not 0, the program proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation ACC ← [m] − 1
Skip if ACC=0

Affected flag(s) None

SET [m] Set Data Memory

Description Each bit of the specified Data Memory is set to 1.

Operation [m] ← FFH

Affected flag(s) None

SET [m].i Set bit of Data Memory

Description Bit i of the specified Data Memory is set to 1.

Operation [m].i ← 1

Affected flag(s) None

SIZ [m] Skip if increment Data Memory is 0

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are first incremented by 1. If the result is 0, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle instruction. If the result is not 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation [m] ← [m] + 1
Skip if [m]=0

Affected flag(s) None

SIZA [m] Skip if increment Data Memory is zero with result in ACC

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are first incremented by 1. If the result is 0, the following instruction is skipped. The result is stored in the Accumulator but the specified Data Memory contents remain unchanged. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle instruction. If the result is not 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation ACC ← [m] + 1
Skip if ACC=0

Affected flag(s) None

SNZ [m].i Skip if bit i of Data Memory is not 0

Description If bit i of the specified Data Memory is not 0, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle instruction. If the result is 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation Skip if [m].i ≠ 0

Affected flag(s) None

SNZ [m] Skip if Data Memory is not 0

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are read out and then written back to the specified Data Memory again. If the specified Data Memory is not 0, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle instruction. If the result is 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation Skip if [m]≠ 0

Affected flag(s) None

SUB A,[m] Subtract Data Memory from ACC

Description The specified Data Memory is subtracted from the contents of the Accumulator. The result is stored in the Accumulator. Note that if the result of subtraction is negative, the C flag will be cleared to 0, otherwise if the result is positive or zero, the C flag will be set to 1.

Operation ACC ← ACC − [m]

Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC, CZ

SUBM A,[m] Subtract Data Memory from ACC with result in Data Memory

Description The specified Data Memory is subtracted from the contents of the Accumulator. The result is stored in the Data Memory. Note that if the result of subtraction is negative, the C flag will be cleared to 0, otherwise if the result is positive or zero, the C flag will be set to 1.

Operation [m] ← ACC − [m]

Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC, CZ

SUB A,x Subtract immediate data from ACC

Description The immediate data specified by the code is subtracted from the contents of the Accumulator. The result is stored in the Accumulator. Note that if the result of subtraction is negative, the C flag will be cleared to 0, otherwise if the result is positive or zero, the C flag will be set to 1.

Operation ACC ← ACC − x

Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC, CZ

SWAP [m] Swap nibbles of Data Memory

Description The low-order and high-order nibbles of the specified Data Memory are interchanged.

Operation [m].3~[m].0 ↔ [m].7~[m].4

Affected flag(s) None

SWAPA [m] Swap nibbles of Data Memory with result in ACC

Description The low-order and high-order nibbles of the specified Data Memory are interchanged. The result is stored in the Accumulator. The contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.

Operation ACC.3~ACC.0 ← [m].7~[m].4
ACC.7~ACC.4 ← [m].3~[m].0

Affected flag(s) None

SZ [m] Skip if Data Memory is 0

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are read out and then written back to the specified Data Memory again. If the contents of the specified Data Memory is 0, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle instruction. If the result is not 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation Skip if [m]=0

Affected flag(s) None

SZA [m] Skip if Data Memory is 0 with data movement to ACC

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are copied to the Accumulator. If the value is zero, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle instruction. If the result is not 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation ACC ← [m]
Skip if [m]=0

Affected flag(s) None

SZ [m].i Skip if bit i of Data Memory is 0

Description If bit i of the specified Data Memory is 0, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle instruction. If the result is not 0, the program proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation Skip if [m].i=0

Affected flag(s) None

TABRD [m] Read table (specific page) to TBLH and Data Memory

Description The low byte of the program code (specific page) addressed by the table pointer (TBLP and TBHP) is moved to the specified Data Memory and the high byte moved to TBLH.

Operation [m] ← program code (low byte)
TBLH ← program code (high byte)

Affected flag(s) None

TABRDL [m] Read table (last page) to TBLH and Data Memory

Description The low byte of the program code (last page) addressed by the table pointer (TBLP) is moved to the specified Data Memory and the high byte moved to TBLH.

Operation [m] ← program code (low byte)
TBLH ← program code (high byte)

Affected flag(s) None

ITABRD [m] Increment table pointer low byte first and read table (specific page) to TBLH and Data Memory Description Increment table pointer low byte, TBLP, first and then the program code (specific page) addressed by the table pointer (TBHP and TBLP) is moved to the specified Data Memory and the high byte moved to TBLH.

Operation [m] ← program code (low byte)

TBLH ← program code (high byte)

Affected flag(s) None

ITABRDL [m] Increment table pointer low byte first and read table (last page) to TBLH and Data Memory

Description Increment table pointer low byte, TBLP, first and then the low byte of the program code (last page) addressed by the table pointer (TBLP) is moved to the specified Data Memory and the high byte moved to TBLH.

Operation [m] ← program code (low byte)

TBLH ← program code (high byte)

Affected flag(s) None

XOR A,[m] Logical XOR Data Memory to ACC

Description Data in the Accumulator and the specified Data Memory perform a bitwise logical XOR operation. The result is stored in the Accumulator.

Operation ACC ← ACC "XOR" [m]

Affected flag(s) Z

XORM A,[m] Logical XOR ACC to Data Memory

Description Data in the specified Data Memory and the Accumulator perform a bitwise logical XOR operation. The result is stored in the Data Memory.

Operation [m] ← ACC "XOR" [m]

Affected flag(s) Z

XOR A,x Logical XOR immediate data to ACC

Description Data in the Accumulator and the specified immediate data perform a bitwise logical XOR operation. The result is stored in the Accumulator.

Operation ACC ← ACC "XOR" x

Affected flag(s) Z

Extended Instruction Definition

The extended instructions are used to directly access the data stored in any data memory sections.

LADC A,[m] Add Data Memory to ACC with Carry

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory, Accumulator and the carry flag are added. The result is stored in the Accumulator.

Operation ACC ← ACC + [m] + C

Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC

LADCM A,[m] Add ACC to Data Memory with Carry

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory, Accumulator and the carry flag are added. The result is stored in the specified Data Memory.

Operation [m] ← ACC + [m] + C

Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC

LADD A,[m] Add Data Memory to ACC

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory and the Accumulator are added. The result is stored in the Accumulator.

Operation ACC ← ACC + [m]

Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC

LADDM A,[m] Add ACC to Data Memory

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory and the Accumulator are added. The result is stored in the specified Data Memory.

Operation [m] ← ACC + [m]

Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC

LAND A,[m] Logical AND Data Memory to ACC

Description Data in the Accumulator and the specified Data Memory perform a bitwise logical AND operation. The result is stored in the Accumulator.

Operation ACC ← ACC "AND" [m]

Affected flag(s) Z

LANDM A,[m] Logical AND ACC to Data Memory

Description Data in the specified Data Memory and the Accumulator perform a bitwise logical AND operation. The result is stored in the Data Memory.

Operation [m] ← ACC "AND" [m]

Affected flag(s) Z

LCLR [m] Clear Data Memory

Description Each bit of the specified Data Memory is cleared to 0.

Operation [m] ← 00H

Affected flag(s) None

LCLR [m].i Clear bit of Data Memory

Description Bit i of the specified Data Memory is cleared to 0.

Operation [m].i ← 0

Affected flag(s) None

LCPL [m] Complement Data Memory

Description Each bit of the specified Data Memory is logically complemented (1′s complement). Bits which previously contained a 1 are changed to 0 and vice versa.

Operation [m] ← $[\overline{m}]$

Affected flag(s) Z

LCPLA [m] Complement Data Memory with result in ACC

Description Each bit of the specified Data Memory is logically complemented (1′s complement). Bits which previously contained a 1 are changed to 0 and vice versa. The complemented result is stored in the Accumulator and the contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.

Operation ACC ← $[\overline{m}]$

Affected flag(s) Z

LDAA [m] Decimal-Adjust ACC for addition with result in Data Memory

Description Convert the contents of the Accumulator value to a BCD (Binary Coded Decimal) value resulting from the previous addition of two BCD variables. If the low nibble is greater than 9 or if AC flag is set, then a value of 6 will be added to the low nibble. Otherwise the low nibble remains unchanged. If the high nibble is greater than 9 or if the C flag is set, then a value of 6 will be added to the high nibble. Essentially, the decimal conversion is performed by adding 00H, 06H, 60H or 66H depending on the Accumulator and flag conditions. Only the C flag may be affected by this instruction which indicates that if the original BCD sum is greater than 100, it allows multiple precision decimal addition.

Operation [m] ← ACC + 00H or
[m] ← ACC + 06H or
[m] ← ACC + 60H or
[m] ← ACC + 66H

Affected flag(s) C

LDEC [m] Decrement Data Memory

Description Data in the specified Data Memory is decremented by 1.

Operation [m] ← [m] − 1

Affected flag(s) Z

LDECA [m] Decrement Data Memory with result in ACC

Description Data in the specified Data Memory is decremented by 1. The result is stored in the Accumulator. The contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.

Operation ACC ← [m] − 1

Affected flag(s) Z

LINC [m] Increment Data Memory

Description Data in the specified Data Memory is incremented by 1.

Operation [m] ← [m] + 1

Affected flag(s) Z

LINCA [m] Increment Data Memory with result in ACC

Description Data in the specified Data Memory is incremented by 1. The result is stored in the Accumulator. The contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.

Operation ACC ← [m] + 1

Affected flag(s) Z

LMOV A,[m] Move Data Memory to ACC

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are copied to the Accumulator.

Operation ACC ← [m]

Affected flag(s) None

LMOV [m],A Move ACC to Data Memory

Description The contents of the Accumulator are copied to the specified Data Memory.

Operation [m] ← ACC

Affected flag(s) None

LOR A,[m] Logical OR Data Memory to ACC

Description Data in the Accumulator and the specified Data Memory perform a bitwise logical OR operation. The result is stored in the Accumulator.

Operation ACC ← ACC "OR" [m]

Affected flag(s) Z

LORM A,[m] Logical OR ACC to Data Memory

Description Data in the specified Data Memory and the Accumulator perform a bitwise logical OR operation. The result is stored in the Data Memory.

Operation [m] ← ACC "OR" [m]

Affected flag(s) Z

LRL [m] Rotate Data Memory left

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are rotated left by 1 bit with bit 7 rotated into bit 0.

Operation [m].(i+1) ← [m].i; (i=0~6)
[m].0 ← [m].7

Affected flag(s) None

LRLA [m] Rotate Data Memory left with result in ACC

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are rotated left by 1 bit with bit 7 rotated into bit 0. The rotated result is stored in the Accumulator and the contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.

Operation ACC.(i+1) ← [m].i; (i=0~6)
ACC.0 ← [m].7

Affected flag(s) None

LRLC [m] Rotate Data Memory left through Carry

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory and the carry flag are rotated left by 1 bit. Bit 7 replaces the Carry bit and the original carry flag is rotated into bit 0.

Operation [m].(i+1) ← [m].i; (i=0~6)
[m].0 ← C
C ← [m].7

Affected flag(s) C

LRLCA [m] Rotate Data Memory left through Carry with result in ACC

Description Data in the specified Data Memory and the carry flag are rotated left by 1 bit. Bit 7 replaces the Carry bit and the original carry flag is rotated into the bit 0. The rotated result is stored in theAccumulator and the contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.

Operation ACC.(i+1) ← [m].i; (i=0~6)
ACC.0 ← C
C ← [m].7

Affected flag(s) C

LRR [m] Rotate Data Memory right

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are rotated right by 1 bit with bit 0 rotated into bit 7.

Operation [m].i ← [m].(i+1); (i=0~6)
[m].7 ← [m].0

Affected flag(s) None

LRRA [m] Rotate Data Memory right with result in ACC

Description Data in the specified Data Memory is rotated right by 1 bit with bit 0 rotated into bit 7. The rotated result is stored in the Accumulator and the contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.

Operation ACC.i ← [m].(i+1); (i=0~6)
ACC.7 ← [m].0

Affected flag(s) None

LRRC [m] Rotate Data Memory right through Carry

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory and the carry flag are rotated right by 1 bit. Bit 0 replaces the Carry bit and the original carry flag is rotated into bit 7.

Operation [m].i ← [m].(i+1); (i=0~6)
[m].7 ← C
C ← [m].0

Affected flag(s) C

LRRCA [m] Rotate Data Memory right through Carry with result in ACC

Description Data in the specified Data Memory and the carry flag are rotated right by 1 bit. Bit 0 replaces the Carry bit and the original carry flag is rotated into bit 7. The rotated result is stored in the Accumulator and the contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.

Operation ACC.i ← [m].(i+1); (i=0~6)
ACC.7 ← C
C ← [m].0

Affected flag(s) C

LSBC A,[m] Subtract Data Memory from ACC with Carry

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory and the complement of the carry flag are subtracted from the Accumulator. The result is stored in the Accumulator. Note that if the result of subtraction is negative, the C flag will be cleared to 0, otherwise if the result is positive or zero, the C flag will be set to 1.

Operation ACC ← ACC − [m] − C

Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC, CZ

LSBCM A,[m] Subtract Data Memory from ACC with Carry and result in Data Memory

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory and the complement of the carry flag are subtracted from the Accumulator. The result is stored in the Data Memory. Note that if the result of subtraction is negative, the C flag will be cleared to 0, otherwise if the result is positive or zero, the C flag will be set to 1.

Operation [m] ← ACC − [m] − C

Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC, CZ

LSDZ [m] Skip if decrement Data Memory is 0

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are first decremented by 1. If the result is 0 the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a three cycle instruction. If the result is not 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation [m] ← [m] − 1
Skip if [m]=0

Affected flag(s) None

LSDZA [m] Skip if decrement Data Memory is zero with result in ACC

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are first decremented by 1. If the result is 0, the following instruction is skipped. The result is stored in the Accumulator but the specified Data Memory contents remain unchanged. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a three cycle instruction. If the result is not 0, the program proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation ACC ← [m] − 1
Skip if ACC=0

Affected flag(s) None

LSET [m] Set Data Memory

Description Each bit of the specified Data Memory is set to 1.

Operation [m] ← FFH

Affected flag(s) None

LSET [m].i Set bit of Data Memory

Description Bit i of the specified Data Memory is set to 1.

Operation [m].i ← 1

Affected flag(s) None

LSIZ [m] Skip if increment Data Memory is 0

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are first incremented by 1. If the result is 0, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a three cycle instruction. If the result is not 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation [m] ← [m] + 1
Skip if [m]=0

Affected flag(s) None

LSIZA [m] Skip if increment Data Memory is zero with result in ACC

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are first incremented by 1. If the result is 0, the following instruction is skipped. The result is stored in the Accumulator but the specified Data Memory contents remain unchanged. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a three cycle instruction. If the result is not 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation ACC ← [m] + 1
Skip if ACC=0

Affected flag(s) None

LSNZ [m].i Skip if bit i of Data Memory is not 0

Description If bit i of the specified Data Memory is not 0, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a three cycle instruction. If the result is 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation Skip if [m].i ≠ 0

Affected flag(s) None

LSNZ [m] Skip if Data Memory is not 0

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are read out and then written to the specified Data Memory again. If the content of the specified Data Memory is not 0, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a three cycle instruction. If the result is 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation Skip if [m] ≠ 0

Affected flag(s) None

LSUB A,[m] Subtract Data Memory from ACC

Description The specified Data Memory is subtracted from the contents of the Accumulator. The result is stored in the Accumulator. Note that if the result of subtraction is negative, the C flag will be cleared to 0, otherwise if the result is positive or zero, the C flag will be set to 1.

Operation ACC ← ACC − [m]

Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC, CZ

LSUBM A,[m] Subtract Data Memory from ACC with result in Data Memory

Description The specified Data Memory is subtracted from the contents of the Accumulator. The result is stored in the Data Memory. Note that if the result of subtraction is negative, the C flag will be cleared to 0, otherwise if the result is positive or zero, the C flag will be set to 1.

Operation [m] ← ACC − [m]

Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC, CZ

LSWAP [m] Swap nibbles of Data Memory

Description The low-order and high-order nibbles of the specified Data Memory are interchanged.

Operation [m].3~[m].0 ↔ [m].7~[m].4

Affected flag(s) None

LSWAPA [m] Swap nibbles of Data Memory with result in ACC

Description The low-order and high-order nibbles of the specified Data Memory are interchanged. The result is stored in the Accumulator. The contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.

Operation ACC.3~ACC.0 ← [m].7~[m].4
ACC.7~ACC.4 ← [m].3~[m].0

Affected flag(s) None

LSZ [m] Skip if Data Memory is 0

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are read out and then written to the specified Data Memory again. If the contents of the specified Data Memory is 0, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a three cycle instruction. If the result is not 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation Skip if [m]=0

Affected flag(s) None

LSZA [m] Skip if Data Memory is 0 with data movement to ACC

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are copied to the Accumulator. If the value is zero, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a three cycle instruction. If the result is not 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation ACC ← [m]
Skip if [m]=0

Affected flag(s) None

LSZ [m].i Skip if bit i of Data Memory is 0

Description If bit i of the specified Data Memory is 0, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a three cycle instruction. If the result is not 0, the program proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation Skip if [m].i=0

Affected flag(s) None

LTABRD [m] Read table (specific page) to TBLH and Data Memory

Description The low byte of the program code (specific page) addressed by the table pointer (TBHP and TBLP) is moved to the specified Data Memory and the high byte moved to TBLH.

Operation [m] ← program code (low byte)
TBLH ← program code (high byte)

Affected flag(s) None

LTABRDL [m] Read table (last page) to TBLH and Data Memory

Description The low byte of the program code (last page) addressed by the table pointer (TBLP) is moved to the specified Data Memory and the high byte moved to TBLH.

Operation [m] ← program code (low byte)
TBLH ← program code (high byte)

Affected flag(s) None

LITABRD [m] Increment table pointer low byte first and read table (specific page) to TBLH and Data Memory

Description Increment table pointer low byte, TBLP, first and then the program code (specific page) addressed by the table pointer (TBHP and TBLP) is moved to the specified Data Memory and the high byte moved to TBLH.

Operation [m] ← program code (low byte)
TBLH ← program code (high byte)

Affected flag(s) None

LITABRDL [m] Increment table pointer low byte first and read table (last page) to TBLH and Data Memory

Description Increment table pointer low byte, TBLP, first and then the low byte of the program code (last page) addressed by the table pointer (TBLP) is moved to the specified Data Memory and the high byte moved to TBLH.

Operation [m] ← program code (low byte)
TBLH ← program code (high byte)

Affected flag(s) None

LXOR A,[m] Logical XOR Data Memory to ACC

Description Data in the Accumulator and the specified Data Memory perform a bitwise logical XOR operation. The result is stored in the Accumulator.

Operation ACC ← ACC "XOR" [m]

Affected flag(s) Z

LXORM A,[m] Logical XOR ACC to Data Memory

Description Data in the specified Data Memory and the Accumulator perform a bitwise logical XOR operation. The result is stored in the Data Memory.

Operation [m] ← ACC "XOR" [m]

Affected flag(s) Z

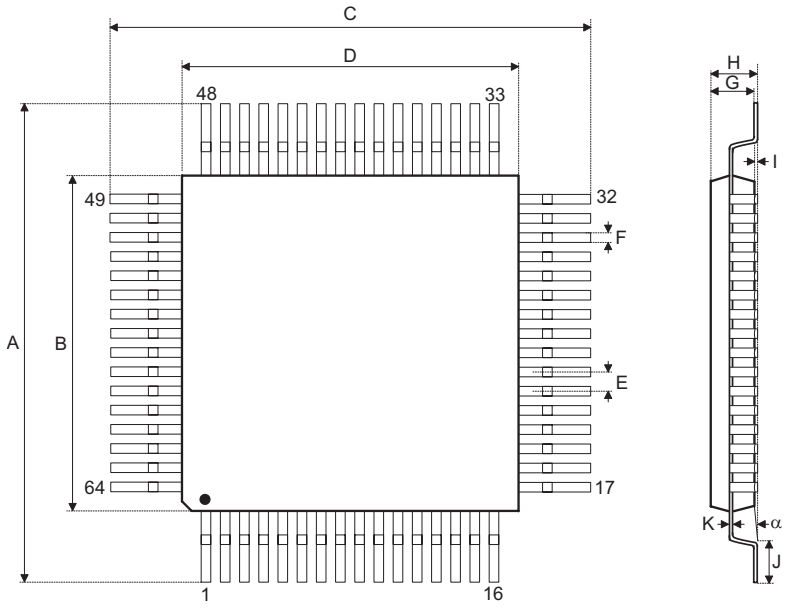
Package Information

Note that the package information provided here is for consultation purposes only. As this information may be updated at regular intervals users are reminded to consult the Holtek website for the latest version of the Package/Carton Information.

Additional supplementary information with regard to packaging is listed below. Click on the relevant section to be transferred to the relevant website page.

- Package Information (include Outline Dimensions, Product Tape and Reel Specifications)
- The Operation Instruction of Packing Materials
- Carton information

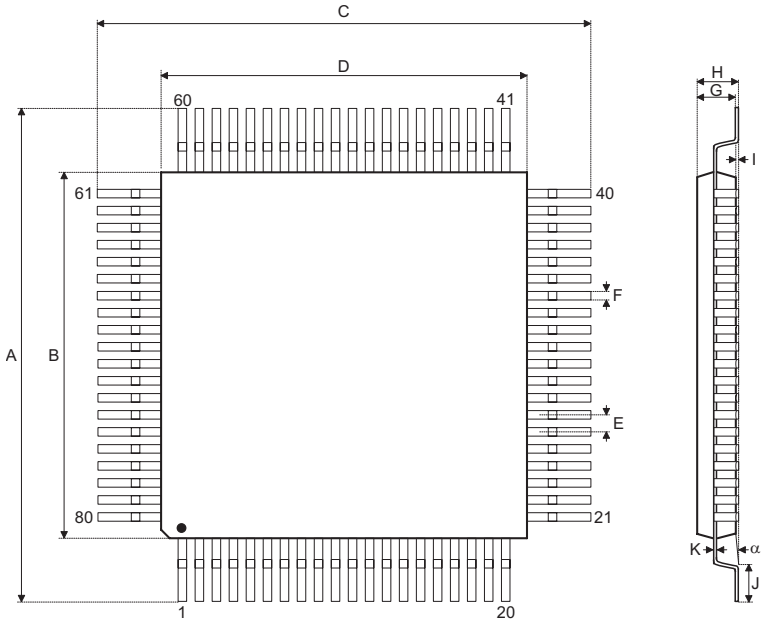
64-pin LQFP (7mm×7mm) Outline Dimensions



Symbol	Dimensions in inch		
	Min.	Nom.	Max.
A		0.354 BSC	
B		0.276 BSC	
C		0.354 BSC	
D		0.276 BSC	
E		0.016 BSC	
F	0.005	0.007	0.009
G	0.053	0.055	0.057
H	—	—	0.063
I	0.002	—	0.006
J	0.018	0.024	0.030
K	0.004	—	0.008
α	0°	—	7°

Symbol	Dimensions in mm		
	Min.	Nom.	Max.
A		9.00 BSC	
B		7.00 BSC	
C		9.00 BSC	
D		7.00 BSC	
E		0.40 BSC	
F	0.13	0.18	0.23
G	1.35	1.40	1.45
H	—	—	1.60
I	0.05	—	0.15
J	0.45	0.60	0.75
K	0.09	—	0.20
α	0°	—	7°

80-pin LQFP (10mm×10mm) Outline Dimensions



Symbol	Dimensions in inch		
	Min.	Nom.	Max.
A		0.472 BSC	
B		0.394 BSC	
C		0.472 BSC	
D		0.394 BSC	
E		0.016 BSC	
F	0.005	0.007	0.009
G	0.053	0.055	0.057
H	—	—	0.063
I	0.002	—	0.006
J	0.018	0.024	0.030
K	0.004	—	0.008
α	0°	—	7°

Symbol	Dimensions in mm		
	Min.	Nom.	Max.
A		12.00 BSC	
B		10.00 BSC	
C		12.00 BSC	
D		10.00 BSC	
E		0.40 BSC	
F	0.13	0.18	0.23
G	1.35	1.40	1.45
H	—	—	1.60
I	0.05	—	0.15
J	0.45	0.60	0.75
K	0.09	—	0.20
α	0°	—	7°

Copyright© 2026 by HOLTEK SEMICONDUCTOR INC. All Rights Reserved.

The information provided in this document has been produced with reasonable care and attention before publication, however, HOLTEK does not guarantee that the information is completely accurate. The information contained in this publication is provided for reference only and may be superseded by updates. HOLTEK disclaims any expressed, implied or statutory warranties, including but not limited to suitability for commercialization, satisfactory quality, specifications, characteristics, functions, fitness for a particular purpose, and non-infringement of any third-party's rights. HOLTEK disclaims all liability arising from the information and its application. In addition, HOLTEK does not recommend the use of HOLTEK's products where there is a risk of personal hazard due to malfunction or other reasons. HOLTEK hereby declares that it does not authorise the use of these products in life-saving, life-sustaining or safety critical components. Any use of HOLTEK's products in life-saving/sustaining or safety applications is entirely at the buyer's risk, and the buyer agrees to defend, indemnify and hold HOLTEK harmless from any damages, claims, suits, or expenses resulting from such use. The information provided in this document, including but not limited to the content, data, examples, materials, graphs, and trademarks, is the intellectual property of HOLTEK (and its licensors, where applicable) and is protected by copyright law and other intellectual property laws. No license, express or implied, to any intellectual property right, is granted by HOLTEK herein. HOLTEK reserves the right to revise the information described in the document at any time without prior notice. For the latest information, please contact us.